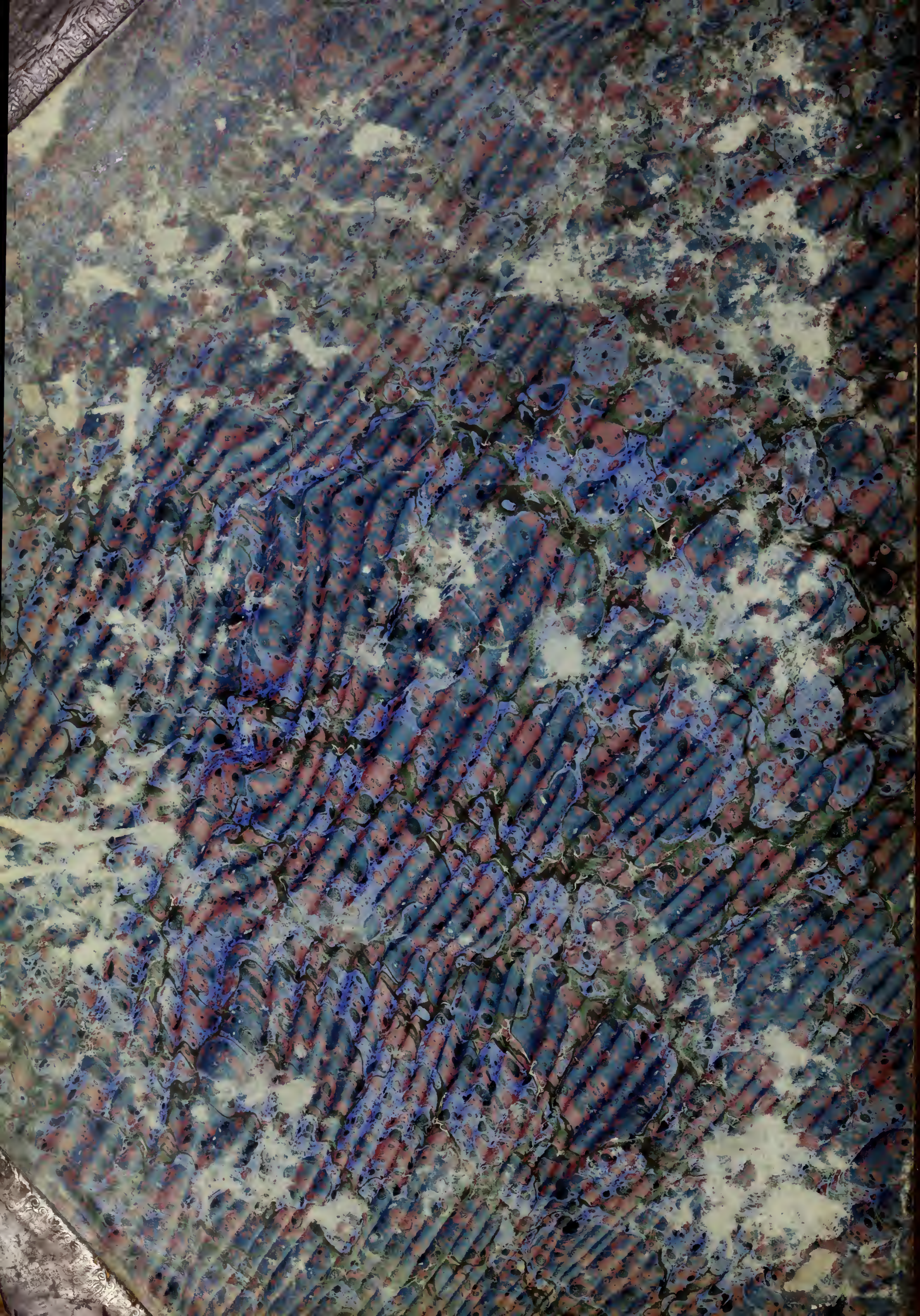


HISTORY preserving the Monuments of Antiquity.

THE Antiquities OF ENGLAND AND Wales.

By Francis Grose, Elq.r F.A.S.

VOL. I.

LONDON. Printed for S. HOOPER, N.o 25. Ludgate-hill: MDCCLXXIII.

INTRODUCTION.

AS, in the Courſe of the enſuing Work, many Terms and Alluſions may occur, unintelligible to Perſons who have not made the Antiquities of this Country their immediate Study; and who would, for Information, be obliged to turn over a Variety of Books; to theſe, a general Hiſtory of Ancient Caſtles, explaining the Terms relative to their Conſtruction, Garriſons and Privileges, with the Machines uſed for their Attack and Defence, will be uſeful, if not neceſſary: the ſame may be ſaid on the ſubject of Abbys and other Monaſtick Foundations. Illuſtrative Accounts of both are therefore here given, compiled from the beſt Authorities: and, as moſt of

theſe Buildings are either of the Saxon Architecture, or of that Stile commonly called Gothick, ſome characteriſtic Marks and Principles of the Firſt are pointed out, and an Inveſtigation of the Origin of the Latter attempted. DOMESDAY-BOOK being quoted in ſeveral Deſcriptions, ſome Particulars of that Ancient Record, with a Specimen of the Hands in which it is written, will, it is hoped not improperly, be inſerted.

THE AUTHOR begs to have it underſtood, that he does not herein pretend to inform the Veteran Antiquary; but has drawn up theſe Accounts ſolely for the Uſe of ſuch as are deſirous of having, without much Trouble, a general Knowledge of the Subjects treated of in this Publication; which they will find collected into as ſmall a Compaſs as any tolerable Degree of Perſpicuity would permit. In order to render every Article as clear as poſſible, the verbal Deſcriptions, where capable, are illuſtrated by Drawings.

PREFACE.

PREFACE.

CASTLES.

CASTLES (*), walled with ſtone, and deſigned for reſidence as well as defence, ſuch as thoſe whoſe remains make a conſiderable part of the following work, are, for the moſt part, of no higher antiquity than the Conqueſt (*a*); for although the Saxons, Romans, and even, according to ſome writers on antiquity (*b*), the ancient Britains, had caſtles built with ſtone; yet theſe were both few in number, and, at that period, through neglect or invaſions, either deſtroyed, or ſo much decayed, that little more than their ruins were remaining. This is aſſerted by many of our hiſtorians and antiquaries; and aſſigned as a reaſon for the facility with which William made himſelf maſter of this country.

THIS circumſtance was not overlooked by ſo good a general as the Conqueror; who, effectually to guard againſt invaſions from without, as well as to awe his newly-acquired ſubjects, immediately began to erect caſtles all over the kingdom; and likewiſe to repair and augment the old ones, with ſuch aſſiduity, that Rous ſays, "Nam Rex Will. Conqueſtor ad caſtella conſtruenda totam Angliam fatigabat (*c*)." Beſides, as he had parcelled out the lands of the Engliſh amongſt his followers, they, to protect themſelves from the reſentment of thoſe ſo deſpoiled, built ſtrong-holds and caſtles on their eſtates. This likewiſe cauſed a conſiderable encreaſe of

(*) Larger caſtles were, in Latin, called caſtra; the ſmaller, by the diminutive, caſtella. Julius Ferettus has this ridiculous etymology of the word caſtrum. Caſtra dicta ſunt a caſtitate, quia ibi omnes caſte vivere debent. They were likewiſe ſtiled Arx, Turris, Foſſa, Maceria, Mota, Firmitas & Munitio: as, in the charter made between King Stephen and Henry II. Caſtrum de Wallingford, Caſtellum de Belencomber, Turris London, Mota Oxenford, Firmitas Lincolniæ, Munitio Hamptoniæ.

(*a*) Agard, in his diſcourſe of Caſtles, ſays, "For I read in the Hiſtorye of Normandye, wrytten in Frenche, "that when Sweyne, king of Denmark, entered the realme againſte Kinge Alred or Allured, to revenge the "night-ſlaughter of the Danes, done by the Saxons in Englande, he ſubdued all before him, becauſe there were "no fortes or caſtles to withſtand or ſtop him; and the reaſon yielded is, becauſe the fortes of England, for the "moſt part, were buylte after the Normans poſſeſſed the realme. The words be theſe: Suen le roy des Danoys "ala parmy Angleterre conquerant et ne luy contrediſoit lon nulle choſe quil vouloiſt faire, car lors il n'avoit que "peu ou nulles fortreſſes, et les y ont puys fait faire celles qui y ſont les Normans quant & depuys quils "conquiſtrent le pays." *Antiq. Diſcourſes, vol.* 1, *p.* 188. Of this opinion was alſo Sir William Dugdale; as appears by the following paſſage, in his Hiſtory of Warwickſhire: "In thoſe dayes (in the Saxons time I mean) "were very few ſuch defenſible places as we now call Caſtles, that being a French name; ſo that, though the "Engliſh were a bold and warlike people, yet, for want of the like ſtrong-holds, were they much the leſſe able to "reſiſt their enemies."

(*b*) Borlaſe's Hiſtory of Cornwall, p. 531.——(*c*) Rous. Rot. 1.

theſe fortreſſes; and the turbulent and unſettled ſtate of the kingdom in the ſucceeding reigns, ſerved to multiply them prodigiouſly, every baron, or leader of a party, building caſtles; inſomuch that, towards the latter end of the reign of King Stephen, they amounted to the almoſt incredible number of eleven hundred and fifteen (*d*).

As the feudal ſyſtem gathered ſtrength (*e*), theſe caſtles became the heads of baronies. Each caſtle was a manor; and its (*f*) caſtellain owner, or governor, the lord of that manor (*g*). Markets and fairs were directed to be held there; not only to prevent frauds in the king's duties or cuſtoms, but alſo as they were eſteemed places where the laws of the land were obſerved, and as ſuch had a very particular privilege (*h*). But this good order did not long laſt (*i*); for the lords of caſtles began to arrogate to themſelves a royal power, not only within their caſtles, but likewiſe its environs; exerciſing judicature both civil and criminal, coining of money, and arbitrarily ſeizing forage and proviſion for the ſubſiſtence of their garriſons (*k*), which they afterwards demanded as a right: at length, their inſolence and oppreſſion grew to ſuch a pitch, that, according to William of Newbury, "there "were in England as many kings, or rather tyrants, as lords of caſtles;" and Matthew Paris ſtiles them, very neſts of devils, and dens of thieves. Caſtles were not ſolely in the poſſeſſion of the crown and the lay-barons, but even biſhops had theſe fortreſſes; though it ſeems to have been contrary to the canons, from a plea made uſe of in a general council (*l*), in favour of King Stephen, who had ſeized upon the ſtrong caſtles of the biſhops of Lincoln and Saliſbury. This prohibition (if ſuch exiſted) was however very little regarded; as, in the following reigns, many ſtrong places were held, and even defended, by eccleſiaſticks: neither was more obedience afterwards paid to a decree made by the Pope at Viterbo (*m*), the fifth of the Calends of June, 1220, wherein it was ordained, that no perſon in England ſhould keep in his hands more than two of the king's caſtles.

THE licentious behaviour of the garriſons of theſe places becoming intolerable, in the treaty between King Stephen and Henry the Second, when only duke of Normandy, it was agreed, that all the caſtles built within a certain period, ſhould be demoliſhed; in conſequence of which, many were actually razed, but not the

(*d*) Regiſtrum Prioratus de Dunſtaple.——(*e*) Madox's Baronia, pages 17, 18.

(*f*) Blount's Law Dictionary in Caſtel.

(*g*) Item nullum mercatum vel forum ſit, nec fieri permittatur, niſi in civitatibus regni noſtri, et in burgis, et muro vallatis, et in caſtellis, et in locis tutiſſimis, ubi conſuetudines regni noſtri, et jus noſtrorum commune et dignitates coronæ noſtræ, quæ conſtitutæ ſunt a bonis prædeceſſoribus noſtris deperiri non poſſent, nec defraudari, nec violari, ſed omnia rite et in aperto, et per judicium, et juſtitiam fieri debent. Et ideo caſtella, et burgi, et civitates, ſitæ ſunt et fundatæ et ædificatæ, ſcilicet, ad tuitionem gentium et populorum regni, et ad defenſionem regni, et id circo obſervari debent, cum omni libertate, et integritate, et ratione. *Carta regis Willielmi Conquiſitoris. Tranſcribed from Wilkins, and the Red Book of the Exchequer, printed in the Appendix to Lord Littleton's Hiſtory of Henry the Second.*

(*h*) Item, ſi ſervi permanſerint ſine calumnia per annum et diem in civitatibus noſtris, vel in burgis muro vallatis, vel in caſtris noſtris a die illa liberi officiuntur, et liberi a jugo ſervitutis ſuæ ſint in perpetuum.

(*i*) *Antiq. Diſcourſes, p.* 190, 191.

(*k*) Madox's Baronia, page 20.——(*l*) Littleton's Hiſtory of Henry the Second, vol. 1, p. 219.

(*m*) Acta Regia, page 46.

number ſtipulated. On the acceſſion of Henry to the throne, diverſe others were deſtroyed; and all perſons prohibited from erecting new ones, without the king's eſpecial licence, called licentia kernellare (*n*), or crenellare. Few, if any, of theſe licences are of older date than the reign of Edward the Third. A copy of one (*o*), granted by Richard the Second to the Lord Scrope, for the erection of the caſtle of Bolton in Yorkſhire, is inſerted in the note below.

Royal caſtles, for the defence of the country, were however erected, when deemed neceſſary, at the public expence.

The few caſtles in being in the Saxon time, were, probably on occaſion of war or invaſions, garriſoned by the national militia, and at other times ſlightly guarded by the domeſtics of the princes or great perſonages who reſided therein; but, after the Conqueſt, when all the eſtates were converted into baronies, held by knights ſervice, caſtle-guard coming under that denomination, was among the duties to which particular tenants were liable. From theſe ſervices, the biſhops and abbots, who till the time of the Normans had held their lands in frank almoign (*p*), or free alms, were, by this new regulation, not exempted; they were not indeed, like the laity, obliged to perſonal ſervice, it being ſufficient that they provided fit and able perſons to officiate in their ſtead. This was, however, at firſt ſtoutly oppoſed by Anſelm, archbiſhop of Canterbury; who being obliged to find ſome knights to attend king William Rufus in his wars in Wales, complained of it as an innovation and infringement of the rights and immunities of the church.

It was no uncommon thing for the Conqueror, and the kings of thoſe days, to grant eſtates to men of approved fidelity and valour, on condition that they ſhould perform caſtle-guard, with a certain number of men, for ſome ſpecified time; and ſometimes they were likewiſe bound by their tenures to keep in repair ſome tower or bulwark, as was the caſe at Dover Caſtle.

In proceſs of time, theſe ſervices were commuted for annual rents, ſometimes ſtiled ward-penny, and wayt-fee (*q*), but commonly caſtle-guard rents; payable on fixed days, under prodigious penalties, called ſurſizes. At Rocheſter (*r*) if a man failed in the payment of his rent of caſtle-guard, on the feaſt of St. Andrew, his debt was doubled every tide, during the time for which the payment was

(*n*) From crena, a notch.

(*o*) Richardus Dei gracia rex Angliæ & Francie & dominus Hibernie, omnibus ad quos preſentes litterae pervenerint ſalutem, ſciatis quod de gracia noſtra ſpeciali conceſſimus & licentiam dedimus pro nobis & heredibus noſtris dilecto & fideli noſtro Ricardo Leſcrop, cancellario noſtro quod ipſe manerium ſuum de Bolton in Wencelow Dale, ſeu unam placeam infra idem manerium muro de Petra & calce firmare & kernellare & manerium illud ceu placeam, illam ſic firmatum & kernellatum vel firmatam & kernellatam, tenere poſſit ſibi et heredibus ſuis imperpetuum ſine occaſione vel impedimento noſtri vel heredum noſtrorum juſticiorum eſcaetorum vice comitum aut aliorum balivorum ſeu miniſtrorum noſtrorum vel heredum noſtrorum quorumcunque. In cujus rei teſtimonium has literas noſtras fieri fecimus patentes. Teſte meipſo apud Weſtmonaſterium quarto die Julij anno regni noſtri tertio. Per breve de privato ſigillo. *Waltham.*

(*p*) As tenants in frank almoigne, their eſtates were only liable to the trinoda neceſſitas, building of bridges, caſtles for the defence of the country, and repelling invaſions; whereas, by the new eſtabliſhment and tenures, they were obliged to perform military ſervice in foreign countries, and in time of peace.—(*q*) Blount's Law Dictionary.

(*r*) Hiſtory of Rocheſter, page 40; and Antiq. Diſcourſes, page 190.

delayed. Theſe were afterwards reſtrained by an act of parliament made in the reign of King Henry the Eighth (*s*); and finally annihilated, with the tenures by knights ſervice, in the time of Charles the Second (*t*). Such caſtles as were private property, were guarded either by mercenary ſoldiers, or the tenants of the lord or owner.

CASTLES which belonged to the Crown, or fell to it either by forfeiture or eſcheat, (circumſtances that frequently happened in the diſtracted reigns of the feudal times) were generally committed to the cuſtody of ſome truſty perſon, who ſeems to have been indifferently ſtiled governor and conſtable. Sometimes alſo they were put into the poſſeſſion of the ſheriff of the county, who often converted them into priſons: inſtances of this occur in many caſtles deſcribed in this work. That officer was then accountable at the Exchequer, for the farm or produce of the lands belonging to the places entruſted to his care, as well as all other profits: he was likewiſe, in caſe of war or invaſion, obliged to victual and furniſh them with munition, out of the iſſues of his county; to which he was directed by writ of privy-ſeal. Variety of theſe writs, temp. Edward III. are to be ſeen in Madox's Hiſtory of the Exchequer, one of which is given in the notes (*u*); and it appears, from the ſame authority, that the barons of the Exchequer were ſometimes appointed to ſurvey theſe caſtles (*w*), and the ſtate of the buildings and works carrying on therein.

THE materials of which caſtles were built, varied, according to the places of their erection; but the manner of their conſtruction ſeems to have been pretty uniform. The outſides of the walls were generally built with the ſtones neareſt at hand, laid as regularly as their ſhapes would admit; the inſides were filled up with the like materials, mixed with a great quantity of fluid mortar, which was called, by the workmen, grout work: a very ancient method of building, uſed by the Romans, and quoted by Palladio, and all the writers on architecture. The angles were always coigned, and the arches turned with ſquared ſtone, brought from Caen in Normandy, with which the whole outſide was now and then caſed. Sometimes, inſtead of ſtone, the inſides of the walls were formed with ſquared chalk, as is the caſtle of Guildford; and even the pillars and arches of a groined vault in that

(*s*) Vide Dover Caſtle, plate 1, in this work.——(*t*) 12 Charles II, cap. 24.

(*u*) Rex volens certis ex cauſis caſtrum ſuum Norwyci, quod eſt in cuſtodia vice comitis ex commiſſione regis, competenter muniri & ſalvo et ſecure cuſtodiri: præceptum eſt Vicecomiti in fide qua regi tenetur, quod caſtrum prædictum victualibus & rebus aliis neceſſariis, pro cuſtodia & municione ejuſdem congruentibus, de exitibus ballivæ ſuæ muniri faciat competenter, abſq; dilacionis incommodo aliquali; ne pro defectu munitionis aut ſufficientis cuſtodiæ, periculum Regi inde immineat quovis modo. Et hoc, ſicut ſe & ſua diligit, ac indignationem & forisfacturam regis graviſſimam vitare voluerit, non omittat. Cuſtus vero rationabilis, quos circa municionem prædictam per ipſum Vicecomitem apponi continget, cum rex illos rite ſciverit, eidem vice comiti in compoto ſuo ad ſcaccarium debite allocari faciet. De hijs eciam quæ Vicecomes circa municionem prædictam appoſuerit & eorum precio, (de quibus omnibus & ſingulis, niſi ex cauſa neceſſaria ea circa ſalvationem ejuſdem caſtri apponi & expendi opporteat, rex per ipſum vult reſponderi) Theſaurio & baronibus di ſcaccario apud Weſtm. in Octabis, S. Hillarij, diſtincte & aperte per ſingula ſingillatim conſtare faciat. Et habebat ibi tunc hoc breve. T. W. de Norwico, xxix die Decembris. Per breve de privato ſigillo directum prædicti W. tunc cuſtodi Theſaurariæ regis, vol. 1, page 382.——(*w*) Vol. 2, page 67.

town, ſuppoſed formerly to have belonged to the caſtle. When the Normans found the ruins of an ancient building on the ſite of their intended ſtructure, they either endeavoured to incorporate it into their work, or made uſe of the materials; as may be ſeen by many buildings of known Norman conſtruction, wherein are fragments of Saxon architecture, or large quantities of Roman bricks; which has cauſed them often to be miſtaken for Roman or Saxon edifices.

THE general ſhape or plan of theſe caſtles, depended entirely on the caprice of the architects; or the form of the ground intended to be occupied: neither do they ſeem to have confined themſelves to any particular figure in their towers; ſquare, round and poligonal, oftentimes occurring in the original parts of the ſame building.

THE ſituation commonly choſen, was an eminence; or elſe the bank of a river.

THE names and uſes of the different works of ancient fortifications, can only be aſcertained by an attention to minute hiſtorical relations of ſieges in thoſe times; ancient records, relative to their repairs; and the labours of our gloſſographers. From theſe I ſhall endeavour to illuſtrate them.

To begin then from without:---the firſt member of an ancient caſtle was the barbican (*x*). The etymology of this word, as explained by diverſe authors, is given in the notes below; and although in this they ſomewhat differ, yet all agree, that it was a watch-tower, for the purpoſe of deſcrying an enemy at a greater diſtance. It ſeems to have had no poſitive place, except that it was always an outwork, and frequently advanced beyond the ditch; to which it was then joined by a draw-bridge (*y*), and formed the entrance into the caſtle. Barbicans are mentioned in Framlingham and Canterbury caſtles. For the repairing of this work, a tax, called barbacanage (*z*), was levied on certain lands.

THE work next in order was the ditch (*a*), moat, graff, or foſs; for by all theſe different names it was called. This was either wet or dry, according to the

(*x*) Barbican, barbarcane, antemurale, ſpecula, turris ſpeculatoria, propugnaculi genus. *Vox Arabicæ originis.* Spelman autem ab A. S. Burgekenning (i. e.) urbs ſeu propugnaculi ſpecula deflectit *Junius Annon.* Burh-beacon. Urbis ſpecula prœtenturis idonea. *Skinner.* Barbacana propugnaculum exterius, quo oppidum aut caſtrum; præſertim vero eorum portæ aut muri muniuntur. *Du Cange.* The caſtle, it ſeems, for the more ſecurity, was foreſenced with a barbican, or barbacan; which exotick word, Sir Henry Spelman thus interprets. A barbacan is a fort or hold; a munition placed in the front of a caſtle, or an outwork; alſo a hole in the wall of a city or caſtle, through which arrows and darts were caſt out; alſo a watch-tower: it is an Arabic word. So he: Minſhew thus. A barbican (ſaith he) or outnook in a wall, with holes to ſhoot out at the enemy: ſome take it for a centinel-houſe, or ſcout-houſe. Chaucer uſeth the word barbican for a watch-tower, of the Saxon ber—ic—ken; i. e. I ken, or ſee the borough: had he ſaid burgh--becan, he had gone pretty nigh; for thence I would derive it, were I not convinced of its Arabic original. *Somner's Canterbury, page* 20.

(*y*) Barbicanum, a watch-tower, bulwark, or breaſt-work. Mandatum eſt Johanni de Kilmyngton, cuſtodi caſtri regis, & honori de Pickering, quoddam barbacanum ante portam caſtri regis prædicti muro lapideo, & in eodem barbicano quondam portam cum ponte verſatili, &c. De novo facere, &c. T. rege 10 Auguſt, clauſ. 17 Edw. II. m. 39. *Blount's Law Dictionary.*

(*z*) Barbicanage (barbicanagium) money given to the maintenance of a barbican, or watch-tower; carta 17 Edward III. m. 6, n. 14. *Blount.*

(*a*) Mote, or moat, generally means a ditch, as in this place: yet it ſometimes ſignifies a caſtle, on the ſite of ſome ancient fortreſs. Mota de Windſor is uſed for Windſor Caſtle, in the agreement between king Stephen, and Henry, duke of Normandy.

circumſtances of the ſituation; though, when it could be had, our anceſtors generally choſe the former: but they do not ſeem to have had any particular rule for either its depth or breadth. When it was dry, there were ſometimes ſubterranean paſſages, through which the cavalry could ſally. Ditches of royal caſtles were cleanſed at the public expence; or that perhaps of the tenants of the lands adjoining, by an impoſition, or tax, as appears from ſeveral charters in the Monaſticon, whereby the Monks are exempted from that charge. This ditch was ſometimes called the Ditch del Bayle, or of the Ballium; a diſtinction from the ditches of the interior works. Over it was either a ſtanding, or draw-bridge, leading to the ballium. Within the ditch were the walls of the ballium, or outworks. In towns, the appellation of ballium * was given to a work fenced with paliſades, and ſometimes maſonry, covering the ſuburbs, but in caſtles was the ſpace immediately within the outer wall. When there was a double enceinte of walls, the areas next each wall were ſtiled the outer and inner ballia. The manner in which theſe are mentioned below (*a*), in the ſiege of Bedford Caſtle, ſufficiently juſtify this poſition: which receives farther confirmation, from the enumeration of the lands belonging to Colcheſter Caſtle; wherein are ſpecified, "The upper "bayley, in which the caſtle ſtands; and the nether bayley, &c."

THE wall of the ballium in caſtles was commonly high, flanked with towers; and had a parapet, embattled, crenellated, or garretted, for the mounting of it. There were flights of ſteps at convenient diſtances; and the parapet often had the merlons pierced with long chinks, ending in round holes, called oillets.

FATHER DANIEL mentions a work, called a bray (*b*), which he thinks ſomewhat ſimilar to this ballium.

* Dans la ſuite on fit une eſpece de fortification a quelque diſtance de la ville a la tete des Faux Bourgs, de la quelle, Froiſſart fait très-ſouvent mention, & qu'il apelle du non de Bailles. Ce mot vient de battaglia mot Latin de la baſſe Latinité qui ſignifie une fortification, un retranchement ou l'on battailloit. C'étoit la en effet que les partis ennemis qui couroient la campagne, venoient quelquefois fair le coup de lance avec ceux de la garniſon. C'étoit par lá que l'on commencoit l'attaque d'une ville.

Si ſe retrahit l'oſt, dit froiſſart en parlant de l'attaque que le comte de Hainaut fit a la ville de St. Amand en Flandre ſi tôt qu'il fut venu & ſa compagnie á laſſaut, qui fut moult grand & dur & conquirent de premiere venüe les bailles & vindrent juſqu' á la porte qui ouvre devers Mortagne. Ce retranchement étoit quelquefois de bois ou de paliſſades, quelquefois il étoit de maçonnerie. C'étoit un poſt avancé ou l'on faiſoit la garde, pour empécher la ſurpriſe de la place par les ports.... Je ne ſçai ſi ces bailles étoint differentes d'un eſpece de fortification que nos anciens auteurs appelloient du nom de barbacane. Les murailles auſſi hautes que ſolides, dit le Moine d'Auxerre ſous l'an 1201, outre les avant-murs qu'ils appellent barbacannes, furent renverſées.——Or les bailles quand elles étoient faites de maçonnerie; étoient des eſpeces d'avant-murs. Ainſi il y a de l'apparence que cetoit la meme choſe. *Pere Daniel. Hiſt. de la Milice Francoiſe*, Tom. I. p. 604.

(*a*) Ballium, propugnaculi ſpecies. *Du Cange.* Et coururent pluſieurs fois juſques a la baille, & la mirent en feu. *Chronicon Flandr. cap.* 113. La feirent l'un á lautre moult grant honneur, & mangerent ſeant ſur les bailles enſemble. *Ibidem.*———The caſtle was taken by four aſſaults: in the firſt was taken the barbican; in the ſecond, the outer ballia; at the third attack, the wall by the old tower was thrown down by the miners, where, with great danger, they poſſeſſed themſelves of the inner ballia, through a chink; at the fourth aſſault, the miners ſet fire to the tower, ſo that the ſmoke burſt out, and the tower itſelf was cloven to that degree, as to ſhew viſibly ſome broad chinks; whereupon the enemy ſurrendered. *Camden's Britannia. Bedford.*

(*b*) Les braies paroiſſent avoir eté encore une fortification comme les bailles, & la barbacane. Quelques auteurs l' apellent en Latin brachiale. Les braies étoient donc, ce me ſemble, une eſpece d'avant mur elevé devant la

WITHIN the ballium were the lodgings and barracks for the garriſon and artificers, wells, chapels, and even ſometimes a monaſtery. Large mounts were alſo often thrown up in this place: theſe ſerved, like modern cavaliers, to command the adjacent country.

THE entrance into the ballium was commonly through a ſtrong machicolated and embattled gate, between two towers, ſecured by a herſe, or portcullis. Over this gate were rooms, originally intended for the porter of the caſtle: the towers ſerved for the corps de garde.

ON an eminence, in the center, commonly (*a*), though not always, ſtood the keep (*b*), or dungeon (*c*); ſometimes, as in the relation of the ſiege of Bedford Caſtle, emphatically called the tower; it was the citadel, or laſt retreat of the garriſon, often ſurrounded by a ditch, with a draw-bridge, and machicolated gate (*d*); and occaſionally with an outer wall, garniſhed with ſmall towers. In large caſtles it was generally a high ſquare tower, of four or five ſtories, having turrets at each angle: in theſe turrets were the ſtair-caſes; and frequently, as in Dover and Rocheſter Caſtles, a well. If, inſtead of a ſquare, the keep or dungeon happened to be round, it was called a JULLIET (*e*), from a vulgar opinion, that large round towers were built by JULIUS CÆSAR.

THE walls of this edifice were always of an extraordinary thickneſs; which has enabled them to outlive the other buildings, and to withſtand the united injuries of time and weather: the keeps, or dungeons, being almoſt the only part now remaining of our ancient caſtles.

HERE were the ſtate-rooms for the governor, if that title may be given to ſuch gloomy cells; whoſe darkſome appearance induced Mr. Borlaſe to form a conjecture, more ingenious than well-grounded; namely, that theſe buildings were ſtiled dungeons, from their want of light; becauſe the builders, to ſtrengthen their ramparts, denied themſelves the pleaſure of windows: not but moſt of them had

porte; ou peut etre une ſaillie de tour, & apparement de la eſt venu le nom de ſauſſe-braie dans les fortifications modernes, qui eſt comme l'avant-mur du baſtion qu' elle entoure. *P. Daniel, tom.* 1, *p.* 604.——Herſe, eſt un grillage compoſe de pluſieurs piéces de bois qu'on met au deſſus de la porte d'une fortreſſe en de dans & qu'on ſuſpend avec une ou pluſieurs cordes, qui tiennent á un moulinet pour len laiſſer tomber ſur le paſſage & boucher, l'entrée d'une porte, en cas de ſurpriſe. *Dict. d Ingenieur.*——The ſame as portcullis; which is ſo called from porta clauſa, or port-cloſe, a ſort of machine like a harrow.

(*a*) The keeps at Portcheſter, Cambridge, and Oxford Caſtles, were in the exterior walls.

(*b*) The keep, or (as the Frenchmen term a ſtrong tower or platform, as this is, in the middle of a caſtle or ſort, wherein the beſieged make their laſt efforts of defence, when the reſt is forced) dungeon. *Somner's Roman Forts, page* 93.

(*c*) Cotgrove gives, verbatim, the ſame explanation of dungeon. Donjon. En fortification, eſt une reduit dans une place ou dans une citadelle, ou l'on ſe retire quelque ſois pour capituler. *Dictionaire portatif de l'Ingenieur.* Dunjo. Caſtellulum, minus propugnaculum, in duno ſeu colle edificatum, unde nomen donjon. *Du Cange.*

(*d*) Machecollare vel machecoulare (from the French, maſchecoulis, to make a warlike device; eſpecially over the gate of a caſtle) reſembling a grate, through which ſcalding water, or offenſive things, may be thrown upon pioneers or aſſailants. 1 *Inſt. fol.* 5, 8. *Blount's Law Dictionary.* Machicolations over gates, are ſmall projections, ſupported by brackets, having open intervals at the bottom, through which melted lead and ſtones were thrown down on the heads of the aſſailants; and likewiſe large weights, faſtened to ropes or chains, by which, after they had taken effect, they were retracted by the beſieged. *See a plan and ſection in the plate.*

(*e*) Antiq. Diſcourſes, page 187.

ſmall chinks, which anſwered the double purpoſe of admitting the light, and ſerved for embraſures, from whence they might ſhoot with long and croſs bows. Theſe chinks, though without they have ſome breadth, and carry the appearance of windows, are very narrow next the chambers, diminiſhing conſiderably inwards. Some of the ſmaller keeps had not even theſe conveniences, but were ſolely lighted by a ſmall perforation in the top, or ſkylight, called courts. It was from this ſort, Mr. Borlaſe formed his ſuppoſition.

THE different ſtories were frequently vaulted, being divided by ſtrong arches; ſometimes indeed they were only ſeparated by joiſts: on the top was generally a platform, with an embattled parapet, from whence the garriſon could ſee and command the exterior works.

THE total change in the art of war, brought about by the invention of gunpowder and artillery, the more ſettled ſtate of the nation, Scotland becoming part of the dominions of the kings of England, the reſpectable footing of our navy, whoſe wooden walls ſecure us from invaſions, and the abolition of the feudal ſyſtem, all conſpired to render caſtles of little uſe or conſequence, as fortreſſes: ſo the great improvements in arts and ſciences, and their conſtant attendant, the encreaſe of luxury, made our nobility and gentry build themſelves more pleaſant and airy dwellings; relinquiſhing theſe ancient, dreary manſions of their forefathers, where the enjoyment of light and air was ſacrificed to the conſideration of ſtrength; and whoſe beſt rooms, according to our modern, refined notions, have more the appearance of goals and dungeons for priſoners, than apartments for the reception of a rich and powerful baron.

HOWEVER, in the reign of Charles the Firſt, a little before the breaking out of the Civil-war, ſome enquiry into the ſtate of theſe buildings ſeems to have taken place; for, on the 22d of January, 1636 (*a*), a commiſſion was iſſued, appointing Lieutenant Colonel Francis Coningſby, commiſſary-general of and for all the caſtles and fortifications in England and Wales, with an allowance of 13*s.* 4*d.* a day, to be paid out of the cheques and defalcations, that ſhould be made by him from time to time; or, in default thereof, out of the Treaſury. Whether this office was really inſtituted for the purpoſe of ſcrutinizing into the ſtate of theſe fortreſſes, as foreſeeing the events which afterwards happened; or whether it was only formed to gratify ſome favourite, does not appear. During the troubles of that reign, ſome ancient caſtles were garriſoned and defended; ſeveral of which were afterwards deſtroyed, by order of the parliament: ſince that period, they have been abandoned to the mercy of time, weather, and the more unſparing hands of avaricious men. The laſt have proved the moſt deſtructive; many of theſe monuments of ancient magnificence having been by them torn down, for the ſake of the materials: by which the country has been deprived of thoſe remains of antiquity, ſo eſſential, in the eyes of foreigners, to the dignity of a nation; and which, if rightly conſidered, tended to inſpire the beholder with a love for

(*a*) Acta Regia.

the now happy eſtabliſhment; by leading him to compare the preſent, with thoſe times when ſuch buildings were erected.---Times when this unhappy kingdom was torn by inteſtine wars; when the ſon was armed againſt the father, and brother ſlaughtered brother; when the lives, honour, and properties of the wretched inhabitants, depended on the nod of an arbitrary king; or were ſubject to the more tyrannical and capricious wills of lawleſs and foreign barons.

The method of attack and defence of fortified places, practiſed by our anceſtors, before (*a*), and even ſometime after the invention of gunpowder, was much after the manner of the Romans; moſt of the ſame machines being made uſe of, though ſome of them under different names.

They had their engines for throwing ſtones and darts, of different weights and ſizes: the greater, anſwering to our battering cannon and mortars; the ſmaller, to our field-pieces. Theſe were diſtinguiſhed by the appellations of baliſta, catapulta, eſpringals, terbuchets, mangonas, mangonels, bricolles, the petrary, the matafarda and the war-wolf. Father Daniel alſo mentions a machine, called engine-a-virge, uſed by the Engliſh, in France, as late as the reign of Charles the Seventh; but acknowledges, he did not know what ſort of machine it was.

For approaching the walls, they had their moveable towers; by which the beſiegers were not only covered, but their height, commanding the ramparts, enabled them to ſee the garriſon, who were otherwiſe hid by the parapet: for paſſing the ditch, the cattus and ſow, machines anſwering to the pluteus and vinea, or teſtudo and muſculus of the Romans: the ram was ſometimes, but not commonly uſed.

Mines too were frequently practiſed. Theſe were either ſubterraneous paſſages into ſome unfrequented part of the fortreſs; or elſe made with an intent, as at preſent, to throw down the wall: and the engineers of thoſe days were not unacquainted with artificial fireworks.

Few of theſe machines, except the baliſta and catapulta, are ſo deſcribed as to give any tolerable idea of their conſtruction: concerning even them, authors conſiderably differ. For the remainder, of ſome we have only the name and uſe, and of others, barely the name; probably owing to moſt of the hiſtorians of thoſe times being Monks, who knew them only by hearſay; or from an account of their effects: nevertheleſs, in order to obtain ſuch knowledge of them as theſe ſcanty materials will furniſh, it will be neceſſary to collect what thoſe writers relate concerning them, tending to elucidate either their form, uſe, or powers.

Of baliſtas and catapultas, writers deſcribe various ſorts; and frequently confound thoſe two machines together. Indeed, though the baliſta moſtly threw darts, it was ſometimes uſed for caſting ſtones (*b*): as was alſo the

(*a*) Mangonels were uſed fifty years after the invention of cannon. *P. Daniel Hiſtoire de la Milice François, p.* 562, *& ibid.* 563. Indeed, the art of war was pretty ſimilar all over Europe, at leaſt after the firſt Cruſade; where ſo many generals meeting, each undoubtedly adopted what he ſaw excellent in any of the confederated nations.——(*b*) Baliſtam verbere nervorum torqueri, magnâ vi jacere aut haſtas, aut ſaxa. *Iſidorus.*

catapulta (*a*); which, from its name, ſhould ſeem to be appropriated for darts. Theſe have been deſcribed by Vitruvius, Ammainus Marcellinus, Iſidorus, Lipſius, Follard, Perrault, and others; and, from all their accounts, it is evident, that the force, or moving power, depended on the elaſticity of twiſted cords, made with womens hair, that of horſes, or the bowels of animals (*b*): the thicker this cordage, the greater was the force of the engine.

ANOTHER kind, ſometimes alſo called oniger, or ſcorpio, acted by the fall of a great weight, fixed to the ſhorteſt arm of a ſuſpended lever; this raiſing the other arm, to which a ſling was fixed, threw a ſtone with great velocity. A repreſentation of this is given in the plate: marked O.

FROM an ancient record it appears, that one Edmund Willoughby (*c*), held lands in England, by the ſervice of finding a catapulta every year; but it is doubtful whether by this is meant the engine here treated of, or only a ſling, which was ſometimes called by that name.

THE bricolle (*d*), petrary (*e*), mangana and mangonel (*f*), matafunda (*g*),

(*a*) Catapulta, ſignifying a dart. Accidit interea commiſſo contra Anglo prælio per regem præfatum, eumdem ſagitta ferrea & hamata, quæ vulgo catapulta dici ſolet lethaliter vulnerari. *Vita S. Monani to* 1 *S S. Martin, p.* 88. Plautus uſus eſt etiam pro telo, alii pro baliſta. *Du Cange.*

(*b*) Vegetius ſays, Onager, autem dirigit lapides, ſed pro nervorum craſſitudine & magnitudine ſaxorum pondera jaculatur; nam quanto amplior fuerit, tanto majora ſaxa ſulminis more contorquet.——On this principle the catapulta M was conſtructed. The cords, like a ſkein of thread, were wound evenly over the iron pieces, croſſing the two holes, D and E, called capitals, till they were full. In the center of theſe cords, the arm of the catapulta, W, is fixed; having a cavity, or ſpoon, at its extremity, for holding ſtones, which were encloſed in a ſmall baſket. The cords were then twiſted, by means of the wheels and pinions marked X X; the arm, which before ſtood perpendicular, was now brought down to the poſition repreſented, and kept faſt by a catch: the ſtones were then put into the ſpoon, and the arm, being ſuddenly let go, ſtruck againſt the upright piece Z, and projected the contents of the ſpoon with amazing force. When a dart was uſed, the contrivance K was annexed.———The baliſta depended on the ſame principles: its form was more that of a croſs-bow. It is delineated in the plate: ſee N. ——Mr. Follard conſtructed a catapulta, according to this model; which, though only ten inches long, and thirteen broad, threw a leaden ball, of a pound weight, 230 French toiſes, or fathoms; and ſhot ten darts, the diſtance of one hundred paces.

(*c*) Catapulta, a warlike engine, to ſhoot darts; a ſling. Edmundus Willoughby tenet unum meſſuagium & ſex Bovatas terræ in Carleton, ut de maniero de Shelford, per ſervicium unius catapulta per annum pro omino ſervicio. Lib. Schedul. de term Mich. 14 Hen. IV. Not. ſol. 210. *Blount's Law Dictionary.*

(*d*) Pour ce jour ils ne monſtrerent autre deffenſe que de bricolles, qui geſtoient gros carreaux. *Froiſſart, 4th vol. c.* 18.——Baliſtam majores dixere priſci trabem validam, ita libratam, ut cum pars denſior ponderibus attracta deſcenderet, elevata proceritas ſua funiculis, quos haberet alligatos, funda ſaxum maximi ponderis longe emitteret. Eique maxime nunc machinæ brichollæ eſt appellatio. Blondius, lib. 3. *Romæ Triumphant.*—— Trabuchi, machinæ lithobolæ (ejuſdem fere generis ſunt & bricolæ vocatæ) quibus avorum noſtrorum memoria vaſti molares in hoſtes jaculabantur. *Hieronymus Magius, lib.* 1, *Miſcell. c.* 1.——Bricole is a term uſed in tennis, and ſignifies a rebound.

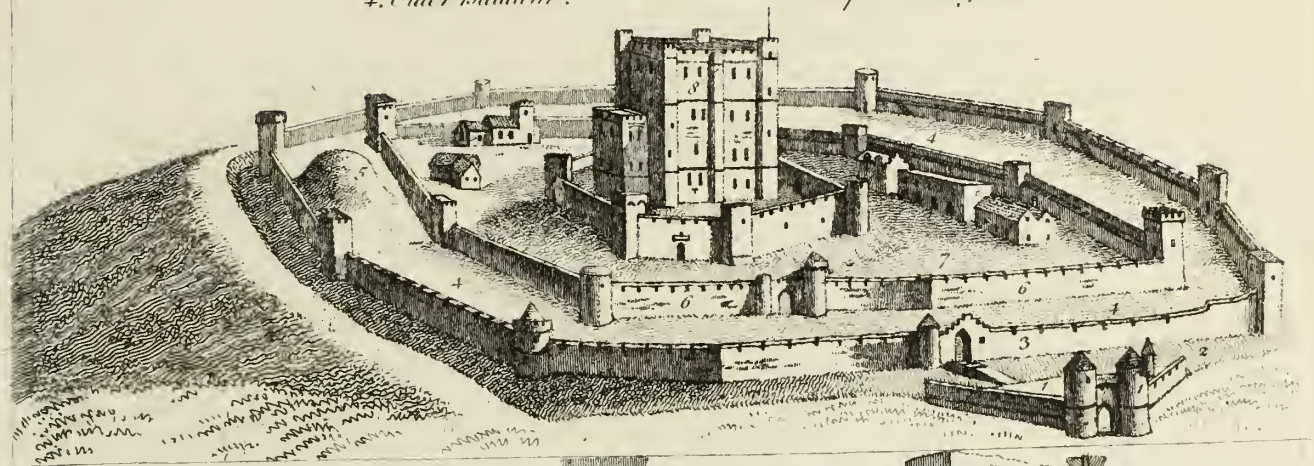
(*e*) Petrariæ Gall. Pierieres. Tormentum quod vulgo dicitur petraria, vel mangonum. *Ugutio.*——Machinas jaculatorias quas mangana vel petrarias vocant. *Willelm. Tyrius, lib.* 8, *cap.* 6.

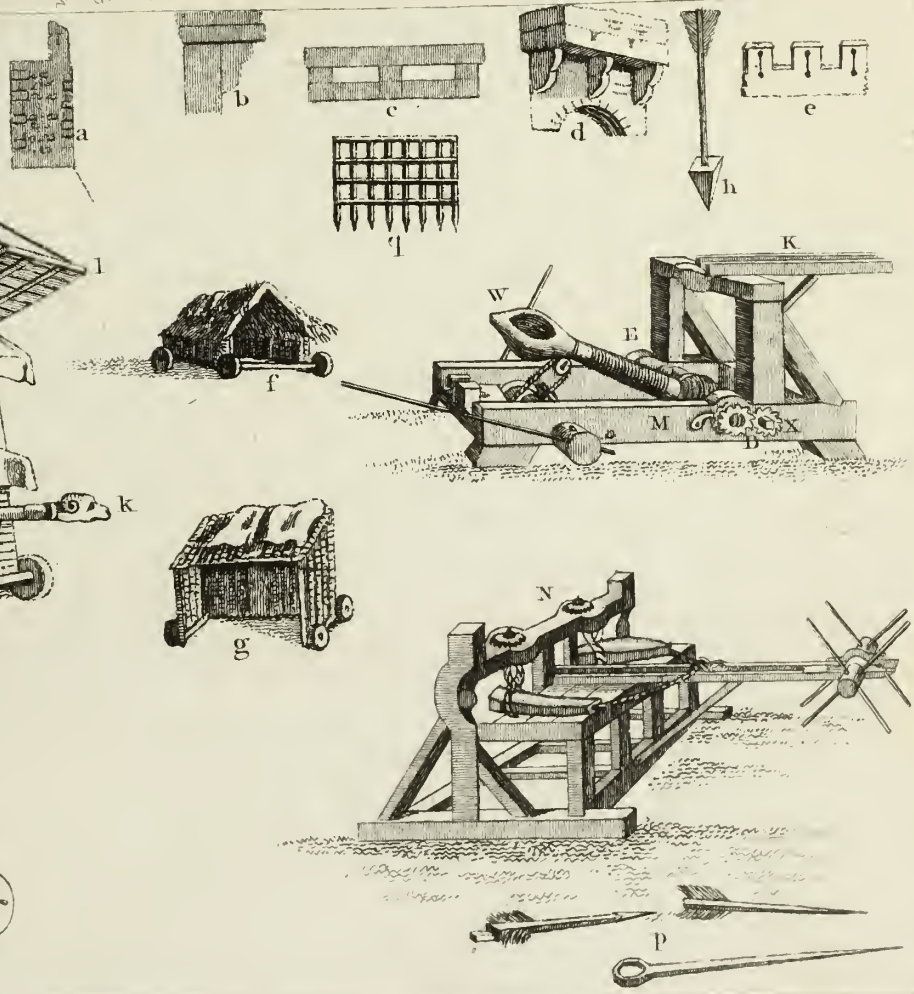
(*f*) Alii vero minoribus tormenti, quæ mangana vocantur mineres immitando lapides. *Will. Tyrius, lib.* 8, *cap.* 6. Mangonellus diminutivum, a mangana, hoc eſt, minor machina jaculatoria. *Du Cange.*——Interea groſſor petraria, mittit ab intus aſſiduc lapides, mangonelluſque minores. *Will. Britto.* 7 *Phillip.*

(*g*) Matafunda. Machina bellica, qua lapides in hoſtes ejaculabantur. *Du Cange.*——Jaciebant ſi quidem hoſtes ſuper noſtros creberrimas lapides cum duobus trabuchetis, mangonello & pluribus matafundi. *Monachus Vallis Sarnai in Hiſt. Albigenſi, c.* 86.—Some derive its name from funda & mactare, ſometimes written matare; i. e. a murdering ſling.

References.

1. *The Barbacan.*
2. *The Ditch or Moat.*
3. *Wall of the outer Ballium.*
4. *Outer Ballium.*
5. *Artificial Mount.*
6. *Wall of the Inner Ballium.*
7. *Inner Ballium.*
8. *Keep or Dungeon.*





a. *Section of the Wall of the Ballium.* b. *A Section.* c. *A Plan &* d. *A Perspective representation of a Machicolation.* e. *Crenelles & Viletes.*
f. *The Sow.* g. *The Cattus.* h. *A Dart called a Quarrel.* i. *A Moveable Tower of three Stages.* k. *A Battering Ram.* l. *A Bridge to*
Let down for Storming. o. *Catapulta acting by counterpoise.* p. *Darts for the Balista &* q. *Winch for bending it.* q. *Horse or Portcullis.*

terbuchet (*a*), and warwolf (*b*), were all engines for throwing ſtones, and other great maſſes, and probably of the ſame mechaniſm, but differently called, according to the magnitude of the weights they projected, as was the caſe in our ancient artillery; where, according to their caliber, the pieces were ſtiled, canon, demi-canon, culverin, ſaker, Robinet, falcon and baſe. The eſpringal (*c*) threw large darts, called muchettæ, ſometimes, inſtead of feathers, winged with braſs.

Of the vaſt force of theſe machines (*d*), ſurpriſing ſtories are related. No wall, however thick, was able to reſiſt their ſtroke: and, in the field, they ſwept away the deepeſt files of armed men. With them were thrown not only large mill-ſtones, but ſometimes the carcaſes of dead horſes, and even living men. The former, according to Froiſſart (*e*), was practiſed by John, duke of Normandy, ſon of king Philip de Valois, when he beſieged the count de Hainhault, in Thyn-Levêque, in the Low Countries, and whom he thereby obliged to capitulate, on account of the infection cauſed in the town; and, as Camden ſays (*f*), it was alſo done by the Turks, at Negroponte.

The other, namely throwing a living man, is alſo mentioned by Froiſſart (*g*). It happened at the ſiege of Auberoche, in Gaſcoigne; where the Engliſh, being cloſely preſſed by the Count de Laille, lieutenant-general to Philip de Valois, they ſent out an eſquire, with a letter, which he was to endeavour to deliver to the earl of Derby, their general; but, being taken, his letter was read, and

(*a*) Trebuchetum, trabuchetum. Catapultæ ſpecies, ſeu machina grandior ad projiciendos lapides, & concutiendos urbium obſeſſarum muros. *Du Cange.*——Per ſeptem trebucheta ordinata, quæ tam de die, quam de nocte, in caſtrum capacii projicere non ceſſabant. *Matt. Paris, an.* 1246.——D'un trebukiet fit trebukier, mult grant partie de lor murs. *Phillipus Mouſkes in Phil. Auguſto.* ——Otto imp. ab Apulia & Italia reverſus obſedit oppidum Viſenſe, quod ſimiliter expugnavit uſque ad arcam.——Ibi tunc primam cæſſit haberi uſus inſtrumenti bellici quod vulgo tribock appellari ſolet. *Fragmentum Hiſt. poſt Albert. Argentin. an.* 1212.——Withouten ſtroke it mote be take of trepeget, or mangonell. *Chaucer. Roman. of the Roſe,* 6278.——This machine took its name from the word trebuchare, to throw down, according to the Latin of thoſe times; or from trabucher, to outweigh, as its manner of working might be by means of great weights.

(*b*) The warwolf is thus mentioned from Mat. Weſtm. by Camden, in his Remains, ſpeaking of King Edward the Firſt: "At the ſiege of Stivelin, where he, with another engine, named the warwolfe, pierced with one ſtone, "and cut as even as a thread, two vauntmures; as he did before at the ſiege of Brehin, where Thomas Maule, the "Scotſman, ſcoffed at the Engliſh artillerie, with wiping the walle with his handkerchief, until both he and the "walle were wiped away with a ſhot." Again, in his Britannia, relating the ſiege of Bedford: "Concerning "theſe mangonels, petraries, trabucces, bricoles, eſpringolds, and what our anceſtors called the warwolf, out of "which, before the invention of bombs, they threw great ſtones, with ſo much force as to break open ſtrong "gates; concerning theſe (I ſay) I have ſeveral things to add, if they were not foreign to my purpoſe."——Juſſit rex arietem fabricari, quem Greci Nicontam vocant, quaſi vincentem omnia, & lupum belli. Verum aries indecens & incompoſitus parum aut nihil profuit: lupus autem belli: minus ſumptuoſus inclufis plus nocuit. *Mat. Weſtminſter, ann.* 1304.

(*c*) Eſpringal baliſta validior qua telum emittitur. *Du Cange.*——Muſchetta telum quod baliſta validiori emittitur. *Du Cange.*—Poteſt preterea fieri quod hæc eadem baliſtæ tela poſſent trahere quæ muſchettæ vulgariter appellantur. *Apud Senatum, lib.* 2, *part* 4, *c.* 22.—Et font getter leur ſpringales

Ca' & la ſonnent li clairain

Li garrot empené d'airain. *Guiart, l'an.* 1304.

(*d*) Compoſitis autem ab ingenioſis piſanorum artificibus manganis, gattio atque lignus caſtellis, urbem fortiter expugnabant; et cum his machinis urbis mœnia & mœnium turres, potentiſſimæ rampebant.

(*e*) Froiſiart, vol. 1, chap. 50.——(*f*) Camden's Remains. *Vide Artillery.*——(*g*) Froiſſart, vol. 1, chap. 107.

afterwards tied round his neck; and he, being put into an engine, was thrown back into the caſtle, where he fell dead among his companions.

THEY were alſo ſometimes uſed for the execution of perſons condemned to die (*a*): perhaps ſomewhat like the method practiſed in the Eaſt-Indies; where military criminals are tied faſt to, and fired from, the mouth of a cannon: though, in the caſe mentioned by the note here alluded to, probably the unhappy ſufferer was only fixed to this machine, in order to be more conveniently tortured.

MOVEABLE towers are repeatedly mentioned (*b*), as much in uſe, particularly by the Engliſh. Froiſſart is very circumſtantial in his account of one (*c*), uſed at the ſiege of Reole, by the earl of Derby; who having laid before that place nine weeks, cauſed two towers, three ſtories high, to be built with large beams. Each tower was placed on four ſmall wheels, or trucks, and towards the town covered with boiled leather, to guard it from fire, and to reſiſt the darts: on every ſtory were placed an hundred archers. Theſe towers were puſhed, by the force of men, to the city wall; the ditch having been filled up, whilſt they were building. From theſe the ſoldiers, placed in the different ſtages, made ſuch vigorous diſcharges, that none of the garriſon, except ſuch as were extremely well armed, or covered with large ſhields, dared to ſhew themſelves on the rampart. He likewiſe mentions another of theſe machines (*d*), with which the Engliſh (*e*), under John de Holland, and Thomas de Percy, took the town of Ribadana, in Gallicia; and ſo terrified the garriſon of Maures (*f*), that they did not wait to be ſummoned,

(*a*) Primitus eum ligaverat, proh dolor, ad machinam extructam, quam vulgo mangonam appellant. *In Paſſione S. Thyemonis Archiepiſcopi Juvanenſis.*

(*b*) Vide Pere Daniel Hiſt. Milice, Fr. tom. 1, p. 558.——(*c*) Froiſſart, vol. 1, chap. 18, 19.

(*d*) Environ quatre jours après ce que meſſire iehan de Hollande et meſſire Thomas de Parcy furent venuz en loſt du mareſchal eurent chevaliers et eſcuyers et toutes gens ordonné ung grant appareillement d'aſſault & eurent fait faire ouvrer et charpenter ung grant engin de boys ſans roes que on pouvoit bien mener & bouter a force de gens la ou on vouloit & dedans pouvoit bien aiſément cent chevaliers et cent archers, mais par aſſault archiers y entrerent. Et avoit on remply aux foſſez a l'endroit ou l'engin devoit eſtre mené. Lors commenca l'aſſault et approcherent les engins a force de boutemens ſur roes et là eſtoient archiers bien pourveuz de Saiette qui tirioent a ceulx de dedans de grant facon, et ceux de dedans gettoient a eux dardes de telle maniere qui c'eſtoit grant merveille. Deſſoubz avoit manteaulx couvers de fors cuirs de beufz & de vaches pour le geet des pierres et pour le traict des dardes. Et deſſoubz ces manteaulx a la couverture ſe tenoient gens d'armes qui approchoient le mur, leſquelz eſtoient bien paveſchez et picquoient de picz et de hoyaulx au mur, et tant firent quilz empirerent grandement le mur, car les deffendans ny pouvoient entendre pour les archiers qui vivement tyroient et qui fort les enſoignoiert. La fiſt on renverſer ung pan du mur et cheoir es foſſez. Quand les galiciens qui dedans eſtoient virent le grant meſchief ſi furent tous eſbahiz et crierent tout hault. Ces villains nous ont battuz et fait moult de paine et encores ſe mocquent ils de nous quant ilz veulent que nous les recuillons a mercy et ſi eſt la ville noſtre. Nenny reſpondirent aucuns des Angloys, nous ne ſcavons parler Eſpaignol, parlez bon Francois ou Anglois ſi vous voulez que nous vous entendons. Et toujours alloient ilz et paſſoient avant et chaſſoient ces villains qui fuyoiént devant eulx et les occioient a monceaulx, et y eut ce jour mors que dungs et dautres parmy les juifz dons il y avoit aſſez plus de xv cens. Ainſi fut la ville de ribadane gagnée a force. Et y eurent ceulx qui premier y entrerent grant pillage, et par eſpecial ils trouverent plus d'or et dargent es maiſons des juifz que autre part. *Vol.* 3, *feu.* 12.

(*e*) Temp. Richard the Second.

(*f*) Or ſe deſlogerent de ribadane & cheminerent vers la ville de maures en galici & faiſoient mener y membres le grant engin quilz avoient fait charpenter après eux, car ilz veoient bien que ceſtoit ung grant eſpouentail de gens et de villes. Quant ceulx de maures entendirent que les Anglois venoient vers eulx pour avoir leur ville

but ſent a deputation, to offer their ſubmiſſion: ſee the account, in his own words. Here it appears that, whilſt the archers in the tower, by their aſſaults, employed the attention of the garriſon on the ramparts, the armed men, with pickaxes and other inſtruments, deſtroyed the wall. Theſe towers had alſo ſometimes bridges from the upper ſtories; which, being let down upon the parapet, made a paſſage into the town. When the ram was in uſe, it frequently was placed in the ground-floor of this machine; where the men worked it, under the cover and protection of the archers and croſs-bow men above them.

The cattus (*a*), cathouſe, or gattus, was a covered ſhed, ſometimes fixed on wheels, and ſimilar to the vinea and pluteus of the ancients. Under it the beſiegers filled up and paſſed the ditch, ſapped or mined the wall, and ſometimes worked a kind of ram. It is probable, this machine, in different countries, might vary a little in its ſize and form; but its eſſential properties and uſes were the ſame.

The ſow was alſo a covered machine for the ſame purpoſe (*b*), and of much

en obeyſſance & que ribadane avoit eſté prinſe a force & les gens mors dedans et faiſoient les Anglois amener après eulx ung dyable dengin ſi grant & ſi merveilleux que on ne le pouoit deſtruire. Si ſe doubterent grandement de loſt et de ce grand engin. Et ſe trayrent en conſeil pour ſavoir comment ilz ſe maintiendroient, ou ſi ilz ſe defendroient. Eux conſeillez ilz ne pouvoient veoir que le rendre ne leur vaulſiſt mieulx aſſez que ſe deffendre, car ſe ils eſtoient prins par force ilz perdroient corps & avoir: et au deffendre, il ne leur apparoiſſoit conſorte de nul coſté. Regardez diſoient les ſaiges comment, il eſt prins de leur deffenſe á ceulx de ribadane, qui eſtoient bien auſſi fors ou plus que nous ſommes. Ilz ont eu le ſiege près d'un mois & ne les a nulz renfortez ni ſecourus. Le roy de caſtille, a ce que nous entendons comte pour ceſte ſaiſon tout ſe pays de galice, a perdu juſque a la riviere de dorne, ne vous verrez ia de ceſte asnée entrer francoys. Si nous rendons donc debonnairement ſans dommage, & ſans riote en la forme & maniere, que les autres villes ont fait c'eſt bon dirent ilz. Tous furent de ceſte opinion, et comment ferons nous dirent aucuns, en nom de Dieu dirent les plus ſages nous irons ſur le chemin, a l'encontre deulſe et ſi porterons les cleſs de la ville avecques nous et les leur preſenterons, car Anglois ſont courtoiſes gens. Ilz ne nous ſeront nul mal, mas ilz nous receuilleront doulcement, & nous en ſcauront trop grant gré. A ce propos ſe tindrent tous. Adonc iſſirent hors cinquante hommes de la ville deſſus nommée, tous de plus nobtables de la ville, ſi toſt quilz ſceurent que les Anglois approchoient, et ſe mirent ſur le chemin entre la ville, et les Anglois, et portoient les clefs de la ville avecques eulx. Et la ainſi comme au quart dune-lieue ils attendirent, les Anglois qui approchoient. *Vol.* 3, *fol.* 13.

(*a*) Vineas dixerunt veteres, quos nunc militari barbaricoque uſu cattos vocant. *Vegetius, lib.* 4, *cap.* 15.—— Catti ergo ſunt vineæ, ſive plutes, ſub quibus miles in morem felis: quam cattum vulgo dicimus, in ſubſeſſis aut inſidiis latet. *Du Cange.*——Hic faciunt reptare catum, tectique ſub illo ſuffodiunt murum. *Willielmus Brito, lib.* 7, *Phillipid.*——Devant boves ſu l'oſt de France,

Qui contre les flamans contance;
Li mineur pas ne ſoumeillent,
Un chat bon & ſort appareillent;
Tant euvrent deſſous & tant cavent,
Qu' une grant part du mur diſtravent. *Guillelmus Guiart in Phillipo Auguſto.*

Interim rem in deſperato ponentes Leodini, quoddam inſtrumentum ligneum ex trabibus immenſae magnitudinis conſtruentes, quod cattum nuncubant, ſubſtratis artificioſe rotis ligneis ad diruendos muros, trajecti & oppidi wick minare caeperunt. *Zantffliet in Chronico apud Marten, to* 5 *col.* 389.——Gatus, quippe viam per medium foſſatum faciens iam antea prope murum ipſius caſtri præceſſerat; in ipſo enim gato quædam trabs ferrata, quam bercellum appellabant, conſtabat, quam ipſi, qui infra ipſum gatum fuerant foras plus de viginti brachiis projicientes, in murum ipſius caſtri mirabiliter feriebant, ac tandem tantum jam ferierant, qnod de ipſo muro plus de viginti brachiis in terrum projecerant. *Murator, to* 6 *col.* 1041.

(*b*) Sus, machina bellica, quæ & ſcropha, gallis truie. *Du Cange.*——Unum fuit machinamentum, quod noſtri ſuem, veteres vineam vocant quod machina levibus lignis colligata, tecto, tabulis, cratibuſque contexto, lateribus crudis coriis communitis, protegit in ſe ſubſidentes, qui quaſi more ſuis ad murorum ſuffodienda penetrant

the ſame conſtruction, but probably leſs. It was called, in Latin, ſus, ſcropha and truja; from its being uſed for rooting up the earth, like a ſwine; or becauſe the ſoldiers contained therein, were like pigs under a ſow. This was alluded to by the Counteſs, who defended the caſtle of Dunbar againſt Edward the Third; when ſhe threatened, that unleſs the Engliſhmen kept their ſow better, ſhe would make her caſt her pigs. Camden, who mentions this circumſtance in his Remains, ſays, "The ſow is yet uſed in Ireland."

THE ram is ſo well known (*a*), that a deſcription of it would be unneceſſary. It was ſometimes, though not frequently, in the later times, uſed. We find it mentioned in the ſiege of Paris, which happened about the year 886: it is there called aries carcamuſus. It alſo occurs in the notes relative to the warwolf and cattus. Father Daniel ſays (*b*), the uſe of it was left off in France, long before the invention of cannon. It is however mentioned, in a paſſage of Froiſſart, as employed in the time of Philip de Valois, cotemporary of Edward the Third, at the attack of St. Amand in Flanders, by the count of Hainault: but this he thinks rather the extemporaneous idea of the engineer, than the application of a machine then in faſhion. It is however certain, the Venetians uſed it at the ſiege of Zara, which happened about the ſame time; i. e. anno 1345.

MINES, before the uſe of gunpowder, were, as has been before obſerved, of two ſorts: one, where the aſſailants ſimply dug themſelves a paſſage under the walls of the place beſieged; the other, where a breach was intended. In both caſes, by degrees, as the earth was removed, the top of the gallery, or paſſage of the mine, was ſupported by planks, propped up with ſtrong poſts; and, in the latter, the work being carried under the wall or tower propoſed to be thrown down, theſe props were ſmeared over with pitch, roſin, or other combuſtible matters; and likewiſe faggots of dry underwood thrown looſely about; which

ſundamenta. *Willel. Malmſbur. lib.* 4, *Hiſt.*——Dum quidam nobiles, ligneis obumbrati, machinis, quæ, quia verrere videbantur in antra; ſues apellari non videtur inconſonum. *Elmham in vita Hen. V. Reg. Angl. c.* 59, *page* 153. Quandam machinam, quæ ſus appellatur, per quam & plures armati defendi, & foſſata tellure repleri poſſent, fabricare fecit. *Ibidem, cap.* 122, *p.* 317.——Machinas ad ſufficiendum murum habiles & neceſſarias quas vulgo ſcrophas appellant. Truja machina bellica. Gallis truie ita dicta, quod humum, ut ſus, ſubvertat. *Du Cange.*

(*a*) Arietes, vulgo carcamuſas, reſonatos dimeſere duos. *Abbo de Obſid. Paris, lib.* 2.——Dr. Deſaguliers has demonſtrated, in the Annotations on his ſecond lecture on Experimental Philoſophy, that the momentum of a battering ram, twenty-eight inches in diameter, one hundred and eighty feet long, with a head of caſt iron, of one tun and a half; the whole ram, with its iron hoops, weighing 41112 pounds, and moved by the united ſtrength of 1000 men; will be only equal to that of a ball of thirty-ſix pounds weight, ſhot point blank from a cannon.

(*b*) Pour ce qui eſt du belier, je crois que même longtems avant le canon on ne s'en ſervoit guéres en France, j'en trouve cependantun exemple dans Froiſſart ſous Phillipe de Valois, lorſque le Comte de Hainhault attaqua la petite place de ſaint Amand en Flandres: et donc fut la un, dit cet hiſtorien, qui dit, ſire, en celuy endroit ne les aurions jamais; car la porte eſt forte & la voye etroite. Si couſteroit trop des veſties a conquerre: mais faites apporter de gros merriens ouvrés en manieres de pilots & heurtez aux murs de l' abbaye, nous vous certifions que de force on les pertuiſera en pluſieurs lieux, & ſe nous ſommes en l' abbaye la ville eſt notre. ... Donc commanda le comte, qu'on fit ainſi; car pour le mieux on li conſeilloit pour le toſt prendre. Si quiſt grans merriens de cheſne, qui furent tantoit ouvrez & aguiſez devant, & s'évertuoient; & puis boutoient de grand randon contre le mur & tant verteuſement, quils pertuiſerent & rompirent le mur de l' abbaye en pluſieurs lieux. *P. Daniel, tom.* 1, *p.*

being ſet on fire, ſoon conſumed the props; when the incumbent earth, wanting their ſupport, fell in, and overthrew the building: where the mine was of no great depth, theſe poſts might be pulled way with cords, or chains. This kind of mine was uſed by Philip Auguſtus (*a*), at the ſiege of the caſtle of Boves, near Amiens, the firſt at which that prince was preſent. Father Daniel ſays (*b*), he had always in his ſervice a number of ſkilful miners; mines being one of his moſt ſucceſsful methods of attack, practiſed againſt the Engliſh.

THESE mines were both higher and broader than thoſe of the preſent times; being ſo large, as to admit of engagements hand to hand (*c*); when the beſieged, by countermines, as was then the practice, attempted to drive out the aſſailants. Mines of this ſort remained in uſe till the reign of Louis the Twelfth. Froiſſart gives a very curious and circumſtantial account of one of them.

OF artificial fireworks, uſed both by the beſieged and beſiegers, hiſtory relates many inſtances: but what theſe fireworks were, is not clearly expreſſed. The

(*a*) P. Daniel, tom. 1, page 575.————(*b*) Ibidem.

(*c*) At the ſiege of Meulan, temp. Henry V. king of England.——La ſiege tenant devant reims eſtoient ſes ſeigneurs, les contes & les barons, es pays de la marche de reims, ſicomme vous avez oui compter cy deſſus pour mieulx eſtre a leur ayſe et pour garder les chemins que nulles pourveances n'entraſſent en la dicte cité dequoy, ce chevalier meſſire Barthelemy de bonnes a grant barionie d'Angleterre eſtoit a tout ſa charge & ſa route, de gens d'armes & d'archiers, logez a comercy ung moult bel chaſtel qui eſt a l'archeveſque de reims, leqnel archeveſque y miſt en garniſon le chevalier deſſus nommé, et auſſi pluſieurs bons compagnions pour le garder et deffendre contre leurs ennemys. Ce chaſtel ne doubtoit nul aſſault, car il y avoit une tour carée mallement groſſe et eſpeſſe de mur et bien garnie d'armes de deffence. Quant meſſire Barthelemy qui le chaſtel avoit aſſiegé l'eut bien adviſè et conſideré ſa force, et la maniere que par aſſault, il ne le pourroit avoir il fiſt appareiller une quantité, de mineurs quil avoit avec luy & a ſes gages & leur commanda, quilz fiſſent leur devoir de la fortreſſe miner & que bien il les payeroit, lesquelz reſpondirent quilz le feroient tres volontiers. Adonc entrerent les ouvriers en leur myne & minerent continuellement nuit et jour et firent, tant quilz vindrent moult avant ſoubz la groſſe tour, et a la meſure quilz minoient ilz eſtanconnoient et nen ſcavoient riens ceulx dedans. Quant ilz furent au deſſus de leur mine tant que pour faire renverſer la tour quant ilz vouldroient, ilz vindrent a meſſire Barthelemy de bonnes & ly dirent. Sire nous avons tellement appareiller noſtre ouvrage, que ceſte groſſe tour treſbuchera quand il vous plaira. Or bien reſpondit le chevalier n'en faictes plus ſans mon commandement, et ceulx dirent volontiers. Adonc monta le dit chevalier, et emmena ichan de guiſtelle avecques luy qui eſtoit de ces compaignons, et ſey vindrent juſques au chatel. Meſſire Barthelemy feiſt ſigne quil vouloit parlementer a ceulx de dedans. Tantoſt meſſire Henry ſe tira avant & ſen vint aux creneaulx et demanda quil vouloit. Je veuil diſt meſſire Berthelemy, que vous vous rendez ou vous eſtes tous mors ſans remede. Et comment diſt le chevalier Francoys qui ſe print a rire, nous ſommes bien pourveuz de toutes choſes & vous voulez que nous rendons ſi ſimplement. Ce ne ſera ia diſt meſſire Henry. Certes ſi vous eſt cez informez, en quel party vous eſtes dit le chevalier Anglois, vous vous rendiz tantoſt a peu de parolles. En quel party ſommes nous ſire reſpondit le chevalier Francois. Vous yſtrez hors reſpondit meſſire Barthelemy, & ic le vous moſtreray par condicions & par aſſeurance. Meſſire Henry entra en ce traicte & ereut le chevalier Anglois, & yſſit hors du fort luy iveme tant ſeulement, & vint la ou meſſire Barthelemy, et Jehan de Guiſtelles eſtoient. Si toſt comme ils furent la venuz, ilz le menerent, a leur mine & luy monſtrerent, comme la groſſe tour ne tenoit plus que ſur eſtancons de boys. Quant le chevalier Francoys veit le peril il diſt a meſſire Barthelemy, certainement vous avez bonne cauſe ce que ſait en avez, vient de grant gentilleſſe. Si nous rendons a voſtre volonté. La les print meſſire Barthelemy, comme ſes priſonniers et leſt fiſt tous hors de la tour partir & ungz & autres & leurs biens auſſi. Et puis fiſt bouter le feu en la myne. Si ardirent les eſtancons, et puis quant ilz furent tous hors la tour qui eſtoit mallement groſſe ouvrit, et ſe partit en deux & renverſa d'autre part. Or regardez diſt meſſire Barthelemy, a meſſire Henry de Vaulx, et a celui de la fortreſſe, ſi je vous diſoye verité. Sire ouy nous demeurrons voz priſonniers a voſtre volonté, & vous remercions de voſtre courtoyſie. Car ſi Jaques bons homs euſſent ainſi de nous, eu laudeſſus que vous avez or ains ilz, ne nous euſſent mye faict la cauſe pareille, que vous avez. Ainſi furent prins ſes compaignons, de la garniſon, de commercy, et le chaſtel effondie. *Vol.* 1, *feuilliet*, 106.

hiſtorians of the Cruſades ſpeak of a compoſition, called Greek Wildfire, uſed by the Turks. One of theſe hiſtorians, Geoffry de Vineſauf, who accompanied king Richard the Firſt to thoſe wars, ſays of it, " With a pernicious ſtench and livid " flame it conſumes even flint and iron ; nor could it be extinguiſhed by water, " but by ſprinkling ſand upon it, the violence of it may be abated; and vinegar " poured upon it, will put it out."

FATHER DANIEL ſays, this wildfire was not only uſed in ſieges, but even in battles; and that Philip Auguſtus, king of France, having found a quantity of it ready prepared in Acre, brought it with him to France, and uſed it at the ſiege of Dieppe, for burning the Engliſh veſſels then in the harbour. The ſame author tells the following marvellous ſtory, of another compoſition of this ſort. An engineer, named Gaubet, native of Mante, found the ſecret of preſerving, even under water, a ſort of burning compoſition, ſhut up in earthen pots, without openings: he was beſides ſo excellent a diver, as to be able to paſs a river under water. He availed himſelf uſefully of this ſecret, to ſet fire to ſome thick palliſades that ſtopped up the entrance into the iſle of Andely, which the army of Philip Auguſtus was then beſieging, and which he took before he attacked Chateau-Gaillard; for, whilſt the enemy made an attack on the bridge, that prince had built over the Seine, and all the attention of the beſieged was directed that way, Gaubert dived with his pots of firework, and, being arrived at the palliſades, he in an inſtant ſet them on fire. As boats were ready for the paſſage of the ſoldiers into the iſle, it was ſurpriſed on that ſide, and the garriſon of the caſtle obliged to ſurrender (*a*).

IN the reign of king John of France, the caſtle of Remorantin was alſo taken by the prince of Wales, through the means of artificial fireworks (*b*) : and, in 1447, the Count de Dunois, beſieging Pont-Audemer in Normandy, which was defended by the Engliſh with great valour, ſet fire to the city by artificial fireworks, and then took it by aſſault.

The manner of uſing theſe fireworks was, by fixing them to the great darts and arrows, and ſhooting them into the towns: a method frequently practiſed, both by the ancients, with darts and arrows, called falarica and malleoli; and uſed, with good ſucceſs, by the Engliſh, the laſt war, in a naval engagement in the Eaſt-Indies, between the ſquadrons of Monſieur D'Ache and Admiral Watſon.

THE progreſſive ſteps taken in attacking fortified places, and the methods oppoſed thereto, as anciently practiſed, was, allowing for the difference of engines, much the ſame as at preſent. In ſmall towns or caſtles, the aſſailants threw up no works, but, carrying hurdles or large ſhields before them, advanced to the counterſcarp; here ſome with arrows, ſlings and croſs-bows, attempted to drive the beſieged from the ramparts; and others brought faſeines to form a paſſage over the ditch, if wet, and ſcaling ladders to mount the walls: the beſieged, on their part, attempted, to keep the enemy at a diſtance, by a ſuperior diſcharge of their miſſive weapons, to burn

(*a*) P. Daniel Hiſt. de Milice Fr. tom. 1, page 176.——(*b*) P. Daniel. Ibidem.

the faſcines brought to fill up the ditch, or to break, or overturn the ſcaling ladders. In larger places, or ſtrong caſtles, lines of circumvallation and contravallation were conſtructed; the former to prevent any attack or ſuccour from without, and the latter to ſecure them from the ſallies of the beſieged. In both theſe, ſmall wooden towers were often erected, at proper diſtances, called Briſtegia, or rather Triſtegia (*a*), from their having three floors, or ſtages.

When the garriſon of the place was numerous, and a vigorous reſiſtance expected, they often formed a blockade, by encloſing it with lines, ſtrengthened by large forts, and ſometimes even a kind of town. Of the firſt, there is an inſtance in the reign of Stephen; when that king, being unable to take by force the ſtrong caſtle of Wallingford, ſurrounded it with a line, ſtrengthened by forts, the principal of which he called the caſtle of Craumer: he alſo cut off the paſſage of the garriſon over the Thames, by erecting a ſtrong fort at the head of the bridge. It was however held by Brier Fitz Comte, till relieved by Henry the Second, then duke of Normandy; who, on notice of the danger of this important place, ſet out from France, encamped before it, and encompaſſing theſe works with a line of circumvallation, to prevent Stephen from ſuccouring them, beſieged the beſiegers: this brought on the conference and peace between thoſe two princes. The latter is mentioned by Froiſſart (*b*), as practiſed by king Edward the Third, at the ſiege of Calais; where, not content with blocking it up by ſea, and making lines on the Downs, and at the bridge of Nieulay, he alſo built a kind of city or timber about the place beſieged; where, ſays that author, there were palaces and houſes, laid out in regular ſtreets: it had its markets on Wedneſdays and Fridays, merceries, ſhambles and cloth-warehouſes, and all ſorts of neceſſaries, which were brought from England and Flanders: in fine, every convenience was there to be had for money. Such was alſo the blockade made by the Turks, at the ſiege of Candia.

It ſeems doubtful whether any thing like approaches were carried on. It is more probable, that the beſiegers took the opportunity of the night, to bring their engines and machines as near the walls as poſſible: batteries were then formed, and covered with an epaulement.

The mangonels and petraries began now to batter the walls, and the working parties to make the paſſage into the ditch, carrying hurdles and faſcines, which, with their bucklers, ſerved to ſhield them in their approach: they were ſupported by a number of archers, covered with large targets, arrow-proof, held by men particularly appointed for that ſervice: theſe archers, by ſhooting into the crenelles, and other openings, protected the workmen in their retreat for freſh faſcines.

(*a*) Dein vallo munire ſtudent, foſſiſque profundis
Omnem circuitum caſtrorum, nec minus alté
Per loca briſlega, caſtellaque lignea ſurgunt
Ne ſubitó Saladinus eos invadere poſſit. *Guillaume le Breton, lib. 4, p. 272.*

(*b*) Froiſſart, vol. 1, chap. 133.

An eaſy deſcent being formed into the ditch, the cattus, or ſow, was puſhed forwards, where the men, under cover, filled up and levelled a paſſage for the moveable tower; which being thruſt cloſe to the walls, the archers, on the different ſtages, kept a conſtant diſcharge of darts, arrows and ſtones; the miners began to ſap the wall, or it was battered with the ram. When the mine was finiſhed, the props were ſet on fire: during the confuſion occaſioned by the falling of the part mined, which was commonly a tower, the aſſault was given, and the breach ſtormed. If there were more works, theſe operations were repeated. Where no moveable tower was uſed, both mines were made, and the ram worked, under the cattus and ſow.

On the other hand, the beſieged oppoſed, for their defence, flights of darts and large ſtones, ſhot from their engines, with arrows and quarrels from their croſs-bows; ſallies, wherein they attempted to burn or demoliſh the machines of their enemies; and mines under their moveable towers, in order to overthrow them. Upon the cattus and ſow they threw monſtrous weights to break, and wildfire to burn them.

Upon the front attacked, they placed ſacks, filled with wool, which were looſely ſuſpended from the wall: and to break the ſtroke of the ram, beſides this, divers other contrivances were invented; ſuch as nippers, worked by a crane, for ſeizing it; and ſometimes they let fall upon it a huge beam, faſtened with chains, to two large leavers.

Having thus mentioned the chief engines and methods made uſe of in the attack and defence of fortified places, it will not be foreign to the point to ſay a word or two of the arms, offenſive and defenſive, uſed by the troops, before the invention of gunpowder; and of the laws by which our armies were ſhortly after governed.

The cavalry, which, in this and the neighbouring kingdoms, were compoſed of the nobility, knights and gentry, were compleatly caſed, from head to foot, in iron armour, that covered their bodies ſo exactly, as to render them in a manner invulnerable. Indeed, when thus harneſſed, they had but ſmall powers of action; and a knight overthrown, was as incapable of eſcaping, as a turtle turned upon his back. The difficulty of ſupporting the inconvenience of this heavy armour, is ſtrongly marked, by the regulations made at tournaments; where it was deemed culpable for a knight to unarm himſelf till the ſhow was over. This was done to accuſtom our youth, by degrees, to ſuſtain that weight in the day of battle. Their arms were launces and cutting ſwords; but, in their charges, as is indeed the caſe with all cavalry, the ſucceſs depended more on the ſtrength of the horſe, than the efforts of the knight: their horſes too were ſometimes covered with armour.

The infantry were, for the moſt part, archers and ſlingers; of which there were not in the world any more excellent than in this iſland. Indeed, the Engliſh were at all times famous for the uſe of the long bow, which kept its footing a conſiderable time after the uſe of fire-arms; for, ſo late as the thirteenth year of the reign of queen Elizabeth, an act paſſed, enforcing a ſtatute of the twelfth of

Edward the Fourth, by which foreign merchants were obliged to bring in a certain number of bow ſtaves, in proportion to their other goods imported, under divers penalties and forfeitures. The preamble to the act of Elizabeth recites, That whereas the uſe of archery not only hath ever been, but alſo yet is, by God's ſpecial gift to the Engliſh nation, a ſingular defence of the realm.

The Engliſh archers commonly carried two large pointed ſtakes, which they planted before them, to keep off the horſe.

The croſs-bow, called, in the Law Latin, baliſta, or manubaliſta, was, according to Verſtigan, of Saxon original. Croſs-bows were, however, either diſuſed, or forgot, till again introduced by the Conqueror, at the battle of Haſtings. They were afterwards forbidden (*a*), by the ſecond Lateran Council, held anno 1139, under pain of anathema, as hateful to God, and unfit to be uſed amongſt Chriſtians: in conſequence of which, they were laid aſide during the reigns of Stephen, and Henry the Second; but revived in France, by Richard the Firſt, who was himſelf killed by an arrow diſcharged from that engine, at the ſiege of the caſtle of Chaluz (*b*).

These bows ſhot darts, called quarreaux, or quarrels, from their points, which were ſolid, ſquare pyramids of iron: theſe were alſo ſometimes trimmed with braſs, inſtead of feathers.

It appears, from a record, that our kings had an officer (*c*), ſtiled baliſtarius regis; and that lands were held, in capite, of the king, by the ſervice of preſenting annually a croſs-bow (*d*), and of finding thread to make a croſs-bow ſtring, as often as he paſſed through a certain diſtrict (*e*).

Cross-bows, according to Father Daniel, were uſed by the Engliſh, at the iſle of Rhée, in 1627.

The military laws, to be obſerved in time of war, as enacted by Henry the Fifth, are preſerved in a book, entitled, de Studio Militari, written by Nicholas Upton, firſt a ſoldier in France, under the earl of Saliſbury, and afterwards, in the year 1452, a canon of Saliſbury. They do not differ greatly from thoſe now in force; obedience and ſubordination, good order in camp and quarters, a detection of falſe muſters, and the ſafety of perſons bringing proviſions, being immutably

(*a*) Artem illam mortiferam & Deo odibilem balliſtariorum & ſagittariorum adverſus Chriſtianos & Catholicos exerceri de cætero ſub anathamate prohibemus. *Can.* 29.

(*b*) William Brito, in the life of Philip Auguſtus, ſpeaking of the death of Richard, puts the following words in the mouth of Atropos, one of the deſtinies:

Hac volo, non alia Richardum morte perire,
Ut qui Francigenis balliſtæ primus uſum
Tradidit, ipſe ſui rem primitus experiatur
Quamque alios docuit, in ſe vim ſentiat artis.

(*c*) Baliſtrarius. Gerard de la warr, is recorded to have been baliſtrarius domini regis, &c. 28 & 29 *Hen.* III.

(*d*) Quædam terræ et tenamenta in ſuburbia ciceſtriæ in parochia ſancti Pancratii tenentur de rege in capite per ſervitium reddendi regi quandacunque venerit, per quandam venellam vocatam Goddeſtrete ſuper mari auſtrali, unum ſucillum plenum fili crudi ad falſam cordam pro baliſta ſua facienda. *Blount's Ancient Tenures.*

(*e*) Walterus Gatelyn tenet manierum de Weſtcourt, in villa de Bedinton in com. Surrey, in capite de domino rege reddendo inde domino regi per annum unam baliſtam precii xii^d. *Blount's Ancient Tenures.*

neceſſary to the very exiſtence of every army: theſe muſt therefore always be ſtrongly enforced, both by rewards and puniſhments; and will ever give a ſimilarity to the chief articles in the military code of every age and nation.

By theſe articles of war, king Henry ordained, that all military cauſes or trials ſhould be heard and determined by the conſtable and marſhal; and that ignorance of the laws might not be pleaded, they were ordered to be publicly promulged, and each captain was to have a copy of them; which, without doubt, they read, at ſtated times, to the ſoldiers under their command.

The firſt article reſpected the ſafety of the church and its miniſters. It enacted, that any one plundering a church or monaſtery, of any of its goods, veſſels, relicks, or habits of the prieſts, ſhould be hanged, as ſoon as taken, and the goods reſtored. It was likewiſe ordered, that no one, upon pain of death, ſhould irreverently touch the pix, in which the hoſt was contained: the like puniſhment was to be inflicted on any one laying violent hands on a prieſt, and was extended to raviſhers. Seizing a monk or nun, and making them priſoners, if not in arms, was impriſonment, during the king's pleaſure.

All perſons following the army, or remaining with it in quarters, of what ſtate, dignity, or order ſoever, were to obey the conſtable and marſhal, as they would the king, in all lawful and juſt commands, under pain of forfeiture of body and goods. All ſoldiers, and others receiving pay, were likewiſe to obey their reſpective captains and officers, in all things lawful and juſt; watching and mounting ſuch guards as ſhould be reaſonably impoſed upon them; which guards they were not to leave, on any account, without the ſpecial permiſſion of their officers: they were likewiſe, at all times, when ordered, to be ready to go for proviſions or forage, either on horſeback, or on foot. Any one guilty of diſobedience, was to be puniſhed by the ſeizure of his perſon and goods, according to the diſcretion of his officer. All merchants, or perſons bringing proviſions to the army, to obey the conſtable and marſhal, and even the clerk of the markets, as they would the king. All diſputes, or ſuits, reſpecting the merchants and handicraftſmen, ſuch as taylors, barbers, phyſicians and waſherwomen, as well as the ſcouts, eſpecially ſo appointed, were to be determined by the conſtable, or, in his abſence, the marſhal.

Guards were directed to be mounted, for the ſafety of the army, and to prevent diſturbances. No officer was to mount, without his aſſigned number of men. Any officer quitting his guard, till properly relieved, without the permiſſion of the commanding officer, was to be beheaded. All captains were to plant a ſufficient number of ſentries in their quarters, under pain of arreſt, and puniſhment at the king's pleaſure.

In order to prevent frauds ariſing from falſe muſters, all officers, when required, were to muſter their men before the king, or his commiſſaries. No one was there to produce any other than his own ſoldiers, under penalty of irrevocable diſmiſſion, and loſs of pay for the whole expedition. No one to entertain a ſoldier, or ſervant,

lately in the ſervice of another, without the conſent of his firſt officer or maſter, under penalty of arreſt, and forfeiture of horſe and arms, till ſatisfaction was made to the party aggrieved. The commiſſaries were directed to ſee that every ſoldier was properly armed, and to inſpect diligently into the ſtate of their arms, bows and arrows; and, if neceſſary, might examine the officers upon oath.

No perſon, of what degree, nation, condition or dignity ſoever, was to dare to raiſe any outcry or ſhout, by which the army might be diſturbed; eſpecially that cry called Mowntee, or any other ſuch irrational clamour; under penalty of impriſonment, and forfeiture of the horſe or horſes of the beginner; to be kept by the marſhal, until a fine had been paid to the conſtable, or the marſhal, by him deemed adequate to the offence; and ten ſhillings, of Engliſh money, to the informer or accuſer. Any one proclaiming his own name, or that of his lord, by which proclamation any number of ſoldiers were tumultuouſly aſſembled, to be publickly hanged. Any one detected in beginning the cry called Hanock, without ſpecial licence from the king, was to ſuffer death; and his followers, arreſt of body and goods, to be ſtrictly kept, until they had been fined for the ſame. What were the meanings of the words Mowntee and Hanock, I have no where been able to find. Perhaps Mowntee might be the vulgar Engliſh pronunciation of the French word Montez, mount, or to horſe; poſſibly uſed as a ſeditious alarm to the cavalry: Hanock, or rather Havock *(a)*, was probably a war-cry *(b)*, or ſignal for immediate engagement; an expreſſion ſignifying that no quarter was to be given; or elſe implying a permiſſion to plunder a town or camp: that it was ſomething of this ſort ſeems likely, from this exception, "Without ſpecial licence from the king;" which implies, that ſuch licence was occaſionally granted; in which it eſſentially differs from the cry of Mowntee.

(*a*) Perhaps its being ſpelt Hanock in Upton, may be an error of the preſs, occaſioned by an inverſion of the letter u, commonly uſed in ancient printing, inſtead of v. ——— Havock, a word of encouragement to ſlaughter. *Johnſon's Dictionary.*——"Cry Havock kings." *Shakeſpeare.*

"————Ate by his ſide,
"Cries Havock, and lets looſe the dogs of war." *Shakeſpeare.*

(*b*) War-cries were formerly cuſtomary in the armies of moſt nations, when juſt upon the point of engaging. Sometimes they were only tumultuous ſhouts, or horrid yells, uttered with an intent to ſtrike terror in their adverſaries; ſuch as are now uſed by the Indians in America, called the War-whoop. An inſtance of this is given by Froiſſart, who, ſpeaking of ſome Genoeſe croſs-bow men, ſerving in the French Army, at the battle of Creſſy, ſays, they, in marching to the enemy, "Commencerent à japper moult épouvantablement pour les Anglois ébahir." But war-cries were more frequently words of mutual encouragement, or invocations of the national tutelar ſaint. They likewiſe ſerved as a parole, to diſtinguiſh friends from enemies, in the confuſion of an engagement; the ſoldiers of thoſe days not being, as now, diſcriminated by uniforms.———The ancient cry of the Engliſh was St. George; that of the French, Montjoye, St. Dennis. The French antiquaries and etymologiſts have been much puzzled in their endeavours to illuſtrate the meaning of the word Montjoye: ſome deducing its origin from an exclamation made uſe of by Clovis the Firſt, when a Pagan; who, being in great danger at the battle of Tolbiac, thus addreſſed his vows to St. Dennis, of whom he had heard much from his queen: Mon Jove, St. Dennis; i. e. St. Dennis, my Jupiter, or ſupreme deity: afterwards corrupted to Montjoye, &c. ——— Monſieur du Cange, and divers others, interpret it, the mount of St. Dennis; as alluding to that whereon he ſuffered martyrdom; Montjoye being, according to them, a diminutive of Mont. But Paſquier, with more probability, explains it thus: Moult joye, St. Dennis; or, St. Dennis, my chief joy, conſolation, or dependence. This is corroborated by Ordericus Vitalis; who expreſſes it, in Latin, by the words, "Meum Gaudium." Mowntee has been by ſome thought a ſcoffing imitation of Mountjoye.———War-cries are ſtill uſed by ſeveral nations: the French, particularly in their night-attacks, cry, Tue, Tue; the Spaniards, A Mat; and the Turks, Alla.

In caſe of a ſudden alarm, it was directed, that all the captains ſhould repair, with their people, to the head-quarters, except thoſe captains whoſe quarters were near the poſt threatened; theſe were to remain, with their companies, in order to repulſe the enemy. When the king rode out, it was poſitively prohibited that any one ſhould leave the camp, without his expreſs permiſſion, on pain of impriſonment, during the king's pleaſure; or in his abſence, during that of the commanding officer.

No one was to aſſemble any horſemen, to make excurſions into the country, without licence from the king; and, in order that after ſuch excurſions (when made by authority), they might return to the general, no one was to quit his party without leave from the captain commanding it, under pain of arreſt, during the king's pleaſure, and loſs of booty that day taken; two thirds of which was to go to his captain, and the remainder to the officer commanding the party or detachment: neither was any one to erect the king's ſtandard, that of any particular lord, or of St. George, for the purpoſe of aſſembling perſons to go out on excurſions, without the king's particular leave, on pain of hanging for the captain, and beheading for every one of his followers, with the forfeiture of eſtates and goods: likewiſe, in all excurſions, burning of houſes was forbidden, upon pain of death, unleſs by the king's eſpecial command.

No perſons were permitted to go before the army, in order to occupy quarters, other than thoſe authoriſed by the marſhal or conſtable, on pain of ſeizure of body and goods, till releaſed by the payment of a ſufficient fine: neither was any one, of what ſtate or dignity ſoever, to preſume to quarter himſelf; but, in all things, relative to quarters, to obey the quarter-maſter-general, as he would the king. It was likewiſe ordered, that no perſon, after having quarters aſſigned him, ſhould quit them without licence from his commanding-officer: and if he found any proviſions in or near his quarters, he might enjoy them, uſing ſuch proviſion moderately; and if there was more than ſufficient for himſelf, he was to beſtow it on others that wanted, carefully avoiding waſte, under penalty of arreſt, and the ſeizure of his horſe or horſes, and armour, till a ſufficient fine had been paid to the conſtable or marſhal.

Any perſon, of what condition ſoever, exciting a diſturbance in quarters, or raiſing a tumult, was puniſhed by impriſonment, and ſeizure of his horſes and arms, till a fine was paid to the conſtable or marſhal: if the delinquent was a ſervant or lacquey, he was puniſhed with the loſs of his left ear. If any quarrel was excited, whereby there was a probability that death might enſue, the puniſhment was forfeiture of goods and eſtate; and if any one was actually killed, all concerned therein were to be immediately hanged.

Any priſoner of war taken by one man, and given over to another to guard, was the property of him who took him, unleſs he was afterwards, in the ſame engagement, found defending himſelf. If any man threw a priſoner to the earth, and another took his parole, that priſoner was their joint property; and he who took him was to have the keeping of him, giving ſecurity to his partner for his ſhare of the ranſom.

A prisoner being taken, and another aſking a part, might have it, if granted by the taker; but if ſuch perſon threatened otherwiſe to kill the priſoner, he was

not to have ſuch part, though before granted him: and if he did really kill the priſoner, he was to be arreſted, and kept in gaol, till he had made ſuch ſatisfaction to the captor, as the conſtable or marſhal ſhould judge ſufficient.

ALL priſoners of war, as ſoon as brought to the army, were to be preſented by the taker, to his particular captain, or commanding officer, under pain of forfeiture of ſuch priſoner. If the priſoner was of royal blood, or a duke, marquis, earl, or principal commander, or ſuch as had an authority from his king to diſplay his own banner, he became the priſoner of the officer commanding that part of the army by which he was taken, unleſs the captor was a perſon of an equal or ſuperior rank to him taken; in which caſe, the commanding officer was to agree with ſuch captor, and to give him a ſufficient compenſation for the taking. Every officer receiving a priſoner from a ſoldier under his command, was to give notice thereof to the conſtable, or general, within eight days, on pain of loſing his ſhare in the ranſom; which, in ſuch caſe, was to be given to the informer. No officer or ſoldier was to permit his priſoner to ſtray, or go at large, or to ſuffer him to ride out, or remain in his quarters, without a ſufficient guard, on pain of loſing his right to the ſaid priſoner; the third part of whoſe ranſom was reſerved to his captain, or ſuperior officer, if not concerned in this negligence; the other parts of the ranſom were adjudged to the conſtable, or marſhal, and the informer. No priſoner was to be permitted to go out of the army, without a paſſport, or ſafe conduct, ſigned by the king, or commanding officer, under the penalties of the laſt article. No ſoldier was to ſell his priſoner, or to take ranſom, without licence from his proper officer with whom he entered for the campaign, under pain of loſing the ſaid priſoner: the purchaſers, under thoſe circumſtances, were alſo puniſhed with the loſs of the priſoner.

A THIRD of all booty taken by a ſoldier, was to be paid immediately to his captain, under pain of forfeiting the whole, and impriſonment, till ſatisfaction was made to the ſaid captain: and all followers of the army, though not receiving pay, ſuch as doctors, merchants, barbers, and ſuch like, were to pay one third of all goods acquired in the war, whether priſoners or moveables, to the king, or his general in chief commanding the army.

SOLDIERS robbing the market people, or taking away from them, or ſpoiling any proviſions or goods, were puniſhed with immediate death: this likewiſe extended to the phyſicians and barbers. Any ſoldier ſtealing or ſpoiling victuals or forage belonging to another, bought, taken from the enemy, or otherwiſe lawfully acquired by him, was to be puniſhed at the king's pleaſure.

No aſſault was to be made againſt any caſtle or fortreſs whatſoever, either with arrows, or otherwiſe, unleſs in the preſence, and with the permiſſion, of ſome officer thereto ſpecially ordered, under pain of impriſonment. And any perſon making ſuch aſſault, after public proclamation to the contrary, was to be puniſhed with impriſonment, and loſs of his acquired goods.

No perſon could grant paſſes, permitting an enemy or priſoner to come to, or paſs through or from the army, without the king's eſpecial licence, or that of his conſtable, if his commiſſion extended ſo far, under pain of forfeiture of body and goods. Any one violating the king's paſs, or ſafe conduct, was to ſuffer death, and confiſcation of goods.

Common proſtitutes were not permitted to remain in the garriſons, or with the army, particularly during the ſiege of any caſtle or fortreſs; but were to keep at the diſtance of a league, at leaſt. Any one found with the army, or in any town or caſtle, after one admonition, was to have her left arm broken.

These are the general outlines of the hiſtory of our ancient military architecture, modes of attack and defence, and martial laws: a more minute diſquiſition does not come within the limits preſcribed for this Introduction. But ſuch as wiſh to have a farther knowledge of theſe matters, may amply ſupply their curioſity, by conſulting Vegetius, Procopius de Bello Gothico, Froiſſart's Chronicle, the ancient Hiſtories of France, the Writers on the Cruſades, Father Daniel's Hiſtoire de la Milice Françoiſe, and Follard's Polybius.

MONASTERIES.

THE era of the firſt inſtitution of Monaſteries in England, is by no means aſcertained: nothing can be more diſcordant than the accounts and opinions of our hiſtorians and antiquaries on this ſubject; ſome making them coeval with the introduction of Chriſtianity into this iſland; which, it is pretended, was preached A. D. 31, by Joſeph of Arimathea, and certain diſciples of Philip the apoſtle. A very learned writer ſurmiſes (*a*), that ſome converted Druids became our firſt Monks: others ſay (*b*), there was a college or monaſtery at Bangor in Flintſhire, as early as the year 182; though this, with greater probability, is generally placed later by almoſt three hundred years.

THE learned Biſhop Stillingfleet (*c*), and others, ſuppoſe the firſt Engliſh monaſtery was founded at Glaſtonbury, by St. Patrick, about the year 425; whilſt, on the other hand, it has been doubted (*d*), whether St. Patrick was ever at Glaſtonbury, any more than Joſeph of Arimathea.

ABOUT the year 512, the Britiſh hiſtorians report, that St. Dubritius, archbiſhop of St. David's, founded twelve monaſteries, and taught his monks to live, after the manner of the Aſians and Africans, by the work of their hands. Camden thinks, that Congellus firſt brought the monaſtic life into England, towards the year 530; but Mr. John Tanner, editor of the Notitia Monaſtica, ſays, "It was "certainly here before that time." Theſe inſtances are ſufficient to ſhew, that the exact period is not known.

THE date of the firſt foundation of Nunneries, or houſes of religious women, in this country, is enveloped in the ſame obſcurity. Some think them nearly of equal antiquity with thoſe for monks. Leland ſays, Merlin's mother, who is reported to have lived about the year 440, was a nun at Caermarthen; and it is ſaid, St. David's mother was a nun alſo. But the firſt Engliſh nunnery ſeems to have been that erected at Folkſtone in Kent, by King Eadbald, A. D. 630: ſoon after which ſeveral others were founded; particularly that of Barking in Eſſex, anno 675; and, about the ſame time, another by St. Mildred, in the iſle of Thanet, A. D. 694: abbeſſes were

(*a*) Sir George Macartney, in his Defence of the Royal Line of Scotland, p. 13.
(*b*) Archbiſhop Uſher's Antiq. Eccl. Britan. folio, p. 69.
(*c*) Stillingfleet's Original of the Britiſh Churches, p. 184, 185.
(*d*) Vide Wharton, in his notes to Angl. Sacr. vol. ii. p. 92.

then in ſuch great eſteem, for their ſanctity and prudence, that they were ſummoned to the council of Beconsfield: the names of five are ſubſcribed to the conſtitutions there enacted, without that of one abbot. Biſhop Adian made Hien (afterwards foundreſs and abbeſs of Hartlepool) the firſt nun amongſt the Northumbrians A. D. 640. It was anciently a cuſtom in Northumberland and Scotland, for monks and nuns to live together in the ſame monaſtery, but ſubjected to the immediate government of the abbeſs. This was the caſe at Whitby, Repiadon, Beverley, and Ely.

On the converſion of the Saxons and Northumbrians, a great number of monaſteries were founded and richly endowed, particularly in the north, where many of the nobles, and even ſome kings and queens, retired from the world, and put on religious habits: but after the devaſtations made by the Danes, in 832, 866, and the three following years, theſe religious communities were almoſt eradicated. In the ſouth there were but few monaſteries remaining, and thoſe chiefly poſſeſſed by the married clergy: Glaſtonbury and Abingdon ſtill retained their monks; but at Wincheſter and Canterbury, in the reign of King Alfred, there were not monks ſufficient to perform the offices; for which they were obliged to have recourſe to the aſſiſtance of the ſecular clergy (*a*): and, according

(*a*) J. Tanner, in his Preface to the Notitia Monaſtica, ſays, "To give ſome account of the ſecular clergy, "who are ſo much ſpoken of in the eccleſiaſtical hiſtory of the Saxon times, and for the moſt part diſadvantageouſly, "becauſe we have no account of them, but what is tranſmitted to us by their bittereſt enemies the monks, "and ſuch as favoured the monks; but who, if we knew the truth, might perhaps have lived as much to the glory "of God, and the good of mankind, as thoſe who ſpoke ſo much againſt them: and yet 'tis uncertain what the "difference between the old ſecular canons and the monks was; for hiſtorians, by calling the houſes of the "monks, Collegia, and the houſes of the ſecular canons, Monaſteria, confound theſe two ſorts of religious perſons, "and make the opinion of Wharton not unlikely; viz. that before the Reformation by King Edgar and "St. Dunſtan, our monaſteries were nothing but convents of ſecular married clergy. Nor is the marriage of "monks and nuns, in thoſe ages, unlikely; for Bede tells us, that in John of Beverley's time, the abbeſs of a "monaſtery then called Vetadun (ſince Watton), had a carnal daughter, who was a nun of that houſe. On the "other hand, ſome of the ſeculars obliged themſelves to the vows of chaſtity; and many of them obſerved ſome "regular conſtitution: for the canons of Durham read the Pſalms, in the ſame order as was required by the rule "of S. Benedict. At Peykirk they obſerved the canonical hours of the monks, and took the vows of chaſtity and "obedience. At Canterbury (as Gervaſius obſerves) they wore the habit of the monks, and partly conformed to "their rule: ſo that, in all likelihood, the terms of monks and ſecular canons were indifferently uſed, or with "very little diſtinction, till King Edgar's time; when St. Dunſtan enforcing a ſtricter obſervation of St. Benedict's "rule, thoſe that were willing to retain their wives and parochial cures, were termed ſecular clerks; and thoſe "were called monks, or regulars, who quitted both, according to the conſtitution of that order."——A fruitleſs attempt was made, about the beginning of the eleventh century, to force theſe canons, and the clergy in general, to celibacy, by Aelfrick, archbiſhop of Canterbury. In the year 1076, the council of Wincheſter, aſſembled under Lanfranc, decreed, that no canon ſhould have a wife; that ſuch prieſts as lived in caſtles and villages ſhould not be forced to put away their wives, if they had them: but ſuch as had not, were forbidden to marry; and biſhops were exhorted for the future, not to ordain either prieſt or deacon, unleſs he firſt profeſſed that he had no wife. In the year 1102, Archbiſhop Anſelm held a council at Weſtminſter, by which it was decreed, that no archdeacon, prieſt, or deacon, or canon, marry a wife, or retain her if married; that every ſubdeacon be under the ſame law, though he be not a canon, if he hath married a wife, after he had made profeſſion of chaſtity. Anſelm, according to William of Malmſbury, deſired of the king, that the chief men of the kingdom might be preſent in council, to the end that the decrees might be enforced by the joint conſent and care of both the clergy and laity; to which they aſſented. Thus the king, and the whole realm, gave their ſanction to theſe canons; yet it appears, that the clergy of the province of York remonſtrated againſt them; and thoſe who were married, refuſed to part with their

to Gervaſius, the name of an abbot was then ſcarce known; and few then living had ever ſeen a convent of monks. Of the north, Simon Dunelmenſis ſays, "After "the devaſtation of that country, A. D. 867, by the Danes, who reduced the "churches and monaſteries to aſhes, Chriſtianity was almoſt extinct; very few "churches (and thoſe only built with hurdles and ſtraw) were rebuilt: but no "monaſteries were refounded, for almoſt two hundred years after; the country "people never heard the name of a monk, and were frighted at their very habit, till "ſome monks from Winchelcomb brought again the monaſtic way of living to "Durham, York, and Whitby."

In the reign of King Edgar, about the year 960, St. Dunſtan was promoted to the ſee of Canterbury. He was a great reſtorer of monaſtic foundations, and repaired many of the ruined churches and religious houſes, diſplaced the ſeculars, and prevailed on that king to make a reformation of the Engliſh monks, in the council of Wincheſter, A. D. 965; when rules and conſtitutions were formed for their government; partly taken from the rule of St. Benedict, and partly out of the ancient cuſtoms of our Engliſh devotees: this was called Regularis Concordia Anglicæ Nationis, and is publiſhed, in Saxon and Latin, by the learned Selden, in

wives; and the unmarried to make profeſſion of celibacy: nor were the clergy of Canterbury more obedient. Anſelm, therefore, in the year 1108, held a new council at London, in the preſence of the king and barons, partly on this matter, where ſtill ſeverer canons were enacted. Thoſe who had kept or taken women ſince the former prohibition, and had ſaid maſs, were enjoined to diſmiſs them ſo entirely, as not to be knowingly with them in any houſe: any eccleſiaſtic accuſed of this tranſgreſſion, by two or three lawful witneſſes, was, if a prieſt, to purge himſelf by ſix witneſſes; if a deacon, by four; if a ſubdeacon, by two; otherwiſe to be deemed guilty. Such prieſts, archdeacons, or canons, as refuſed to part with their women, here ſtiled adulterous concubines, were to be deprived not only of their offices and benefices, and put out of the choir, being firſt pronounced infamous, but the biſhop had authority to take away all their moveable goods, and thoſe of their wives. But all theſe rigorous conſtitutions were ſo inſufficient, that, in the year 1125, the cardinal legate, John de Crema, preſiding in a council held at Weſtminſter, thought it neceſſary to enforce them by the papal authority. In his exhortation, he is ſaid to have made uſe of theſe remarkable words: That it was the higheſt degree of wickedneſs to riſe from the ſide of a harlot to make the body of Chriſt: nevertheleſs, this very man, as Henry, archdeacon of Huntingdon, a cotemporary writer, relates, after having that day made the body of Chriſt, was caught at night with a real harlot: he adds, that a fact ſo public and notorious could not be denied, and ought not to be concealed; and that the ſhame of this diſcovery drove the legate out of England. In the year 1129, William Corboyl, archbiſhop of Canterbury, and then legate, obtained the king's leave to hold another council at London, to which all the clergy of England were ſummoned; and, by the authority of which, all thoſe who had wives were requeſted to put them away, before the next feaſt of St. Andrew, under pain of deprivation; and the more to enforce it, the archbiſhop and council granted to the king a power of executing their canons, and doing juſtice on thoſe who ſhould offend againſt them; which Henry of Huntingdon ſays, had a moſt ſhameful concluſion; for the king received, from the married clergy, a vaſt ſum of money, by way of compoſition, and exemption from obedience to theſe conſtitutions of the council. This account is alſo confirmed by Hovedon and Brompton. The Saxon Chronicle ſays, that the conſtitutions of this ſynod had no effect; for all the clergy retained their wives, with the permiſſion of the king, as they had done before: but no notice is taken there of this permiſſion being purchaſed. It is worthy of obſervation, that whereas, by one of the canons of the council held at Weſtminſter, under Archbiſhop Anſelm, in the year 1102, it had been decreed, that the ſons of prieſts ſhould not be the heirs to the churches of their fathers; Pope Paſchall ordered, that ſuch of them as were perſons of good character ſhould be continued in their benefices; and, in a letter to Anſelm, gave this reaſon for the favour ſhewed them, viz. that the greateſt and beſt part of the clergy in England, were the ſons of the clergy. But, in Stephen's reign, the power of the papacy acquiring more ſtrength, the celibacy of the clergy was generally eſtabliſhed in England.

Notes to Lord Lyttelton's Hiſtory of Henry the Second.

his Spicilegium after Eadmerus. By this rule all the monaſteries of the ſouth were governed. Edgar, during his reign, is ſaid to have erected, or refounded, forty-ſeven monaſteries; and alſo, at the inſtances of Dunſtan, Ethelwould and Wulſton, biſhops of Wincheſter and Worceſter, to have cauſed reſtitution to be made of all the lands formerly belonging to, and taken from, the religious houſes.

At the Conqueſt, the monks and nuns were conſiderable ſufferers; not only in their lands and poſſeſſions, but alſo by the infringements on their rights and immunities; for no ſooner was the Conqueror quietly ſeated on the throne, than he began to rifle their treaſures, to depoſe their abbots, and ſeize their beſt eſtates, beſtowing them on his Norman followers: he alſo obliged them to alter their miſſals; forcing them to exchange the ancient Gregorian ſervice, for a new form, compoſed by William Fiſcamp. This innovation was, however, ſtopped by the interpoſition of Oſmund, biſhop of Saliſbury; who, to compromiſe matters, compoſed a new ritual, afterwards called Miſſale in Uſum Sarum, and generally uſed in England, Scotland, and Ireland. But a more material injury was that of making the ſecular clergy, biſhops of the churches of cathedral convents; contrary, as it is ſaid, to a canon made in the time of Archbiſhop Theodore, and confirmed by King Edgar. This cauſed that diſtinction then firſt made between the lands belonging to the biſhop, and thoſe the property of the convent; which, before this period, were in common; all donations being made Deo et Eccleſiæ. Beſides, after this diſtinction, the biſhops aſſigned what part they thought proper for the ſupport of the prior and convent; reſerving the beſt eſtates for themſelves and ſucceſſors. This led benefactors to nominate the particular uſes to which they choſe their donations ſhould be applied; either to the maintenance or cloathing of the monks, for lights, hoſpitality, building or repairing the church and its ornaments: and afterwards opened the way for the appropriation of diſtinct portions to the ſeveral great officers of the houſe. Another grievance, and which affected the clergy in general, was the alteration made in the nature of the tenure whereby they held their lands; which, from frank almoign (ſubject to no duties or impoſitions but the trinoda neceſſitas, or ſuch as they laid upon themſelves in eccleſiaſtical aſſemblies) was changed into tenure, in baronage, by knights ſervice.

Anno 1075, the third and laſt regulation of monks was made by Archbiſhop Lanfranc; which brought thoſe of the ancient foundations nearer the Benedictine order than ever (*a*). During this reign, the Cluniacs were brought into England;

(*a*) It is to be noted, that the monks of this iſland were never under one rule, before the ſecond Reformation: for, not to mention the difference between the Britiſh, Scottiſh, and Roman monks, we may obſerve, that almoſt every abbot laid down particular rules of living for thoſe under his juriſdiction; ſo that we meet with the rules of St. Patrick, St. Congal, St. Columb, St. Molva, St. Columban, St. Carthavid, St. Aſaph, St. Cuthbert, St. Adhelm, &c. amongſt the Britons and Saxons. Neither did Archbiſhop Cuthbert's regulation make an uniformity in theſe matters; for, in King Alfred's time, there were "diverſi generis monachi;" and even after the Conqueſt, at a general viſitation of religious houſes, A. D. 1232, amongſt the Benedictines, there were not two monaſteries that lived after the ſame manner. *Preface to Tanner's Notitia Monaſtica.*

of whom five houſes were founded: as were alſo four houſes of black canons, two or three hoſpitals, thirteen Benedictine abbies and priories, with ſix cells depending upon them, and about fourteen alien priories; whereof the great abbies of Battle and Selby, with the priory of Hinchinbrook, and four or five alien priories, were built and endowed by the king.

WILLIAM RUFUS, ſucceeding to his father, greatly oppreſſed the monks; ſeizing upon the revenues of vacant abbies and biſhopricks, and ſelling them to the beſt bidders. It is even by ſome aſſerted, that he meditated a ſeizure of all their lands (*a*). Efforts were made, by ſeveral biſhops of this reign, particularly Walkeline, biſhop of Wincheſter, to expel the monks out of the cathedral churches, and to place ſecular canons in their room. This was prevented by Archbiſhop Lanfranc, who prevailed on the king to retract his conſent; and likewiſe procured a bull from Rome, prohibiting ſuch change. During the thirteen years which this king reigned, there were founded about thirteen houſes of Benedictines; five of the Cluniac order, two of black canons, two colleges, two hoſpitals, and five alien priories; whereof the priories of Armethwayte in Cumberland, and St. Nicholas in Exeter, and the hoſpital of St. Leonard in York, were built and endowed by the king.

KING HENRY the Firſt is recorded to have been a pious prince, an encourager of learning, and one that had a great eſteem for the church, and all religious perſons. He founded nine or ten monaſteries: viz. the epiſcopal ſee, and priory of regular canons, at Carliſle; the abbies of Cirenceſter and Merton; the priories of Dunſtable, St. Dennis near Southampton, Southwike, and Welhove, of the ſame order; the ſtately Benedictine abbies of Reading and Hide, and the Alien Priory at Steventon; as alſo the hoſpitals of St. John in Cirenceſter, le Mallardry in Lincoln, and St. Mary Magdalene in Newcaſtle. Five new orders were brought into the kingdom, in this reign: in the firſt year of it came the knights hoſpitalars; and, about five years after, the Auguſtine canons; towards the year 1128, the Ciſtertians, the canons of the holy ſepulchre, and the monks of Grandmont. In the thirty-five years which this king reigned, there were founded above one hundred and fifty religious houſes; viz. about twenty alien priories, twenty Benedictine monaſteries, and fifteen cells; near fifty houſes of Auguſtine canons, thirteen Ciſtertian, and ſix Cluniac monaſteries, three of knights hoſpitalars, one for canons of the holy ſepulchre, one for Grandmontenſians, one college, and thirteen hoſpitals.

THE troubles in which this kingdom was involved, during the greateſt part of the reign of Stephen, did not prevent either that king, or his people, from founding

(*a*) A manuſcript in the Cotton library, written by Geraldus Cambrenſis, affirms, that William Rufus had conceived a deſign of taking from all the monaſteries, or religious houſes in England, founded and endowed by the Engliſh, all their lands and poſſeſſions, or the greater part thereof, and converting them into knights fees; ſaying, that near one half of the kingdom had been beſtowed on the church; from all which little or nothing could be drawn by government, in any exigence whatſoever, for the defence of the ſtate.

religious houſes; for, in the eighteen years and nine months which he governed this nation, there were founded twenty-two Benedictine abbies and priories, with three dependent cells, five alien priories, thirty-two Ciſtertian abbies, twenty-three houſes, and four cells of Auguſtine canons; five Præmonſtratenſian, two Cluniac, and eleven Gilbertine houſes; thirteen preceptories of knights templars, one houſe for ſiſters of the hoſpitalars, one of canons of the holy ſepulchre, four colleges, and twelve hoſpitals: of which the houſes of Benedictines, at Carhow in Norfolk, and Heyham in Kent, the Black Canons, at Thornholme in Lincolnſhire, the Cluniacs, at Faverſham in Kent, and the Commanderies of the Knights Templars, at Creſſing Temple in Eſſex, and Egle in Lincolnſhire, were royal foundations. In the beginning of this reign, the Knights Templars were introduced into England; as were the Præmonſtratenſians, in the year 1146: and ſhortly after, the Gilbertine order was inſtituted, at Sempringham in Lincolnſhire.

HENRY THE SECOND, after the death of Thomas Becket, affected to be a great friend to monaſtic inſtitutions: himſelf founding a Carthuſian monaſtery, at Witham in Somerſetſhire, the firſt of that order in England; houſes at Newſtade in Nottinghamſhire, Ivychurch in Wiltſhire, and Morton in Yorkſhire, for Auguſtines; for whom he likewiſe refounded and augmented the monaſtery of Waltham in Eſſex: he alſo founded Newſtede in Lincolnſhire, for Gilbertine canons; Stonely in Warwickſhire, for Ciſtertian monks; and the alien priory of Hagh in Lincolnſhire. In his reign were founded twenty-eight houſes of Benedictines, whereof twenty were nunneries, as were moſt of the Benedictine convents founded after this time; twenty-ſeven Auguſtine, ſixteen Præmonſtratenſian, one Carthuſian, two Gilbertine, and five Cluniac monaſteries; two collegiate churches, twenty-nine hoſpitals, ten preceptories (Buckland was made a general houſe for all the ſiſters of the hoſpitalars), twenty-ſix alien priories; and, though contrary to a canon made at a general chapter, held A. D. 1151, nineteen Ciſtertian abbies. This canon prohibited the erection of any more houſes of that rule, on account of their great number; which perhaps the other monks were fearful would give them too much weight at councils and general chapters. It is ſaid, there were then in Chriſtendom upwards of five hundred; and they afterwards increaſed ſo much, that, in the year 1250, they amounted to eighteen hundred.

DURING the reign of Richard the Firſt, which did not extend to quite ten years, notwithſtanding the vaſt expences of the Cruſade, and the money paid for the ranſom of that king, there were founded fourteen houſes of Benedictines, thirteen of Auguſtine canons, eight of Præmonſtratenſians, three of the Gilbertines, four preceptories of Templars, two alien priories, one college, and ſeven hoſpitals. It does not appear that this king founded any monaſtery; indeed, he is ſaid to have diſliked monks in general, and to have entertained a mortal hatred to the Black Monks, Ciſtertians and Templars.

KING JOHN, notwithſtanding he was no great friend to eccleſiaſtics, founded a ſtately abby of Ciſtertians, at Beaulieu in Hampſhire; to which he made Farendon in Berkſhire a cell: he likewiſe built the Benedictine nunnery of Lambley in Northumberland, made Otterington in Devonſhire an alien priory, and is ſaid, whilſt earl of Moreton, to have founded a Benedictine priory at Waterford, and another at Corke, in Ireland; both which he made cells to the abby at Bath. In this reign, of upwards of ſeventeen years, were founded eight houſes of Benedictines, eight of Ciſtertians, three of Præmonſtratenſians, nineteen houſes of Auguſtine canons, ſix of Gilbertines, one ſmall Cluniac houſe and ten alien priories, three preceptories of Templars, four of Hoſpitalars, one college, and eighteen hoſpitals.

IN the reign of King Henry the Third, the riches, and conſequently the power of the eccleſiaſtics, increaſed to ſuch an alarming pitch, that an act of parliament was made, in the ninth year of that reign, to reſtrain the ſuperſtitious prodigality of the people, in beſtowing lands upon religious foundations; particularly in a manner which deprived the king, and the lords of the manors, of their reſpective rights. This was called the ſtatute of Mortmain (*a*); wherein it was enacted, "That it ſhall not be lawful, from henceforth, to any to give his lands to any "religious houſe, and to take the ſame land again to hold of the ſame houſe; "nor ſhall it be lawful to any houſe of religion to take lands of any, and to leaſe "the ſame to him of whom he received it: if any, from henceforth, give his "lands to any religious houſe, and thereupon be convict, the gift ſhall be utterly "void, and the land ſhall accrue to the lord of the fee (*b*)." The neceſſity of this ſtatute ſee in the notes (*c*). Succeeding kings ſometimes diſpenſed with this law,

(*a*) Mortmain, in mortua manu. Hottoman, in his commentaries de verbis feudal, verbo manus mortua: "Manus mortua locutio eſt, quæ uſurpatur de iis quorum poſſeſſio, ut ita dicam immortalis eſt, qui nunquam "hæredem habere deſinunt. Qua de cauſa res nunquam ad priorem dominum revertitur; nam manus pro poſſeſſione "dicitur, mortua pro immortali," &c. And Skene ſays, "That, dimittere, terras ad manum mortuam eſt idem "atque dimittere ad multitudinem ſive univerſatim, quæ nunquam moritur." (*b*) Keeble's Statutes.

(*c*) By the common law, any man might diſpoſe of his lands to any other private man, at his own diſcretion; eſpecially when the feudal reſtraints of alienation were worn away: yet, in conſequence of theſe, it was always, and is ſtill, neceſſary for corporations, to have a licence of mortmain from the Crown, to enable them to purchaſe lands: for, as the king is the ultimate lord of every fee, he ought not, unleſs by his own conſent, to loſe his privilege of eſcheats, and other feudal profits, by the veſting of land in tenants that can never be attainted or die: and ſuch licences of mortmain ſeem to have been neceſſary among the Saxons, about ſixty years before the Norman conqueſt. But, beſides this general licence from the king, as lord paramount of the kingdom, it was alſo requiſite, whenever there was a meſne, or intermediate lord between the king and the alienor, to obtain his licence alſo (upon the ſame feudal principles) for the alienation of the ſpecific land: and if no ſuch licence was obtained, the king, or other lord, might reſpectively enter on the lands ſo alienated in mortmain, as a forfeiture. The neceſſity of this licence from the Crown, was acknowledged by the conſtitutions of Clarendon, in reſpect of advowſons, which the monks always greatly coveted, as being the groundwork of ſubſequent appropriations: yet ſuch were the influence and ingenuity of the clergy, that (notwithſtanding this fundamental principle) we find that the largeſt and moſt conſiderable dotations of religious houſes, happened within leſs than two centuries after the Conqueſt: and (when a licence could not be obtained) their contrivance ſeems to have been this: that as the forfeiture for ſuch alienations accrued, in the firſt place, to the immediate lord of the fee, the tenant who meant to alienate, firſt conveyed his lands to the religious houſe, and inſtantly took them back again, to hold as tenant to the monaſtery; which kind of inſtantaneous ſeiſin was probably held, not to occaſion any forfeiture: and then, by pretext of ſome other

by their ſpecial licence; previous to which, there was an inquiſition of Ad quod dampnum, and a return, upon oath, that it would not prejudice either the dignity or the revenues of the crown. For this licence, fees, and perhaps a fine, were paid.

In the beginning of this reign alſo, the friars, preachers, and friars minors came into England; and, before the end of it, eight ſorts of friars more came amongſt us: and many of them, for the pretended ſeverity of their lives, and their frequent preaching, were at firſt admired by the people, to the great loſs of the pariſh prieſts, as well as the regulars. However, in this long reign of fifty-ſix years, there were founded nine monaſteries of Benedictines, twenty-ſeven of Auguſtine canons, eight of Ciſtertians, three of Præmonſtratenſians, two ſmall houſes of Cluniacs, of Carthuſians and Gilbertines one each, three preceptories of Knights Templars, and two of Hoſpitalars, twelve alien priories, ſeven colleges, and forty-ſeven hoſpitals; beſides twenty-eight houſes of Grey Friars, twenty-five of Black Friars, ſeventeen of White Friars, four of Auguſtine Friars, two of Maturine, or Trinitarian Friars; of Croſſed, and Bethleemite Friars, Friars de Pica and de Areno, one each; ſix houſes of Friers de Sacco, two of Brethren of St. Anthony de Vienna, and one of Brethren of St. Lazarus: of theſe, the king founded the Ciſtertian Abby of Netteley, the Small Gilbertine Priory of Fordham, the hoſpitals of St. Bartholomew's in Glouceſter, Baſingſtoke and Oſpring, and ſeveral of the friaries.

In the reign of Edward the Firſt (*a*), the reverence which the people had hitherto entertained for the monks, began greatly to abate; owing to the writings, preaching, and artful inſinuations of the friars: and, on account of their ſuppoſed riches, the former ſtatute, intended to prevent an increaſe in their poſſeſſions, was ſtrengthened by additional acts. In this reign, the ſtately abby of Vale Royal was founded by the king; and, by divers of his ſubjects, three Ciſtertian abbies, five Auguſtine priories, one Gilbertine, and one Cluniac monaſtery; two preceptories, three alien priories, twelve colleges, and eighteen hoſpitals; beſides thirteen houſes of Black, and eleven of Grey Friars; two of Minoreſſes, or Nuns of Clare; thirteen of White, and thirteen of Auguſtine friars; two of Trinitarians, four of Croſſed Friars, two of Friars de Sacco, and one of Bonhommes. About

forfeiture, ſurrender, or eſcheat, the ſociety entered into theſe lands, in right of their newly acquired ſigniory, as immediate lords of the fee. But when theſe donations began to grow numerous, it was obſerved, that the feudal ſervices, ordained for the defence of the kingdom, were every day viſibly withdrawn; that the circulation of landed property, from man to man, began to ſtagnate; and that the lords were curtailed of the fruits of their ſignories, their eſcheats, wardſhips, reliefs, and the like: and therefore, in order to prevent this, it was ordained, by the ſecond of King Henry the Third's great charters, and afterwards by that printed in our common ſtatute-books, that all ſuch attempts ſhould be void, and the land forfeited to the lord of the fee. *Blackſtone's Commentaries.*

(*a*) Biſhop Kennet, in his Gloſſary, at the end of the Parochial Antiquities, under the word Religioſi, ſaith, Before the ſtatute of Mortmain, the nation was ſo ſenſible of the extravagant donations to the religious, that, in the grant and conveyance of eſtates, it was often made an expreſs condition, that no ſale, gift, or aſſignation of the premiſes ſhould be made to the religious, "Tenenda ſibi et hæredibus ſuis vel cuicunque vendere vel aſſignare "voluerint exceptis Religioſis et Judæis."

this time, or a little after, a number of chantries were founded, by which the ſecular clergy were ſomewhat benefited. Edward, in the twenty-fourth year of his reign, during his war with France, ſeized all the alien priories, and removed their monks twenty miles from the ſea ſide, to prevent their giving aſſiſtance or intelligence to his enemies.

In the nineteen years reign of King Edward the Second, the religious foundations were, one Benedictine and one Auguſtine monaſtery, five houſes of White Friars, three of Black Friars, ſix of Grey Friars, four of Auguſtine Friars, one of Trinitarians, and one of Croſſed Friars; two of the preſent colleges in Oxford, and ſix others; alſo fourteen hoſpitals: of theſe, the White Friars in Scardeburgh, the Auguſtine Friars in Boſton, and the Black Friars in Winchelſea, were founded by the king. In this reign, anno 1312, the Knights Templars were ſeized, their order diſſolved, and their goods confiſcated: the pretence was, their vicious lives, and too great riches and power; though ſome have attributed their downfal to the intrigues of the king of France. Indeed, though they were greatly accuſed, but little was proved againſt them; their eſtates were at firſt ſeized by the king, and other lords, as fees or eſcheats, and the judges affirmed, that by the laws of the land they might warrantably hold them. But becauſe they had been given for pious uſes, it ſeemed good to the king, the nobility, and others, aſſembled in parliament, for the health of their ſouls, and the diſcharge of their conſciences, that the eſtates, *&c.* according to the wills of the donors, ſhould be appropriated to religious uſes; wherefore, they were accordingly, by an act of parliament paſſed anno 1323, given to the Hoſpitalars: nevertheleſs, divers of their lands which had been granted to the laity, continued in their poſſeſſions, and ſome tythes were recovered by the parochial clergy.

King edward the third, though, according to the Monks, a pious as well as valiant prince, on account of his wars with France, was not only prevented from making many religious foundations, but alſo forced to exerciſe ſeverities on the alien priories (*a*): nevertheleſs, he founded and liberally endowed the Auguſtine nunnery at Dartford in Kent; the two large colleges of St. George at Windſor, and St. Stephen at Weſtminſter; and gave to the abby of St. Mary Graces, by the Tower, the revenues of twelve chantries, ſeized for not having licence of mortmain. In this reign, of fifty-one years, were founded four houſes of Auguſtine canons, one of Gilbertines, two of Carthuſian Monks, ſeventeen hoſpitals, one of the preſent colleges at Oxford, and twenty-five others; two houſes of Black Friars, eight of Grey Friars, five of White Friars, eight of Auguſtine Friars, and one of Bonhommes.

(*a*) See in Rymer, vol. ii, page 778; his directions about ſeizing alien priories; the lands of which, or large penſions out of them, were granted to noblemen, during the war. *Ex Dugd. Baron, vol. ii, p. 74.*

In the reign of Richard the Second, the doctrine of Wickliffe began greatly to prevail, and the mendicant friars to loſe their reputation (*a*). Although the alien priories were ſequeſtered during the wars, yet many of the principal houſes abroad now obtained the king's licence to ſell their lands to the religious here; and ſometimes to particular perſons, who intended to endow religious foundations. In this reign, which laſted twenty-two years, were founded only four Chartreuſe houſes, ſix hoſpitals, ſix colleges, beſides the two founded by Biſhop Wickham, at Oxford and Wincheſter; one houſe of Grey Friars, and three of Auguſtine Friars: for after the reſtraint laid upon endowing houſes for the regular orders, the ſecular prieſts were more regarded; licences of mortmain being, perhaps, obtained with greater facility for them, who had not ſo many privileges as the regulars; or elſe they were maintained by appropriations, which were then no lay-fees, and ſo not within the reach of the ſtatute; or, laſtly, it was no hard matter to enfeoffe a proper number of perſons with lands, for the payment of certain annual ſtipends to the deans and prebendaries. The erection of ſo many chantries and hoſpitals in the two centuries before the Reformation, may alſo be aſcribed to the ſame reaſon. This king founded no monaſtery or college, but gave to ſeveral; particularly the Carthuſians at Montgrace in Yorkſhire, and St. Ann's near Coventry, the eſtates of ſeveral alien priories ſeized by his grandfather.

King HENRY THE FOURTH, in the firſt year of his reign, reſtored all the conventual, alien priories; reſerving, in times of war, to the crown, the ſums they paid, in times of peace, to the foreign abbies. In a parliament, held A. D. 1404, at Coventry, called the Lack-learning Parliament, becauſe no practiſing lawyers were permitted to ſit therein, it was moved by the Commons, that for raiſing of money for the carrying on of a foreign war, and the defence of the realm againſt the Welch and Scots, the clergy ſhould be deprived of their temporal poſſeſſions: but Archbiſhop Arundel ſhewing to the king, that more of their tenants went to his wars than thoſe of the lay-fees; that the clergy were always ready to aſſiſt him with their prayers, councils, and purſes; and deſiring his majeſty to recollect his coronation-oath, wherein he had promiſed to advance the honour of the church, and to protect its miniſters, the project was laid aſide; the king declaring, that he was reſolved to leave the church in as good, or a better ſtate than he found it. The Archbiſhop then addreſſing himſelf to the Commons, told them, that although ſeveral of the king's predeceſſors had, in purſuance of former advice, ſeized the alien priories, which were certainly of great value, yet was not the king half a mark the richer, theſe lands having been

(*a*) This evidently appears from the ludicrous ſtories told of them by Chaucer: and that it was then the caſe with them in other kingdoms, appears from the Decameron of Boccace, written much about that time, wherein the friars make a very conſpicuous figure: had they been in much eſteem, or authority, neither Boccace nor Chaucer would have ventured thus to ſatirize them; or at leaſt have done it with impunity: the more juſt their ſatire, the more likely to be ſeverely reſented.

begged by his courtiers; and that their preſent motion proceeded from the ſame intereſted motives; their aim being to benefit themſelves, and not the king; who would not, the enſuing year, be the richer by a farthing.

NOTWITHSTANDING this rebuke, A. D. 1410, the Commons exhibited a new bill againſt the biſhops, abbots and priors; ſetting forth, that by the ſeizure of their eſtates, the king would be enabled to create and provide for fifteen earls, fifteen hundred knights, ſix thouſand two hundred eſquires; and to found one hundred new hoſpitals. But the king again rejected this propoſal; and commanded them, for the future, never to revive that matter. This monarch built the college of Battleſield in Shropſhire, with five others, and about ſix hoſpitals, which were all the religious foundations in the thirteenth year of his reign.

IN the ſecond year of the ſucceeding reign of Henry the Fifth, another attempt, but with no better ſucceſs, was made againſt the revenues of the church: for Archbiſhop Chichely artfully diverted the ſtorm, by inciting the king to aſſert his title to the crown of France; promiſing him ſuch a benevolence from the clergy, for the carrying on of the war, as had never before been given. But in a parliament held the ſame year, at Leiceſter, all the alien priories were given to the king, with all their lands and revenues; except ſuch as were conventual, or had the liberty of chooſing their own prior. Moſt of them were, however, beſtowed on other monaſteries or colleges; ſome were to remain in the king's fee; and a very ſmall number of them were granted, or ſold to the laity (*a*). In this ſhort reign, only two colleges were founded, beſides the Carthuſian Abby, at Sheen, and the abby at Syon, for nuns of St. Bridget, which were built and munificently endowed by the king himſelf.

DURING the unhappy reign of Henry the Sixth, there were founded three colleges and one hall at Oxford, three colleges at Cambridge, and eight elſewhere; fifteen hoſpitals, and one houſe of Grey Friars. Beſides theſe, the king himſelf founded Eaton College, in Buckinghamſhire, and King's College, Cambridge; which he chiefly endowed with the revenues of alien priories.

IN the reign of Edward the Fourth, were founded ſix colleges, beſides Katharine Hall, in Cambridge, and Lincoln College, in Oxford; and ſeven hoſpitals, or alms-houſes.

KING HENRY THE SEVENTH founded ſome few houſes of Obſervant Friars; and began the hoſpital at the Savoy, in London: his mother founded Chriſt's, and St. John's Colleges, in Cambridge. Beſides theſe, there were founded, in his reign, three hoſpitals, and one ſmall college.

SOON after the acceſſion of King Henry the Eighth, the colleges of Brazen Noſe, and Corpus Chriſti, were founded at Oxford; and Magdalene College, in Cambridge: as alſo, before the Diſſolution, five hoſpitals.

(*a*) Scarce any in fee, and not many for life or years, and thoſe to whom ſuch alien priories were given, were obliged to find a maſs-prieſt, to officiate in ſuch alien priories, and pray for the king; ſometimes for the founder.

FROM this account of the riſe and progreſs of monaſtic affairs, it is obſervable, that the richeſt monaſteries were founded before the Conqueſt; at which period, there were about one hundred: many of them were afterwards refounded.

WITHIN an hundred and fifty years after the Conqueſt, or before the firſt of Henry the Third, there were founded and refounded, four hundred and ſeventy-ſix abbies and priories; beſides eighty-one alien priories (*a*).

AFTER that time, there were many chantries, houſes of friars, hoſpitals and colleges founded; but very few houſes of monks, nuns or canons. "I think," (ſays Tanner, whom I have cloſely followed in this account) "but one Benedictine "houſe, *viz.* that of Holand in Lancaſhire, after the death of Henry the Third; "and after the death of King Edward the Third, (which was about an hundred "and ſixty years before the Diſſolution) no monaſtery for monks, or nuns, or "canons, except Sion, and five Chartreuſe houſes:" ſo that the nation in general ſeemed to have quite loſt its taſte for theſe kind of inſtitutions, a great while before the ſubverſion of them.

HAVING thus traced the monaſtic inſtitutions of this kingdom, from their riſe to their total ſuppreſſion, it remains to give ſome account of the different rules, or orders of religions, with their diſcipline, dreſs, and other particularities relative to them.

THE orders were either religious or military; of the former, were all monks, nuns and canons.

OF the monks, the moſt ancient are the Benedictines; ſo called from their following a ſet of rules laid down by St. Benedict, a native of Nurſia, in the dukedom of Spoleto in Italy; who was born about the year 480, and died about the year 543: his rule was not confirmed till fifty-two years after his death; when it received the ſanction of Pope Gregory the Great. St. Benedict founded twelve monaſteries in his own country; the chief of which was at Mont Caſſino. His rules are divided into ſeventy-three chapters; in them are many ordinances, inculcating every Chriſtian virtue: at the ſame time it muſt be allowed, that ſome which have been ſince added, are extremely ſingular (*b*). All ſorts of perſons, without diſtinction, were, by the order of St. Benedict, to be received into this order: children, boys, youths, the poor and the rich, gentlemen and peaſants, ſervants and freemen, the learned and unlearned, the laity and clergy.

(*a*) It is not clear that any alien priories were founded after the reign of Edward the Firſt. The whole number of them was about ninety-ſix; there being fifteen founded after the beginning of the reign of Henry the Third.

(*b*) The ſtatutes and ordinances of Lanfranc, concerning the rules to be obſerved by the Benedictines, have one whole chapter or decree concerning the diminution of blood; where it is appointed, that leave muſt firſt be aſked; but this leave was not to be granted, at ſome certain, ſolemn ſeaſons (unleſs upon unavoidable neceſſity); as when their abſence from officiating or aſſiſting in the public ſervice of their church, was not to be diſpenſed with. But leave being granted, the hour was to be notified to the celerer of the convent; thoſe who were to have a vein opened, were to come to the place appointed for that purpoſe, where ſeveral ceremonies and formalities were ordered to be performed at that time, and upon that occaſion. Afterwards they were to appear before the prior and chapter; and it being there openly ſaid, that ſuch and ſuch a brother had blood taken from him, the monk was to ſtand up (eſpecially if a vein in his arm had been opened) and to ſpeak for himſelf. Then it follows,

THE form and colour of the habits of theſe monks, it is ſaid, were at firſt left to the direction of the abbots, who varied them according to the ſeaſon and climate. But it was afterwards ordained, that they ſhould wear a looſe gown, of black ſtuff, reaching down to the heels, with a cowl, or hood of the ſame, and a ſcapulary; under this, another habit, of the ſame ſize, made of white flannel, and boots on their legs. From the colour of their outward habit, they were generally called Black Monks. To the end that no man might have any particular property, the abbot found them in every thing that was neceſſary; which, beſides their habit, was a knife, a needle, a ſteel pen, and tablets to write on. Their beds were a mat, ſome ſtraw, and a pillow; their covering, a blanket, and a piece of ſerge. There were nuns of this order, as well as monks: their habit was a black robe, with a ſcapulary of the ſame; under which was a tunic of white, undyed wool; and, when they went to the choir, they had, over all, a black cowl, like that worn by the monks (*a*).

THE great riches and power of the Benedictines cauſing a remiſſneſs in the obſervance of their rules, a reformation was ſet on foot, by Bernon, abbot of Gigni, in Burgundy; which was completed by Odo, abbot of

If he had been guilty of a ſmall offence, it ſhould be forgiven him; but if the offence was ſuch as could not be forgiven, or paſſed over without bodily puniſhment, the puniſhing of him ſhould be deferred till another time; namely, till he had recovered better health and ſtrength, after the loſs of blood. This chapter is ſomewhat myſtical; and perhaps deſignedly ſo, that the reputation of the members of the convent might be defended from being openly charged with irregularities and foul enormities: ſuch things were like the rites of Ceres, religiouſly to be concealed. But it ſeems plain, that the want of having blood taken away, was frequently occaſioned by irregularity and exceſs. I may further obſerve, that when the lord high-ſteward, with his retinue, had, according to his office, attended at an inthronization feaſt of an archbiſhop, it was one branch of his accuſtomed right and fee, which he claimed at his going away, to ſtop three days at one of the neareſt manors of the archbiſhop, to diminiſh his blood; that is, to have a vein opened, or properly to cool his blood, which had been heated by high feeding and drinking at the feaſt. *Battely's Additions to Somner's Canterbury, p.* 133.

(*a*) This order is ſaid by many (among whom are Sir Henry Spelman, Camden, and Selden) to have been brought into England by St. Auguſtine, A. D. 596: but Sir John Maſham, Biſhop Patrick, Dr. Hickes, Dr. William Thomas, and Biſhop Nicholſon, think this rule was little known, till King Edgar's time; and never perfectly obſerved, till after the Conqueſt. Some have ſaid, that St. Wilfrid brought it into England, A. D. 666; and others, with greater probability, that he improved the Engliſh church by it. It is expreſsly mentioned in King Kenred's charter to the monks of Everſham, A. D. 709; and in the bull of Pope Conſtantine, granted in the ſame year to that monaſtery: But Bede, who hath given us a very accurate account of the ſtate of religion in this iſland till the year 731, hath nothing of it; nor is there any mention of it in the firſt regulation of the monks in England by Archbiſhop Cuthbert, in the great ſynod at Cloveſhoe, A. D. 747. If Wilfrid really advanced this rule, it was not over all England, but in Kent only; and if the charter of King Kenred, and the bull of Pope Conſtantine be genuine, (for all the ancient grants produced by the monks are not ſo) this rule, which is there preferred to the monks of Everſham, is however ſaid, in the bull, to "have been at that time but little uſed in thoſe parts:" ſo that, inſtead of the Saxon monks being all Benedictines, there were probably but few ſuch, till the reſtoration of monaſteries under King Edgar; when St. Dunſtan and St. Oſwald (the latter of whom had been a Benedictine monk at Fleury in France) not only favoured the monks againſt the ſecular clergy, but ſo much advanced the Benedictines that William of Malmſbury ſaith, "This order took its riſe in England, from St. Oſwald." Of this order were all our cathedral priories, except Carliſle; and moſt of the richeſt abbies in England. Reyner, vol. i. p. 217, ſaith, that the revenues of the Benedictines were almoſt equal to thoſe of all the other orders. *Tanner's Notitia Monaſtica.*

Cluni (*a*), anno 912, who added thereto ſome ſtricter ordinances (*b*). This gave riſe to a new order, called, from the place of its inſtitution, Cluniacs: they were the principal branch of the Benedictines; and, like them, they wore a black habit. All the houſes of this order in England were governed by foreigners, and ſubordinate to foreign monaſteries (*c*), by whom only they could be viſited: neither could they elect their own priors, profeſs novices, or determine their own differences; but, for all theſe, were obliged to refer to their ſuperiors beyond ſea; by which the greateſt part of their revenues were carried abroad (*d*); and theſe convents contained more French than Engliſh monks. On theſe accounts, during the wars with France, the priories of this order were generally ſeized by the king, as alien priories; but after the petition to the parliament of Wincheſter, the fourth of Edward the Third, theſe inconveniences were by degrees removed; ſome of their houſes were in that and the following reign made denizen; Bermondſey was made an abbey; and at length all the others diſcharged from their ſubjection

(*a*) This abbey, which was ſituated at Cluny, in the Maſſonnois, a little province in France, was anciently ſo very ſpacious and magnificent, that in 1245, after holding of the firſt council of Lyons, Pope Innocent the Fourth went to Cluni, accompanied with the two patriarchs of Antioch and Conſtantinople, twelve cardinals, three archbiſhops, fifteen biſhops, and a great number of abbots; who were all entertained, without one of the monks being put out of his place: though St. Louis, Queen Blanch his mother, the duke of Artois, his brother, and his ſiſter, the emperor of Conſtantinople, the ſons of the kings of Arragon and Caſtile, the duke of Burgundy, ſix counts, and a great number of lords, with all their retinue, were there at the ſame time. Cluni, at its firſt erection, was put under the immediate protection of the apoſtolic ſee; with expreſs prohibition to all ſecular and eccleſiaſtical powers, not to diſturb the monks in the poſſeſſion of their effects, or the election of their abbot. By this they pretended to be exempted from the juriſdiction of biſhops; which at length gave the hint to other abbeys to inſiſt on the ſame. Cluni is the head of a very numerous and extenſive congregation: in effect, it was the firſt congregation of divers monaſteries, united under one chief, ſo as to conſtitute one body, or, as they call it, one order, that ever aroſe. *Chambers's Dictionary.*

(*b*) If we may believe their own abbot Peter, theſe ordinances were not much obſerved. His words are: "Our "brethren deſpiſe God, and having paſt all ſhame, eat fleſh now all days of the week except Friday, not only in "ſecret but in public; alſo boaſting of their ſin, like thoſe of Sodom: they run here and there, and, as kites and "vultures, flie with great ſwiftneſs where the moſt ſmoak of the kitchen is, or where they ſmell the beſt roaſt and "boiled. Thoſe that will not do as the reſt, them they mock, and treat as hypocrites and profane. Bacon, cheeſe, "eggs, and even fiſh itſelf, can no more pleaſe their nice palates: they only reliſh the fleſh-pots of Egypt: pieces "of boiled and roaſted pork, good fat veal, otters and hares; the beſt geeſe and pullets: and, in a word, all ſorts "of fleſh and fowl, do now cover the tables of our holy monks. But what do I talk? Thoſe things are grown now "too common; they are cloyed with them: they muſt have ſomething more delicate: they would have got for them "kids, harts, boars, and wild bears. One muſt for them beat the buſhes with a great number of hunters; and, by help "of birds of prey, muſt one chaſe the pheaſants and partridges, and ringdoves, for fear the ſervants of God (who are "good monks) ſhould periſh with hunger."

Short Hiſtory of Monaſtical Orders, by Gabriel Emillianne, p. 92.

(*c*) The houſes of Cluni, la Charité ſur Loire, and St. Martin's de Champs, at Paris.

(*d*) The houſes of Cluni had a penſion out of every houſe of that order in England, called Apportus, which probably amounted in the whole to a great ſum; for Cotton, in his Abridgment, p. 51, ſaith, The abbot of Cluni had a penſion from England of 2000*l. per annum:* and, according to Rymer, vol. iii. p. 1009, and Prynne's Records, vol. iii. p. 386, 858, the foreigners ſometimes demanded occaſional ſupplies from their houſes here; and even run them into debt, as Prynne, vol. iii. p. 750. *Tanner.*

to foreign abbeys (*a*). There were twenty-ſeven priories and cells of this order in England; and it was introduced here about the year 1077.

THE order of Grandmont was alſo a branch of the Benedictines, inſtituted on the mountain of Muret, by one Stephen, a gentleman of Auvergne, in France, anno 1076; who compoſed a rule taken from that of St. Benedict, the regular canons, and the manner of living of the hermits. It was confirmed by ſeveral popes; and afterwards, by reaſon of its great auſterity, moderated by Innocent the Fourth, in the year 1247; and again, by Clement the Fifth, in the year 1309. This Stephen is ſaid to have worn, by way of mortification, an iron cuiraſs next his ſkin; to have ſlept in a wooden coffin, laid ſome feet deep in the ground, without either bed or ſtraw; and, by his frequent kneeling, to have made the ſkin of his knees like that of a camel; and moreover, to have ſo often kiſſed the earth, that his noſe was thereby turned up. This order obtained the name of Grandmont, from the place of their reſidence, pointed out by a pretended miracle. One Peter, a native of Limoges, a diſciple and ſucceſſor of Stephen, having aſked a ſign from Heaven, informing him where he and his monks ſhould fix their abode, they having been chaſed from Muret; a voice in the air thrice diſtinctly pronounced Grandmont, which is a high mountain in the neighbourhood of Muret. Their dreſs is much like that of the Benedictines. There were but three houſes of this order in England: viz. Abberbury in Shropſhire, in which they were placed, at their firſt introduction, by Henry the Firſt; Creſſewal; in Herefordſhire; and Groſmont, or Eſkdale, in Yorkſhire.

ANOTHER branch of the Benedictines were the Carthuſians, the ſtricteſt of all the religious orders. It was inſtituted about the year 1080, (as is pretended) on the following occaſion: The body of a profeſſor of the univerſity of Paris eſteemed a man of piety and exemplary life, being brought, according to the cuſtom of the country, upon a bier for interment, whilſt the funeral ſervice was performing, the corpſe raiſed itſelf upright, and with a lamentable voice cried, "I am "accuſed by the juſt judgment of God;" which putting the congregation into a great fright, the ceremony ſtopped, and the interment was deferred till the next day; when on beginning again, the body cried, "I am judged by the juſt "judgment of God;" whereupon the obſequies were put off yet one day longer: at laſt, on the third day, in the preſence of a number of ſpectators, aſſembled by the report of this prodigy, the dead man cried, with a terrible voice, "By the "juſt judgment of God am I condemned." One Bruno, being preſent, was ſo ſtruck, that he addreſſed himſelf to the aſſembly, aſſerting, "That it was im-"poſſible for them to be ſaved, unleſs they renounced the world, and retired "themſelves into the deſarts;" which he, with ſix companions, executed im-

(*a*) But perhaps not till the thirty-ſixth of Henry the Sixth, or A. D. 1457; when three monks were ſent from Cluni, to deſire reſtitution of thoſe poſſeſſions which had long been detained from them, and leave to enter all places depending on their houſes; but, inſtead of obtaining any thing, were deprived of the ſubjection of all houſes of this order in England. *As Reyner's Append. p.* 192, 193.

mediately, going into a frightful place, called Chartreuſe (*a*), amongſt the mountains, in the dioceſe of Grenoble; where he was aſſiſted in all things, by the biſhop of that place, named Hugues; who, afterwards, became one of his diſciples. They followed the rule of St. Benedict; adding thereto ſeveral other great auſterities; ſome of which were, a total abſtinence from fleſh (*b*), even in caſes of deſperate ſickneſs; the living one day in every week on bread and water; always wearing a hair ſhirt next their ſkins; confinement within the walls of their monaſtery; from which none were ever to go out but the prior or procurator, and that only on the neceſſary buſineſs of the convent; a prohibition of walking about their own grounds above once a-week: and, beſides all theſe, and more, they were enjoined an almoſt continual ſilence. This rule was confirmed by Pope Alexander the Third, about the year 1174, and was brought into England, anno 1180, or 1181. Here were only nine houſes of monks of this order, and no nuns: their habit was all white, except an outward plaited cloak (ſometimes worn), which was black.

The Ciſtertians were likewiſe produced from the Benedictines; they were ſo called from Ciſtertium, or Ciſteaux, in the biſhopric of Chalons, in Burgundy, where they had their beginning, anno 1098; being inſtituted by one Robert, who had been abbot of Moleſme, in that province; from which he, with twenty of his religious, had withdrawn, on account of the wicked lives of his monks. But they were brought into repute by Stephen Harding, an Engliſhman, their third abbot, who gave them ſome additional rules to thoſe of St. Benedict; theſe were called, Charitatis Chartæ, and confirmed in the year 1107 by Pope Urban the Second. Stephen is therefore, by ſome, reckoned their principal founder. They were alſo called Bernardines, from St. Bernard, abbot of Clerival, or Clarevaux, in the dioceſe of Langros, about the year 1116; and who, himſelf, founded one hundred and ſixty monaſteries of this order. Sometimes they were ſtiled White Monks, from the colour of their habit; which was a white caſſock, with a narrow ſcapulary, and over that, a black gown, when they went abroad; but a white one, when they went to church (*c*). Their monaſteries, which became very numerous, were generally built in ſolitary and uncultivated places, and all dedicated to the Holy Virgin. This order came into England, anno 1128; and

(*a*) From whence their monaſteries were ſometimes called Charterhouſes.

(*b*) The prohibition of eating fleſh is ſtill continued, with this reſtriction: "That fleſh ought to be preſented to "thoſe who are thought to draw near their end: if they accept of it, and recover from ſickneſs, they are deprived "for ever of any vote; they can never come to any degree of ſuperiority; and are looked upon as infamous men, "who have preferred a morſel of meat, to a precious death before God." Stevens, vol. ii. p. 239, ſaith, There were but five nunneries of this auſtere order in the world; and but one hundred and ſixty-ſeven houſes of theſe monks.

(*c*) They pretended that the Virgin Mary appeared to St. Bernard, and commanded him to wear, for her own ſake, ſuch white clothes. *Emillianne.*

had their firſt houſe at Waverly, in Surry; and, before the Diſſolution, had eighty-five houſes here (*a*).

The foundation of the order of Savigni, or Fratres Griſei, is, by ſome, placed before the Conqueſt; but it was not really in being, till about forty years after that event. Its author, Vitalis, was born about the middle of the eleventh century, at Tierceville, near Bayeux; and is frequently ſtiled, Vitalis de Mortain, from having been a prebend of the Collegiate Church of Mortain: he was a companion of Robert de Arbriſſel, founder of the order of Fontevrauld; and began, anno 1105, to gather diſciples in the foreſt of Savigni; where, by the aſſiſtance of a nobleman named Roaul de Fugeres, he founded an abbey, about the year 1112: he preſcribed to his diſciples the rule of St. Benedict, with ſome peculiar additional conſtitutions: they wore a grey habit; from whence they were denominated Fratres Griſei. Vitalis came into England, A. D. 1120; and preaching here, and converting many, probably introduced his order; which was ſhortly after, namely, in the year 1148, united to the Ciſtertians.

The order of Tiron was ſet on foot by St. Bernard (*b*), who was born in the territory of Abbeville, in the province of Ponthieu, A. D. 1046, and became a follower of the before-mentioned Robert de Arbriſſel; but inſtituted a different ſort of monks, who took their name Tironenſes, from their firſt monaſtery, which was founded at Tiron, A. D. 1109: they were reformed Benedictines; they wore, at firſt, a grey habit, which was afterwards changed for black. It does not appear they had any houſe in England; or more than one abbey in Wales, viz. St. Dogmael's (where they were placed about the year 1126), with its dependant priory at Pille, and cell at Caldey. The Monaſticon mentions the monks of Savigni and Tiron as of the ſame order.

The orders of monks here mentioned, were all we had in England and Wales (*c*), except the Culdees, or Cultores Dei, who were Scotch monks, and of the ſame rule with the Iriſh ones: the Scotch writers make them as ancient as the converſion of their country to Chriſtianity, in the times of Decius and Aurelian. But they are neither mentioned by Nennius, who wrote in the ſeventh century, nor Bede, who wrote in the eighth. The firſt account of them is at St. Andrew's, about the middle of the ninth century: in England they occur no where, but at St. Peter's, in York.

The next of the religious orders were Canons: theſe were either ſecular or regulars. The Secular Canons were ſo called, becauſe they were converſant in the world, and adminiſtered to the laity on all occaſions, and took upon themſelves

(*a*) Stevens, vol. ii. p. 37, a, and p. 50, a, from A Wood. All orders, both of monks and friars, were againſt having any houſe of another order near them: but the Ciſtertians would not allow another houſe, even of their own order, to be built within ſuch a diſtance of them.

(*b*) This was a different perſon from St. Bernard of Clarivaux. *Stevens, vol. ii. p.* 256.

(*c*) Unleſs there were any Celeſtine monks brought in by King Henry the Fifth, as Reymer mentions, tr. i. p. 166; from Walſingham, ſub. A. D. 1413; and Weaver, p. 138: but I know not on what grounds. *Tanner.*

the cure of ſouls, which the regulars might not do without a diſpenſation. They differed very little from the ordinary prieſts, unleſs that they were under the government of local ſtatutes; for though, in ſome places, they were obliged to live together, yet in general this was not the caſe; moſt of them living apart, and ſubſiſting upon diſtinct portions, called prebends; nearly in the ſame manner as the preſent canons of our cathedrals.

The Regular Canons were ſuch as lived in a conventual manner under one roof, had a common refectory and dormitory, and were bound by vows to obſerve the rules and ſtatutes of their order: in fine, they were a kind of religious, whoſe diſcipline was leſs rigid than that of the monks. The chief rule of theſe canons was that of St. Auguſtine, who was conſtituted biſhop of Hippo, A. D. 395: but they were not brought into England till after the Conqueſt; and ſeem not to have obtained the appellation of Auguſtine canons, till ſome years after (*a*). Their habit was a long black caſſock, with a white rochet over it; and over that, a black cloak and hood. The monks were always ſhaved; but theſe canons wore beards, and caps on their heads. There were of theſe canons, and women of the ſame order, called Canoneſſes, about one hundred and ſeventy-five houſes.

Besides theſe, there were the following ſorts: firſt, ſuch as obſerved the rule of St. Auguſtine, according to the regulations of St. Nicholas of Arroſia; ſecondly, Auguſtines of the order of St. Victor; thirdly, Auguſtines of the inſtitution of

(*a*) Indeed Bale, and Sir Robert Atkins, ſay, that theſe canons were brought into England by St. Birinus, in the beginning of the ſeventh century: but thoſe were certainly ſecular canons, whom he then placed at Dorcheſter; and all other hiſtorians agree, that we had no regular canons here till the eleventh, and probably not till the twelfth century. For though they differ about the place of their firſt ſettlement, yet the general opinion is, that they came in after King Henry the Firſt began his reign. Joſeph Pamphilius indeed ſaith, That they were ſeated in London, A. D. 1059; but he ſeems to have been an obſcure writer. Mr. Somner ſaith, that St. Gregory's, in Canterbury, which was built by Archbiſhop Lanfranc, A. D. 1084, was their firſt houſe: but Leland's ſaying, that Archbiſhop Lanfranc placed ſecular canons at St. Gregory's, and that Archbiſhop Corboil changed them into regulars, makes the authority of that judicious antiquary, in this caſe, doubtful. Reyner ſaith, that they were brought into England by Athelwulphus, or Adulphus, confeſſor to King Henry the Firſt, and had their houſe at Noſtell in Yorkſhire: but they ſeem not to have been ſettled there till Thurſton was archbiſhop of York; and that was not till A. D. 1114. Stowe ſays, that Norman was the firſt regular canon in England; and that theſe religious were firſt ſeated at the Holy Trinity, or Chriſt Church, within Aldgate, London, A. D. 1108: but that houſe was not built till R. Beaurnier was biſhop of London; whereas the houſe of theſe canons at Colcheſter was founded before the death of Biſhop Maurice his predeceſſor, which happened September 26, 1107: and therefore I cannot but think that John Roſſe, and Pope Paſchalis the Second, are right, in placing them firſt at Colcheſter; though it could not be in Roſſe's year 1109, but was rather A. D. 1105.

Mr. Stevens tells us, though there were regular canons who embraced the rule of St. Auſtin, taken from his one hundred and ninth epiſtle, in the 11th century, (as particularly at the abbey of St. Dennis at Rheims, about A. D. 1067) yet the regular canons did not make ſolemn vows till the twelfth century; and did not in general take the name of "Regular Canons of St. Auſtin," till Pope Innocent the Second ordained, in the Lateran Council, A. D. 1139, that all regular canons ſhould ſubmit to that rule of St. Auſtin, in his one hundred and ninth epiſtle; ſo that theſe regular canons certainly fall ſhort of the time of their pretended founder: and therefore, when black or regular canons are mentioned before A. D. 1105, the reader muſt thereby underſtand ſecular canons. For it was uſual, in thoſe days, to call ſecular canons of cathedral and collegiate churches, "Canonici Regulares," to diſtinguiſh them from the common parochial clergy; though probably many of thoſe ſocieties might become Auſtin canons afterwards. *Tanner.*

St. Mary of Maretune; fourthly, Præmonſtratenſians, or Canons who followed a rule laid down, anno 1120, by St. Norbet, afterwards archbiſhop of Magdeburgh, which was a mixture of the monaſtical and canonical diſcipline. This order obtained its appellation of Præmonſtratenſians, from a ſtory told by theſe religious; wherein they aſſerted, that their founder received his rule, curiouſly bound in gold, from the hand of St. Auguſtine himſelf, who appeared to him one night, and ſaid to him, "There is the rule which I have written; if thy "brethren obſerve it, they, like my other children, need fear nothing at the day "of judgment:" after which, an angel ſhewed him the meadow wherein he was to build his firſt monaſtery, which from thence was called Præmonſtratus. Theſe canons, from their habit, were called White Canons: it was a white caſſock, with a rochet over it; a long white cloak, and a white cap. They came into England about the year 1140; and firſt ſettled at Newhouſe in Lincolnſhire. A conſervator of their privileges reſided in England; but they nevertheleſs were viſited by their ſuperiors of Præmonſtre; who, like thoſe of the Cluniacs and Ciſtertians, raiſed great contributions on them, till reſtrained by the parliament held at Carliſle, anno 1307. This ſtatute did not reſtrain the foreign ſuperiors from viſiting their orders; but only from taking money out of the kingdom: ſo that the religious of this order continued ſubordinate to the general chapter and abbot of Præmonſtre, till the year 1512; when they were exempted from it by the bull of Pope Julius the Second; confirmed by King Henry the Eighth; and the ſuperiority of the houſes of this order in England, which were thirty-five in number, was given to the abbot of Welbeck in Nottinghamſhire. Fifthly, the Gilbertine Canons; ſo called from St. Gilbert an Engliſhman, their firſt inſtitutor: they were likewiſe ſometimes called Sempringham Canons, from the place of their firſt monaſtery, which was founded at Sempringham in Lincolnſhire, A. D. 1148; and confirmed by Pope Eugenius the Third. This order conſiſted of men and women, who lived under the ſame roof, but their apartments had no communication: nevertheleſs they could not eſcape ſcandal, as appears from the verſes in the note (*a*). This rule was compoſed from thoſe of St. Auguſtine and St. Benedict: the women following the latter, according to the Ciſtertian regulation; and the men that of St. Auguſtine, with ſome ſpecial ſtatutes inſerted by St. Gilbert. The habit of theſe canons, as deſcribed in the Monaſticon, was a black caſſock, with a cloak over it; and an hood, lined with lambs' ſkins: but others ſay, it was the ſame with the Ciſtertians. They were under the directions of a maſter, or prior-general; who frequently viſited them, and had ſo much power, that particular priors and convents could do little without him.

(*a*) Hærum ſunt quædam ſteriles, quædam parientes
Virgineſque tamen nomine cuncta tegunt;
Quæ pa'oralis baculi dotatur honore
Illa quidem melius fertiliuſque parit.
Vix etiam quævis ſterilis reperitur in illis,
Donec ejus ætas talia poſſe negat.

This order increaſed ſo faſt, that St. Gilbert himſelf founded thirteen monaſteries; four of men, and nine for men and women together: theſe, together, contained ſeven hundred brethren, and fifteen hundred ſiſters. At the Diſſolution, there were about twenty-five houſes of this order in England and Wales.

The Canons Regular of the Holy Sepulchre were inſtituted here, the beginning of the twelfth century, in imitation of thoſe eſtabliſhed anno 1099, after the conqueſt of Jeruſalem, by Godfrey of Boullogne; who committed to their care the keeping of the Holy Sepulchre. They were ſometimes called Canons of the Holy Croſs, on account of a double red croſs they wore upon the breaſt of their cloak, or upper garment; in which alone their dreſs differed from that of other Auguſtine canons. The firſt houſe of this order was at Warwick, which was begun for them by Henry de Newburgh, earl of Warwick; who dying anno 1123, before it was finiſhed, Roger, his ſon, completed it before the year 1135. After the loſs of Jeruſalem, A. D. 1188, this order falling to decay, their revenues and privileges were moſtly given to the Maturine friars; and but two houſes of this order continued to the Diſſolution.

Besides the Benedictine and Gilbertine nuns already mentioned, there were alſo Cluniac, Ciſtertian, Carthuſian, Auguſtine, and Præmonſtratenſian nuns; who followed the ſame rules as the monks of their reſpective orders, omitting only what was not proper for their ſex; and wore habits of the ſame colour, having their heads covered with a veil: and alſo nuns of Fontevraud, St. Clare, and Brigithries.

The nuns of Fontevraud were inſtituted about the year 1100, by Robert D'Arbriſſel, at Fontevraud, near Poictiers. This order, which was a reformation of the Benedictines, was chiefly for women; yet, in France, both men and women of this order reſided in the ſame convent, but in ſeparated apartments; and, what was peculiar, under the government of an abbeſs: the founder grounding his model on the nineteenth chapter of St. John; where it is written, that Chriſt being on the croſs, recommended St. John to the Virgin Mary, and commended him to acknowledge her as his mother: in imitation whereof the male religious were to acknowledge the maternal authority of the abbeſs, or prioreſs. This order was approved of by Pope Paſchal. The abbeſs of Fontevraud was made the general ſuperioreſs of the order. Theſe nuns were brought into England by Robert Boſſu, earl of Leiceſter, before the year 1161, and placed at Nun Eaton, in Warwickſhire. There were only two other houſes of this order in the kingdom. There is no expreſs account that any monk belonged to them; but that there did is probable, as a prior is mentioned at Nun Eaton *(a)*. Their habit was a kind of tunic, or caſſock, of the natural colour of the wool, and over it a large black garment.

(*a*) In France the nuns wear a black habit, with a white veil and beirs; at church, a long black gown, with large ſleeves. The monks are all in black, as ſecular prieſts; but upon their caſſocks they have a camail, as the French biſhops; at the bottom of which hang two little ſquare pieces of the ſame ſtuff, one before and the other behind. *Emilliane.*

THE nuns of the Order of St. Clare, were inſtituted about the year 1212, by one Clara, a religious virgin, at Aſſize in Italy, the place of her birth; where ſhe lived ſome time with St. Francis, whoſe diſcipline and habit ſhe adopted for her nuns: on which account they were frequently called Minoreſſes; and their houſe, without Aldgate, the Minories. They were alſo ſometimes, on account of their poverty, ſtiled, the Poor Clares. This order was confirmed by the Popes Innocent the Third, and Honorius the Third; by the latter, A. D. 1223: after which it was divided into a ſtricter and leſs rigid ſort. They were brought into England by Blanch, queen of Navarre, wife to Edmund, earl of Lancaſter, Leiceſter and Derby, about the year 1293, and placed without Aldgate, London; beſides which, this order had only three houſes in England; *viz.* Waterbeacle and Denny, in Cambridgeſhire, and Bruſyard, in Suffolk.

THE Brigittine nuns were ſo called from their inſtitutrix, Bridget, princeſs, or dutcheſs of Nercia, in Sweden; who, in the year 1360, went to Rome, and obtained the approbation of Pope Urban the Fifth, for an order of nuns which ſhe had inſtituted, as ſhe pretended, by the expreſs command of Chriſt himſelf, by whom the rules were dictated; whence theſe religious were alſo called Nuns of Our Holy Saviour: their rule was nearly that of St. Auguſtine. This order, though chiefly for women, had likewiſe men in every convent. Their monaſteries were built double: in one half, which was ſeparated from the other by a high wall, dwelt the women, under the direction of an abbeſs; and the other half was inhabited by the men. The church was ſo contrived, that it ſerved for both; the men having the lower, and the nuns the upper part of it. The men were to attend to the ſpiritual matters, the women to the temporal; and, in caſe of a too ſcanty endowment, were to work for the maintenance of themſelves and the brethren: but both men and women were to obey the abbeſs. The men were not permitted to approach the nuns, except in caſes of abſolute neceſſity. This order differed from all others, in requiring a particular number of men and women in every houſe; *viz.* ſixty nuns, thirteen prieſts, four deacons, and eight lay brothers, in all eighty-five: to repreſent Chriſt's thirteen apoſtles, including St. Paul, and ſeventy-two diſciples. Their habit was a tunic of coarſe grey woollen, with a cloak of the ſame. The nuns had on their veils five ſmall pieces of red cloth, repreſenting Chriſt's five wounds; the prieſts, a red croſs on their breaſts, with a circular piece of white cloth in the middle, to repreſent the Hoſt; the deacons, a white circle, within which were four ſmall pieces of red cloth, to repreſent tongues; and the laymen wore a white croſs, with five red pieces, repreſenting the five wounds. Of this order there was only one houſe in England; namely, that of Sion in Middleſex, founded by King Henry the Fifth, about the year 1414.

THESE conclude the catalogue of the different ſorts of monks, canons and nuns, formerly reſident in England and Wales. We come next to the friars.

The firſt were the Dominicans; whoſe founder was St. Dominic, a Spaniard, born at Calagueraga, a ſmall town in Old Caſtile, about the year 1070. Theſe were likewiſe called Preaching Friars, and Black Friars: the former, from their office, whereby they were directed to preach, and convert heretics; the latter, from the colour of their garments. In France, they are alſo named Jacobins; from the ſituation of their firſt houſe, which ſtood in St. James's-ſtreet, at Paris. Their rule, which was chiefly that of St. Auguſtine, was verbally approved of by Pope Innocent the Third, in the Lateran council, A. D. 1215; and by the bull of Pope Honorius the Third, A. D. 1216. At firſt they wore the habit of the Auguſtine canons; but, about the year 1219, exchanged it for a white caſſock, with a white hood over it: and, when they went abroad, a black cloak and hood, over their white veſtments. They came into England, A. D. 1221; and that year had their firſt houſe at Oxford. At the Diſſolution, there were of this order about forty-three houſes. There were likewiſe Dominican nuns, but none of them ever reached England.

The Franciſcan, Grey, or Minor Friars was an order thus variouſly called; the firſt from St. Francis D'Aſſiſe, their founder; the ſecond, from the colour of their habit; and the third, from an affected humility. This rule was framed by St. Francis, A. D. 1209; approved of by Pope Innocent the Third, A. D. 1210; and by the general Lateran council, A. D. 1215. Their habit was a looſe garment, of coarſe grey cloth, reaching to their heels, a cowl of the ſame, and, when they went abroad, a cloak. They girded themſelves with a cord, and went bare-foot. Authors differ as to the exact time when they were introduced into England; but the general, and moſt probable opinion is, that it was about the year 1224. They had their firſt houſe at Canterbury, and their ſecond at London. By degrees, this order relaxing from the ſtrictneſs of their original diſcipline, a reformation was ſet on foot, about the year 1400, by St. Bernard, or Bernardin, of Sienna; and was confirmed by the council of Conſtance, A. D. 1414; and afterwards, received the approbation of Eugenius the Fourth, and other popes. Thoſe who profeſſed this reformed rule, were called Obſervants, or Recollects (*a*). They are commonly ſaid to have been brought into England by King Edward the Fourth; but Tanner ſays, "I find no certain account of "their being here, till King Henry the Seventh built two or three houſes for "them." At the Diſſolution, the Conventual Franciſcans had about fifty-five houſes, under ſeven diſtinct cuſtodies or warderſhips; *viz.* thoſe of London, York, Cambridge, Briſtol, Oxford, Newcaſtle, and Worceſter.

The Trinitarians, Maturines, or Friars of the order of the Holy Trinity for the Redemption of Captives, were inſtituted by John de Matha, and Felix de Valois, in France, about the year 1197. They followed the rule of St. Auguſtine; to which were added, ſome particular conſtitutions; the chief of which

(*a*) As to the Capuchins, and other diſtinctions of the Franciſcans beyond the ſeas, they chiefly aroſe ſince the Engliſh Reformation, and never had any place here. *Tanner.*

were, that all the money or goods which ſhould fall into their hands, were to be divided into three parts; one of which was to be employed in works of charity, one for their maintenance, and the third to be expended in the redemption of captives taken by the infidels. Their churches were to be all dedicated to the Holy Trinity, which procured them the name of Trinitarians. The appellation of Maturines they owed to their firſt houſe being ſituated near St. Mathurine's Chapel, in Paris: by their rule, they were alſo forbidden to travel on horſeback, but might ride on aſſes. Their habit was white, having on the breaſt a croſs, half red and half blue, given them by Pope Innocent the Third; who confirmed their order, and to whom, whilſt ſaying maſs, a hideous phantom had appeared; it was habited in a like dreſs, and holding in its hands two ſlaves, bound in chains; which viſion made him reſolve to eſtabliſh an order, whoſe buſineſs it ſhould be to redeem captive Chriſtians. Theſe friars were brought into England, A. D. 1224; and on the decay of the order of the Canons of the Holy Sepulchre, their revenues were given to them. Their firſt houſe was at Mottendan in Kent; or, according to ſome, at Ingham in Norfolk, as long as that houſe was of this order; from whence they were called of the order of Ingham (*a*). Theſe friars had about ten or twelve houſes in England and Wales.

The Carmelites pretend that the prophet Elias was the inſtitutor of their order, and was the firſt Carmelite; and that he never left them any written rule. But the true time of their foundation, was the year 1122, by Albert, patriarch of Jeruſalem, who, with a few hermits, reſided on Mount Carmel in Paleſtine; from whence they were driven, about the year 1238, by the Saracens: they were alſo called White Friars, and Friars of the Virgin Mary; the firſt, on account of the colour of their habits; the latter, by the direction of Pope Honorius the Third; who, in anno 1224, confirmed their rule, which is chiefly that of St. Baſil. They were brought into England, A. D, 1240, by the Lords John Vaſey, and Richard Grey: their firſt houſes were at Alnwick in Northumberland, and Ailesford in Kent; at the latter of theſe places, they held their firſt European chapter, A. D. 1245. Their habits, it is ſaid, was at firſt white; but being obliged by the infidels to make them party-coloured, they continued to wear them ſo fifty years after their arrival in England: but about the year 1290, changed them again for white. Of this order there were, in England and Wales, about forty houſes.

The Croſſed, or Crouched Friars, were inſtituted, or at leaſt reformed, by one Gerard, prior of St. Mary of Morello, at Bologna; and, in the year 1169, confirmed by Pope Alexander the Third, who brought them under the rule of St. Auguſtine; to which he added ſome conſtitutions for their better government.

(*a*) Friars Robertines, inſtituted by Robert Flower, the devout hermit of Knareſburgh, who lived in King John's reign, are ſpoken of by Leland as a branch of the Trinitarians; but I have hitherto met with ſo little concerning theſe Robertines, that I can ſay nothing certain of them; and doubt whether there really was any ſuch order. *Tanner.*

This order came into England, A. D. 1244; their firſt houſe was at Colcheſter: at firſt, they carried in their hands a croſs fixed to a ſtaff; but afterwards, wore a croſs of red cloth on their backs and breaſts. Their habit was blue, by the particular direction of Pope Pius the Second. There were not here, of theſe friars, more than ſix or ſeven houſes.

The origin of the Auguſtine Friars, or Friars Erimites, of the order of St. Auguſtine, is extremely uncertain; their firſt appearance in England was about the year 1250; their habit was, when in the houſe, a white robe, with a ſcapulary; which, when they went abroad, they covered with a ſort of cowl, and a large hood, both black, which were girded with a black leather thong. At the Suppreſſion, they had, in England and Wales, about thirty-two houſes.

Of the original of the Friars of the Sack, and the Bethlemite Friars, there is no account; they appeared in England both in the ſame year; *viz.* A. D. 1257: the true ſtile of the former, was Friars of the Penance of Jeſus Chriſt; but they were commonly called, Friars of the Sack; either from the faſhion of their habit, or its materials, which perhaps was of ſackcloth. This order was of ſhort continuance here, being aboliſhed by the council at Lyons, A. D. 1307: their firſt houſe ſeems to have been near Alderſgate in London.

The rule and habit of the Bethlemite Friars much reſembled that of the Dominicans; except that the former had a red ſtar, of five rays, with a blue circle in the middle, which they wore on their breaſts, in memory of the ſtar which conducted the wiſe men to Bethlehem. They appear to have had only that houſe in which they were placed at their coming into England. It was in Trumpington-ſtreet, at Cambridge.

The order of St. Anthony of Vienna was inſtituted, A. D. 1095, by one Gaſton Frank. Their principal care was to ſerve thoſe afflicted with the diſorder called St. Anthony's Fire, from the relicks of that ſaint being particularly efficacious in its cure (*a*). The friars of this order followed the rule of St. Auguſtine, and wore a black habit, with the letter T, of a blue colour, on their breaſts. They came hither early in the reign of King Henry the Third; and had one houſe at London, and another at Hereford.

(*a*) St. Anthony is ſometimes repreſented with a fire by his ſide, ſignifying that he relieves perſons from the inflammation called after his name; but always accompanied by a hog, on account of his having been a ſwineherd, and curing all diſorders in that animal. Both painters and poets have made very free with this ſaint and his followers: the former, by the many ludicrous pictures of his temptation; and the latter, by divers epigrams on his diſciples, or friars: one of which is the following, printed in Stephens's World of Wonders.

Once fed'ſt thou, Anthony, an herd of ſwine,
And now an herd of monks thou feedeſt ſtill;
For wit and gut alike both charges bin:
Both loven filth alike; both like to fill
Their greedy paunch alike: nor was that kind
More beaſtly, ſottiſh, ſwiniſh, than this laſt.
All elſe agrees: one fault I only find,
Thou feedeſt not thy monks with oken maſt.

"OF the Friars de Pica (ſays Tanner) who had an houſe at Norwich, I have "met with nothing but what the author there ſays of them; unleſs they were the "Freres Pies, a ſort of religious that wore black and white garments, mentioned "by Walſingham, page 124."

THE laſt order of friars which viſited this kingdom, was that of Bonhommes, or Good Men. They were brought hither, A. D. 1283, by Edmund, earl of Cornwall, and placed at Aſherug in Bucks: beſides which, there occurs but one other houſe of this order in England; *viz.* at Edingdon in Wiltſhire. Theſe friars followed the rule of St. Auguſtine, and wore a blue habit. The ſuperiors of their convents were called Rectors; and one of them was ſtyled Preſident of the Order.

OF the military orders there were only two in England; the Knights Hoſpitalars, and the Knights Templars.

THE order of the Knights Hoſpitalars, or Knights of St. John of Jeruſalem, took its name from an hoſpital built at Jeruſalem, for the uſe of pilgrims viſiting the Holy Sepulchre: ſome merchants of the city of Melphi, in the kingdom of Naples, who traded into the Eaſt, having obtained the permiſſion of the califf of Egypt for its erection. It was dedicated to St. John. The community afterwards encreaſing, by the foundation of two new churches, they took upon themſelves the protection of pilgrims. The order was inſtituted about the year 1092; and was particularly favoured by Godfrey of Boullogne, on account of their aſſiſtance in taking the Holy City; and alſo by his ſucceſſor Baldwin. Their rule was nearly that of St. Auguſtine: beſides which, they obliged themſelves, by their vows, to receive, treat and defend pilgrims; and to maintain, by force of arms, the Chriſtian religion in their country. This order was compoſed of eight nations; but, ſince the ſeparation of the Engliſh from the church of Rome, has only ſeven. On the ruin of the Chriſtian affairs in the Eaſt, they were obliged to leave Jeruſalem, and ſettled at Rhodes; and, after the loſs of that Iſland, anno 1522, the emperor Charles the Fifth, gave them the iſland of Malta: from theſe changes they have ſucceſſively been called Knights Hoſpitalars, of Rhodes, and of Malta. They came into England ſoon after their inſtitution; and had a houſe built for them in London, A. D. 1100. Their habit was a black caſſock, with a white croſs. From a poor and mean beginning (*a*), they obtained ſuch riches, honours and exemptions, that their ſuperior here in England was the firſt lay-baron, and had a

(*a*) They are ſaid, at firſt, to have had but one horſe between two of them; but, about an hundred and fifty years after their inſtitution, they had nineteen thouſand manors in Chriſtendom. Their wealth and privileges probably made them ſometimes inſolent; for, by Pat. 45 Ed. III. p. 1, m. 3, vel. 4, "Rex conſtituit Ricardum de "Everton viſitatorem hoſpitalis St. Joannis Jeruſalem in Anglia, ad reprimendam religioſorum inſolentiam, et ad "obſervandam religionis honeſtatem." Thoſe of this order were all laymen, excepting two or three to perform divine offices.

ſeat amongſt the lords in parliament; and ſome of their privileges were extended even to their tenants.

THERE were alſo ſiſters of this order; but we had only one houſe of them in England, *viz.* Buckland in Somerſetſhire.

THE Knights Templars, ſo called from having their firſt reſidence in ſome rooms adjoining to the Temple of Solomon, aroſe in the year 1118, at Jeruſalem. Hugo of Paganis, Geoffry of St. Omer's, and ſeven others, whoſe names have not reached the preſent times, conſecrating themſelves to the ſervice of God, after the manner of the Regular Canons of St. Auguſtine, and binding themſelves to guard the roads, for the ſecurity of pilgrims; at firſt ſubſiſting by alms. Their habit was white, with a red croſs on the left ſhoulder. Their coming into England was in the beginning of the reign of King Stephen; their firſt reſidence in Holborn. They encreaſed very faſt; and, in a ſhort time, obtained great poſſeſſions (*a*). Their flouriſhing condition, here and abroad, excited both the avarice and envy of the Pope, ſeveral princes, and the whole body of religious. Pope Clement, in particular, dexterouſly made uſe of the covetous humour of Philip le Bel, king of France, to perſuade him to extirpate them out of his dominions; which he agreed to do, on condition of being inveſted with their eſtates. The ſame argument was probably uſed with other princes, who conſidered them as a formidable body. They therefore, to keep up an appearance of juſtice, accuſed the whole order of horrid crimes: whereupon the knights were every where impriſoned, their eſtates ſeized, and their order ſuppreſſed, by Pope Clement the Fifth, anno 1309; and totally aboliſhed, by the council of Vienna, A. D. 1312. The ſuperior of this order was ſtyled Maſter of the Temple, and was often ſummoned to parliament.

THE order of St. Lazarus of Jeruſalem (of which we had a few houſes) ſeems to have been founded for the relief and ſupport of lepers and impotent perſons, of the military orders.

HAVING thus ſlightly touched upon the different religious orders (*b*), which once over-run this country, it will be neceſſary to ſay ſomething of their houſes, and the officers thereto belonging.

(*a*) Matthew Paris ſays, p. 544, That they had nine thouſand manors in Chriſtendom; and, at their ſuppreſſion, they had (according to Heylin's Coſmogr. lib. 3.) ſixteen thouſand lordſhips, beſides other lands.

See Rapin's Folio, vol. 1, *p.* 403.

(*b*) The names of the orders delineated in the annexed plate, follow in the ſame ſucceſſion in which the figures ſtand; beginning with the nun on the left, and reckoning towards the right: the ſame order is obſerved with reſpect to the ſitting figures.——A Benedictine nun; a monk of the ſame order; a Cluniac; a Ciſtertian and a Charthuſian; a Nun of St. Gilbert; a Regular Canon of the ſame; a Trinitarian; a Knight Templar; a Knight Hoſpitalar; a Secular Canon; a Canon Regular of the Præmonſtratenſians. The ſitting figures are, a Regular Canon of St. Auguſtine; a Regular Canon of the Holy Sepulchre; a Canon of the Hoſpital of St. John at Coventry; Chaplain of the Order of St. John of Jeruſalem.

Grimm delin. 21. May 1773. Van Drazenaac.

UNDER the general title of religious houſes, are comprehended cathedral and collegiate churches, abbies, priories, colleges, hoſpitals, preceptories and friaries.

OF the cathedral churches, as they ſtill remain, little need be ſaid. It may, however, be neceſſary to obſerve, that, in the conventual cathedrals, the biſhop was in the place of the abbot, and had the principal ſtall on the right hand of the entrance into the choir, as he ſtill hath at Ely, and till lately, had at Durham and Carliſle.

COLLEGIATE churches and colleges conſiſted of a number of ſecular canons, living together, under the government of a dean, warden, provoſt or maſter; and had belonging to them, for the more ſolemn performance of divine ſervice, chaplains, ſinging men, and choriſters.

AN abby was a religious ſociety of men or women, living together under the government of an abbot or abbeſs. Of theſe, ſome were ſo conſiderable, that the abbots were called to parliament (*a*), and ſat and voted in the Houſe of Lords, had epiſcopal power within the limits of their houſes (*b*), gave ſolemn benediction, confirmed the leſſer orders, wore mitres (*c*), ſandals, *&c.* and carried croſſes or

(*a*) The oracle of the law ſaith, 2 Inſtit. p. 585, "Twenty-ſix abbots and two priors had baronies, and thereby "were lords of parliament." In 1 Inſtit 97, he ſaith, "There were an hundred and eighteen monaſteries, founded "by kings of England; whereof ſuch as held *per baroniam*, and were called to parliament by writ, were "lords of parliament, and had places and voices there; but not if they were not called by writ; for Faverſham "was founded by King Stephen, to hold by barony; but the abbot not being called to parliament, did not ſit "there." This is alſo in Weaver, p. 183. Cowel, *ſub voce* Mitred, ſaith, Theſe abbots were not called to parliament becauſe they were mitred, but becauſe they received their temporals from the king. Collier, Ecc. Hiſt. vol. ii. p. 164, ſaith, They held of the king, *in capite per baroniam*; their endowment being at leaſt an entire barony, which conſiſted of thirteen knights fees, and thereby they were advanced to the ſtate and dignity of ſpiritual lords: but of the parliamentary abbies, ſome were founded by ſubjects, ſome by kings of Mercia, *&c.* and about eight only by kings of England. The abbot of Thorney pleaded, A. D. 1338, that he did not hold by barony, but by frankalmoigne; Collect. Wren, vol. ii. p. 18, ex reg. Sim. Epiſc Elienſ. and yet was then called to parliament, as Fuller, book vi. p. 292, and Stevéns's Append. p. 15: the prior of Coventry likewiſe pleaded, 14 Rich. II. that he did not hold *per baroniam*, as Mon. Angl. vol. i. p. 305. The abby of Bardney was valued at no more than 429*l.* 7*s.* *per annum* in the whole, and 366*l.* 6*s.* 1*d.* clear: and there were ſeveral abbies and priories which had much greater temporals, and conſequently were entire baronies, which were not parliamentary: 'tis poſſible theſe laſt might not receive their temporals from the crown, nor hold them *in capite*, and Bardney might: but I rather think this privilege was chiefly owing to the favour of the king; who might, in other caſes, as well as that of Taviſtock, call an houſe of the foundation of his anceſtors, which was not really ſo: Fuller's Church Hiſt. book vi. p 293. All the parliamentary abbots and priors had houſes in Weſtminſter, London, or Southwark, to live in, whilſt the parliament ſat. *Tanner.*

(*b*) See the grant of a mitre to the abbot of Malmſbury, in Wilkins's Councils, vol. iii. p. 142, 143: "Abbas "Samſon fecit novum ſigillum, quod cum mitra eſſet pingendum, licet predeceſſores ſui tale non haberent; et "primus inter abbates Angliæ impetravit, quod daret epiſcopalem benedictionem ſolemniter ubicunque fuerit." Joc. Brakeland, in Chron. St. Edm. Bur. M. S. he was abbot from A. D. 1182, to 1211, or 1212. "Thomas "de Marleberg, abbas Eveſham primo ſculpſit ſuper duas tumbas prædeceſſorum ſuorum ad honorem et oſtenſionem "dignitatis eccleſiæ imagines epiſcopales, et ſibi ipſi cum eiſdem fecit mauſoleum, et incidit in lapide marmoreo "ſuperpoſito imaginem epiſcopalem ad honorem eccleſiæ: obiit A. D. 1236." We may hereby ſee when theſe practices began. *Tanner.*

(*c*) But their mitres differed a little from thoſe of the biſhops, who carried their croſiers in their left hands, but the abbots carried them in their right hands; as Mr. Auſtin, in Append. to Dr. Fiddes's Life of Cardinal Wolſey, p. 113. ——In the proceſſion roll, the third of Henry the Eighth, the parliamentary abbots are drawn

paſtorals in their hands, and ſome of their houſes were exempted from the juriſdiction even of the archbiſhop (*a*), and ſubject to the pope alone. Mr. Fuller ſays, That, in the forty-ninth of Henry the Third, ſixty-four abbots, and thirty-ſix priors, were ſummoned to parliament; but this being thought too many, King Edward the Third reduced them to twenty-five abbots, and two priors; to whom were afterwards added, the abbots of Taviſtock and Tewkſbury, making, in all, twenty-nine: theſe, and no more, conſtantly enjoyed this privilege. A liſt of them, ſee in the note (*b*).

A PRIORY was a ſociety of religious, where the chief perſon was termed a prior or prioreſs; and of theſe there were two ſorts.

with barons caps, not mitres; as M. S. Aſhmol. Oxon. n. 13: but in the parliament houſe, the fifteenth of Henry the Eighth, they are drawn with mitres on their heads; as Fiddes's Life of Wolſey, p. 303.

(*a*) Cowel, *voce* Abbat, ſaith, Such as were mitred, were exempted from the juriſdiction of the dioceſan, having themſelves epiſcopal authority within their limits; and Godolphin, in Repert. Eccl. hath almoſt the ſame words; but Reyner, tr. ii. p. 55, ſaith, That St. Alban's, Weſtminſter, St. Auguſtine's, Canterbury, St. Edmund's Bury, and Everſham, only were exempt, except perhaps Glaſtonbury. It is more likely that ſeveral others of them obtained that privilege, as Burnet Reformat, vol. i. p. 187: however, their exemption from their dioceſcans, being honoured with the mitre, and called to parliament, certainly depended on different grants; for the abbot of Malmſbury was one of the twenty-five fixed upon for parliamentary abbots, by King Edward the Third, as Fuller, book vi. p. 292. But he had not a grant of the epiſcopal ornaments and authority till the third of Richard the Second; though he was before that, exempt from his dioceſan, as appears from the grant in Wilkins's Councils, vol. iii. p. 142. Peterborough alſo was allowed to be a parliamentary abby, by King Edward the Third; as Fuller, book vi. p. 292; but William Genge was, about the twenty-firſt of Richard the Second, the firſt mitred abbot: and both abbot and convent were viſited by the biſhop of Lincoln about eighty years afterwards; *viz.* in A. D. 1483; as Gunton's Peterborough, with Patrick's Supplement, p. 49, 323 and 328. The abbot of Taviſtock obtained the mitre the thirty-ſixth of Henry the Sixth, but was not called to parliament till the fifth of Henry the Eighth; and was not exempted from the biſhop of the dioceſe till three years after; as M. Anſtis, in Append. to Fiddes's Life of Wolſey, p. 112. The prior of Durham had the uſe of the mitre and paſtoral ſtaff, from about A. D. 1374, as Ang. Sacr. vol. i. p. 769, and Willis's Abbies, vol. i. p. 262, though never called to parliament: and, in the regiſter of Oliv. King, biſhop of Bath and Wells, there is a grant from Pope Alexander the Sixth, for the priors of Taunton (who were not parliamentary) having epiſcopal authority, and all the ornaments but the mitre; which I never met another inſtance of, and therefore inſert an abſtract of the grant: "Alexander epiſcopus ſervus ſervorum Dei, dilecto filio Joanni priori et conv. de Tanton, ſalutem; ut tu et ſucceſſores tui annulo paſtorali, baculo almuciis, et aliis pontificalibus inſigniis (citra tamen mitram) uti; nec non in dicto monaſterio et prioratibus, et eccleſiis illi ſubjectis benedictionem ſolennem poſt miſſarum, veſperarum completorum, et divinorum officiorum ſolennia (dummodo in benedictione hujuſmodi aliquis antiſtes aut apoſtolicæ ſedis legatus præſens non ſit) populo elargiri; canonicos quoque et chorales dicti monaſterii ad minores ordines promovere; licite valeatis, dat. 4 Non Maii, A. D. 1499."

(*b*) The abbot of Tewkſbury, the prior of Coventry, the abbots of Waltham, Cirenceſter, St. John's at Colcheſter, Croiland, Shrewſbury, Selby, Bardney, St. Bennet's of Hulme, Thorney, Hide, Winchelcomb, Battel, Reading, St. Mary's in York, Ramſey, Peterborough, St. Peter's in Glouceſter, Glaſtonbury, St. Edmondſbury, St. Auguſtine, Canterbury, St. Alban's, Weſtminſter, Abingdon, Everſham, Malmſbury and Taviſtock, and the prior of St. John's of Jeruſalem, who was ſtyled "Primus Angliæ baro;" but it was with reſpect to the lay-barons only, for he was the laſt of the ſpiritual ones.—I have here ſet down the firſt twenty four of them, in the order they went to parliament the third of Henry the Eighth. Mr. Hearne thinks, that they took place in the Houſe of Lords, according to the ſeniority of their creation. But John Anſtis, Eſq. Garter, King of Arms, is of opinion, "That ſome of "the abbots, like the biſhops, had, by virtue of their abbies, a certain fixed precedency; and that others of them "took place according to the priority of their creation." Many have aſſigned the firſt place to the abbot of St. Alban's, becauſe St. Alban was the firſt martyr in this kingdom. The abbot of Leiceſter, and the prior of St. James's, near Northampton, were ſometimes called to parliament, after King Edward the Third had reduced the number. *Tanner.*

First, When the prior had the ſupreme government, as fully as an abbot in his abby, and was elected by the convent; ſuch were the cathedral priors, and moſt of the Auguſtine order.

Secondly, Where the priory was a cell, ſubordinate to ſome abby, and the prior was nominated and diſplaced at the diſcretion of the abbot: and in theſe cells, there was a conſiderable difference; ſome being ſo entirely ſubjected to their reſpective abbies, that they might ſend them what officers they thought proper, and encreaſe, or decreaſe, their number of monks at pleaſure; whilſt others conſiſted of a certain ſtated number of monks, who had a prior ſent them from the abby, to whom they paid an annual ſtipend, as an acknowledgement of their ſubordination; but acted, in other matters, as an independent body, and had the reſt of their revenues for their own uſe. Theſe priories, or cells, were always of the ſame order as the abbies on which they depended; though ſometimes of a different ſex; it being cuſtomary, after the Conqueſt, for the great abbies to build nunneries in ſome of their manors, which were cells, or priories, to them, and ſubject to their viſitation (*a*).

Some of thoſe houſes, which were originally priories, were turned into abbies; as Wymondham in Norfolk, and Walden in Eſſex: but this was looked upon as an injury to the patron, and ſometimes forbidden by the founder; as at Cartmele in Lancaſhire. One inſtance likewiſe occurs, of an abby being degraded to a priory, becauſe the revenues were not ſufficient to ſupport the ſtate and dignity of an abbot: this was Cumbwell in Kent.

Priories alien were cells to foreign monaſteries; for, when manors or tithes were given to foreign houſes, they, in order to have faithful ſtewards on the ſpot to collect their revenues, built convenient houſes, for the reception of a ſmall convent, and peopled them with priors, and ſuch a number of monks as they thought proper; this, at the ſame time, encreaſed their order. There was the ſame difference in theſe cells, as between the former; ſome of them being conventual, had the liberty of chooſing their own priors, and of receiving their revenues, of which, at firſt, they remitted to the foreign houſe what was more than neceſſary for their immediate ſubſiſtence: this was afterwards changed into a certain regular annuity, called Apportus; which being paid, the ſurplus remained to the convent.

(*a*) To be ſent to a monaſtery was, in many caſes, the puniſhment of an offending ſecular prieſt; as Can. 61 and 71, of A. D. 740, in Johnſon's Collect. of Canons. To be ſent to a cell was, in ſome caſes, the puniſhment of an offending monk. Mat. Paris, p. 1046. Reyner's Append. p. 125, 160. And that ſome of them were there obliged to hard labour, appears from the regiſter of John Romane, archbiſhop of York, anno primo pontif. "Pœnitentia injuncta monacho de Novoburgo qui ſub religioſo habitu diutius vagus in ſæculo extitit: moretur "apud hod cellam, ubi agriculturæ vacet, et caudam aratri teneat loco cujuſdem mercenarii ſoliti hujuſmodi officio "deputari; quarta ſexta et feria, pane, et veteſia, et leguminibus tantum modo ſit contentus; tres diſciplinas in "hebdomada recipiat a canonico præſidente ibidem." And when a monk was refractory, or quarrelſome in his own houſe, he was ſent to another to be puniſhed; as Reyner's Append. p. 125, 160. "In obediens monachus "de Tanton miſſus et prioratum St. Germani in Cornubia ad incarcerandum expœnitandum. Reg. Rad. de "Salopia Epiſc. Bath et Wellens, ſub A. D. 1351." *Tanner.*

The others were immediately dependent on the foreign houſe, who received their income, allowing them ſuch portion for their maintenance as they thought proper: priors were appointed over them from abroad, and the monks were exchanged at pleaſure. As theſe monaſteries conſiſted chiefly of foreigners, who might give intelligence to our enemies, and who beſides greatly impoveriſhed the kingdom, by draining it continually of conſiderable ſums, their eſtates were generally ſeized on the breaking out of a war with France, and reſtored on the return of peace; and at length moſt of them were, by act of parliament, given to the king; which was a kind of prelude to the general Diſſolution.

PRECEPTORIES were a kind of cells to the principal houſes of Knights Templars in London, under the government of an officer, created by the grand-maſter, one of the "Preceptores Templi." Their buſineſs was to take care of the lands and rents, in that place and neighbourhood.

COMMANDERIES were, under another name, the ſame to the Knights Hoſpitalars, as preceptories were to the Templars. The chief officer was called a Commander.

HOSPITALS were houſes of relief for poor and impotent perſons (*a*); and were incorporated by royal patents, and made capable of gifts and grants in ſucceſſion.

FRIARIES were erected for the habitation of friars, who, being mendicants, and, by their rules, incapable of holding any property, they were rarely endowed (*b*); yet moſt of their houſes had ſome ſhops and gardens belonging to them. Many of theſe friaries were large and ſtately buildings, and had noble churches, in which many great perſons choſe to be buried (*c*).

FOR the inferior, religious foundations, ſuch as hermitages, chauntries, and free chapels, ſee the note (*d*).

(*a*) Beſides the poor and impotent, there generally were in theſe hoſpitals two or three religious; one to be maſter, or prior, and one or two to be chaplains and confeſſors: and theſe obſerved the rule of St. Auſtin, and probably ſubjected the poor and impotent to ſome religious reſtraints, as well as to the local ſtatutes. Hoſpitals were originally deſigned for the relief and entertainment of travellers upon the road, and particularly of pilgrims, and therefore were generally built upon the road ſide; but of later years they have been always founded for fixed inhabitants. *Tanner.*

(*b*) The Dominicans of King's Langley were endowed with 122*l. per annum.*

(*c*) Theſe houſes received conſiderable benefits from the burials of great perſonages within their churches. The friars did not fail to promote it on all occaſions; and, if they could not get the whole body, would at leaſt procure a limb, or part. Thomas of Walſingham, ſpeaking of the burial of Queen Eleanor's heart, in the church of the Friars Minors in London, thus expreſſes himſelf: "Qui (meaning the friars) ſicuti & cuncti fratres reliquorum "ordinum, ali quod de corporibus quorumcunque potentium morientium ſibimet vindicabant, more canum "cadaveribus aſſiſtentium, ubi quiſque ſuam particulam avide conſummendam expectat."

(*d*) Hermitages were religious cells, erected in private and ſolitary places, for ſingle perſons, or communities; many times endowed, and ſometimes annexed to larger religious houſes. Vide Kennet's Gloſſary in voce Hermitorium. Mon. Ang. vol. ii. p. 339. Thoreſby's Leeds, p. 91. The hermits of cells not endowed, are ſpoken of as common beggars, in pat. 13 Ed. III. p. 1, m. 8, et p. 2, m. 22.——Chauntries were endowments of lands, or other revenues, for the maintenance of one or more prieſts, to ſay daily maſs for the ſoul of the founder, and his relations and benefactors; ſometimes at a particular altar, and oftentimes in little chapels, added to cathedral and parochial churches, for that purpoſe. See Godolph. Repert. p. 329. Fuller, book vi. p. 350. Weaver, p. 733.——Free chapels were places of religious worſhip, exempt from all juriſdiction of the ordinary;

It is to be obſerved, that different founders are frequently aſſigned by the monaſtic writers, to the ſame houſe; a firſt, ſecond, third, and even a ſixth founder, ſometimes occuring: the fact is, they beſtowed that appellation not only on the firſt endower, to whom only it properly belonged, but alſo gave it to every great benefactor, who either reſtored the ancient foundation, after it had been ruined by fire, or any other calamity, or made any conſiderable addition to it (*a*). The ſucceſſor of the founders, and patrons, or chief lords of the fee (*b*), are likewiſe many times ſtyled founders (*c*).

In every abby, the chief officer was the abbot, or abbeſs (*d*); who preſided in great pomp, was generally called the Lord Abbot, or Lady Abbeſs, and had a kitchen, and other offices, diſtinct from the common ones of the ſociety. The next in rank and authority, in every abby, was the Prior (*e*); under whom was the Sub-prior; and, in great abbies, a third, fourth, and even a fifth prior. Theſe, as well as all the other obedentarii, were removable at the will of the abbot. In every priory, the prior was the ſupreme head; under whom was the ſub-prior, who aſſiſted him when preſent, and ruled the houſe in his abſence. The priors had the ſame power in their priories, as the abbots and abbeſſes in their abbies; but lived in a leſs expenſive and pompous manner: though, in ſome of the greater houſes, they were ſtiled the Lord Prior, and Lady Prioreſs.

The following were the ſix principal officers in the monaſtery of Croyland, and perhaps in moſt others. Firſt, Magiſter Operis, or Maſter of the Fabric; who probably had the care of the buildings of and belonging to the monaſtery, and whoſe buſineſs it was to ſurvey and keep them in repair.

Eleemosynarus, or the Almoner; who ſuperintended the alms of the houſe, which were every day diſtributed to the poor at the gate of the monaſtery, divided the alms upon the founder's day, and at other obits and anniverſaries; and, in ſome places, had the care of the choriſters.

ſave only that the incumbents were generally conſtituted by the biſhop, and inducted by the archdeacon of the place. Moſt of theſe chapels were built upon the manors and ancient demeſnes of the crown, whilſt in the king's hands, for the uſe of himſelf and retinue, when he came to reſide there; as Kennet's Gloſſary, in voce Demeſne; and in eaſe of appropriations, p. 6. And when the crown parted with thoſe eſtates, the chapels went along with them, and retained their firſt freedom; but ſome lords having had free chapels in manors that does not appear to have been ancient demeſne of the crown, ſuch are thought to have been built and privileged by grants of the crown. See Biſhop Gibſon's Codex, p. 237. Yet Mr. Newcourt ſaith, that, A. D. 1321, Biſhop Fitzjames converted a decayed chauntry, at Rainham in Eſſex, with the conſent of the patron, into a free chapel; to be held with all its rights, and governed by an honeſt and literate layman; without mentioning any grant from the crown for it. See his Repert. vol. ii. p. 482.

(*a*) Sir John Biconill was admitted one of the founders of the Franciſcan friars at Dorcheſter, for having built mills near to and for the benefit of the convent. *As Stevens, vol. i. p. 93.*

(*b*) When the founder's family was extinct, the lord of the fee became patron of courſe.
As Kennet's Gloſſary, ſub tit. Advowſon of Religious Houſes.

(*c*) In Leland Collect. we often meet with "Fundator originalis et fundator modernus;" but the laſt was then the patron only.

(*d*) From Abba. Pater, quia pater monachorum. *Godolph. Repert.*——They were generally wrote, "Ex "divina permiſſione abbas." *Decem Script. col. 2059 and 2157.*

(*e*) Every prior was to be in prieſts orders, by decree of the council at London, A. D. 1126.
Wilkins's Councils, vol. i. p. 408.

PITANTIARIUS, who had the diſtribution of the pietancies; which were allowances upon particular occaſions, over and above the common proviſions.

SACRISTA, or Sexton, to whoſe care were committed the veſſels, books, and veſtments, belonging to the church; and who looked after, and accounted for, the oblations at the great altar, and other altars or images in the church; and ſuch legacies as were given either to the fabric, or for utenſils: he likewiſe provided bread and wine for the ſacrament, and took care of burying the dead.

CAMERARIUS, or the Chamberlain, had the management of the dormitory, provided the bedding for the monks, with razors and towels for ſhaving them; likewiſe, part, if not all their cloathing.

CELLERARIUS, or the Cellarer; whoſe office it was to provide all ſorts of proviſions and liquors conſumed in the convent; as alſo firing and kitchen utenſils.

BESIDES theſe, there were Theſaurarius, or the Burſar; who received all the common rents and revenues of the monaſtery, and paid all the common expences.

PRECENTOR, or Chaunter; who had the chief direction of the choir ſervice; and not only preſided over the ſinging men and choriſters, but provided them with books, paid their ſalaries, and repaired the organs: he had alſo the cuſtody of the ſeal, kept the Liber Diurnalis, or Chapter Book, and provided parchment and ink for the writers, and colours for the limners, employed in writing and illuminating books for the library.

HOSTILARIUS, or Hoſpitilarius; whoſe buſineſs it was to manage the entertainment of ſtrangers, and to provide them with neceſſaries.

INFIRMARIUS, who had the care of the infirmary, and of the ſick monks carried there, for whom he was to provide phyſic and other neceſſaries; and to waſh and prepare for burial the bodies of the dead: he was likewiſe to ſhave all the monks in the convent.

REFECTIONARIUS, who looked after the refectory, and provided table-cloths, napkins, glaſſes, diſhes, plates, ſpoons, and other requiſites, and even ſervants to wait at table: he had the cuſtody of the cups, ſalts, ewers, and all the ſilver utenſils whatſoever belonging to the houſe, except the church plate (*a*).

THERE was likewiſe Coquinarius, or the Cook; Gardinarius, or the Gardener; and Portorius, or the Porter; et in coenobiis quæ jus archidiaconale in prædiis et eccleſiis ſuis obtinuerant, erat monachus qui archidiaconi titulo et munere inſignitus eſt (*b*).

EVERY great abby had a room, called the Scriptorium; where ſeveral ſcribes were employed in tranſcribing books for the library. They ſometimes, indeed, wrote the ledger-books of the houſe, the miſſals, and other books uſed in divine

(*a*) In nunneries there was a correſpondence of all theſe offices and officers, abbeſs, prioreſs, ſub-prioreſs, ſacriſtan or ſexten treſorer, chamberers, chapellan, &c. *Willis's Abbies, vol. ii. Append. p.* 1, 8, 20.

(*b*) The Worceſter hiſtorian, in Ang. Sacr. p. 547. *See alſo Mon. Ang. vol. ii. p.* 378.

ſervice; but were chiefly employed on other works, ſuch as the fathers, claſſics, or hiſtory: the monks, in general, were ſo zealous for this work, that they often procured gifts of lands and churches, to be ſolely appropriated to the carrying of it on. Beſides this, they had alſo particular perſons appointed to take notice of and record the principal events which happened in the kingdom; which, at the end of the year, were digeſted and formed into annals.

THE foregoing accounts of the riſe and progreſs of monaſtic foundations, with the particular deſcription of the ſeveral orders, having rather ſtretched beyond the intended limits, I ſhall but briefly treat of the circumſtances attending the general diſſolution; and that the rather, as they are minutely mentioned in the general hiſtories of England, and the memoirs of thoſe times.

ANNO 1534, King Henry, having thrown off the papal yoke, and procured himſelf to be acknowledged by parliament, the ſupreme head of the Engliſh church, the next year ſet on foot a general viſitation of the religious houſes; undoubtedly, in order to find a pretence for their ſuppreſſion. It was begun in October, 1535, by one Doctor Leighton, and others; many of their letters are extant; two of them, never before printed, are in the notes (*a*). Burnet ſays, "The viſitors went over England, and found, in many places, monſtrous diſorders; "the ſin of Sodom was found in many houſes; great factions and barbarous cru- "elties were in others; and in ſome were found tools for coining: the report "contained many abominable things, that are not fit to be mentioned; ſome of

(*a*) Pleaſith it your wurſhip to underſtand that yeſternight we came from Glaſtonbury to Briſtow. I here ſend you for relicks two flowers, wrapped up in black ſarcenet, that on Chriſtmas even (hora ipſa qua natus Chriſtus fuerat) will ſpring and burgen, and bear flowers. Ye ſhall alſo receive a bag of relicks, wherein ye ſhall ſee ſtrange things; as God's Coat, Our Lady's Smock, part of God's Supper in Cœna Domini; pars petræ ſuper quam natus erat Jeſus in Bethlehem; belike Bethlehem affords plenty of ſtone. Theſe are all of Maiden Bradley; whercof is a holy father priour, who hath but ſix children, and but one daughter married yet of the goods of the monaſtery, but truſting ſhortlie to marrie the reſt: his ſons be tall men, waiting upon him. He thanks God he never meddled with married women; but all with maidens, faireſt that could be gotten, and always married them right well. The Pope, conſidering his fragilitie, gave him his licence to keep a whore; and he has good writing, ſub plumbo, to diſcharge his conſcience, and to chuſe Mr. Underhill to be his gheſtly father, and he to give him plenam remiſſionem. I ſend you alſo Our Lady's Girdle of Bruton, red ſilke, a ſolemn relick, ſent to women in travail; Mary Magdalen's Girdle, which Matilda, the empreſs founder of Fairley, gave with them, as ſayeth the holy father of Fairley.——I have croſſes of ſilver and gold, ſir, which I ſend you not now; becauſe I have more to be delivered this night, by the priour of Maiden Bradley. There is nothing notable; the bretheren be kept ſo ſtreight, that they cannot offend; but fain they would if they might, as they confeſs, and ſuch fault is not in them.

From St. Auſtin's without Briſtol. R. LAYTON.

My ſingular good lord, &c. As touching the abbot of Bury, nothing ſuſpect as touching his living; but it was detected he lay much forth at Granges, and ſpent much money in playing at cards and dice.—It is confeſſed and proved, that there was here ſuch frequence of women, comyn and reſortyn, as to no place more.——Among the relicks are found the coles St. Laurence was roſted withal; the paring of St. Edmund's nails; St. Thomas of Canterbury's penkniſe and books; and divers ſculls for the head-ach; pieces of the Holy Croſs, able to make a whole croſs: other relicks, for rain, and for avoiding the weeds growing in corn, &c. From Bury St. Edmond's,

Your ſervant bounden, JOSEPH AP RICE.

Theſe were copied from the original letters, written by R. Layton, and others, viſitors of the religious houſes, to Lord Cromwell, about the year 1537, preſerved among Mr. Dodſworth's M. S. collections, in the Bodley Library.

" them were printed, but the greateſt part is loſt: only a report of 144 houſes is " yet extant." Five houſes made a voluntary ſurrender this year.

In 1536, an act was paſſed, ſuppreſſing all thoſe monaſteries whoſe revenues were under 200*l. per annum.* This act ſets forth the great diſorders of thoſe houſes, and the many unſucceſsful attempts that had been made for their reformation. The religious who belonged to them, were directed to be put into the greater houſes, where better diſcipline was obſerved, and their eſtates and goods were given to the king; and, by another act, a new court was erected, entitled the Court of the Augmentations of the King's Revenue; which was to take care that the king was not defrauded of them. It is to be noted, that the revenues of moſt of theſe houſes, though valued at only 200*l. per annum,* greatly exceeded that ſum, many of them being worth ſeveral thouſands: this was owing to the monks never having raiſed their ancient rents; chuſing rather to make their tenants pay a conſiderable fine, at the renewal of their leaſes; and, according to theſe ancient rents, they were eſtimated. Viſitors were now appointed to ſurvey the leſſer monaſteries: " They were," ſays Burnet, " required to carry along with them " the concurrence of the gentry near them, and to examine the eſtate of the " revenues and goods, and take inventories of them; and to take their ſeals into " their keeping: they were to try how many of the religious would take capa- " cities, and return to a ſecular courſe of life; and theſe were to be ſent to the " archbiſhop of Canterbury, or the Lord Chancellor for them; and an allowance " was to be given them for their journey: but thoſe who intended to continue in " that ſtate, were to be ſent to ſome of the great monaſteries that lay next. A " penſion was alſo to be aſſigned to the abbot or prior during life; and of all this " they were to make their report by Michaelmas: and they were particularly to " examine what leaſes had been made all laſt year. The abbots hearing of what " was coming on them, had been raiſing all the money they could; and ſo it was " intended to recover what was made away by ill bargains. There were great " complaints made of the proceedings of the viſitors, of their violences and " briberies; and perhaps not without reaſon. Ten thouſand of the religious " were ſet to ſeek for their livings, with forty ſhillings and a gown a man. Their " goods and plate were eſtimated at an hundred thouſand pounds; and the valued " rents of their houſes, was thirty-two thouſand; but was really above ten times " ſo much. The churches and cloiſters were in moſt places pulled down, and the " materials ſold." This gave a general diſcontent, and cauſed ſeveral unſucceſsful inſurrections.

Henry having taſted the ſweets ariſing from the ſuppreſſion of the leſſer monaſteries, now reſolved to poſſeſs himſelf of the revenues of the great ones; and accordingly, the next year, a freſh viſitation was appointed; when the viſitors were directed to enquire into the lives of the monks, how they ſtood affected towards the Pope, and whether they acknowledged and promoted the king's ſupremacy. They were likewiſe directed to enquire whether they made uſe of

any impoſtures, or pretended miraculous images, to work upon the ſuperſtition of the credulous people; and, above all, underhand to endeavour, both by promiſes and threats, to influence them to ſurrender their houſes to the king: which many of them, either conſcious of their evil lives, having been engaged in the late inſurrections, or attracted by the offer of a conſiderable penſion, accordingly did; when they and their monks had penſions aſſigned them, proportionable to the value of the houſe. Some abbots, relying on their innocence and irreproachable conduct, were more reſolute, and abſolutely refuſed; againſt theſe, charges of high treaſon were inſtituted, on various pretences, and ſeveral of them were unjuſtly executed. Burnet is very particular in theſe tranſactions; ſee his account in the notes (*a*). In 1539, the ſurrender of all monaſteries was confirmed by act of parliament; and, in that year, the total diſſolution was completed.

THIS meaſure, though only fully accompliſhed by Henry the Eighth, had, from time to time, been attempted, and even partially put in execution, by many of our biſhops, kings, and even ſome of the popes. From the days of Edgar to

(*a*) A new viſitation was appointed, to enquire into the converſation of the monks, to examine how they ſtood affected to the Pope, and how they promoted the king's ſupremacy: they were likewiſe ordered to examine what impoſtures might be among them, either in images or relics; by which the ſuperſtition of the credulous people was wrought on. Some few houſes, of greater value, were prevailed with, the former year, to ſurrender to the king. Many houſes that had not been diſſolved, though they were within the former act, were now ſuppreſſed; and many of the greater abbots were wrought on to ſurrender by ſeveral motives. Some had been faulty during the rebellion, and ſo, to prevent a ſtorm, offered a reſignation; others liked the reformation, and did it on that account: ſome were found guilty of great diſorders in their lives, and to prevent a ſhameful diſcovery, offered their houſes to the king: and others had made ſuch waſtes and dilapidations, that, having taken care of themſelves, they were leſs concerned for others. At St. Alban's, the rents were let ſo low, that the abbot could not maintain the charge of the abby. At Battel, the whole furniture of the houſe and chapel was not above 100*l.* in value, and their plate was not 300*l.* In ſome houſes, there was ſcarce any plate or furniture left. Many abbots and monks were glad to accept of a penſion for life; and that was proportioned to the value of their houſe, and to their innocence. The abbots of St. Alban's and Tewkſbury had 400 marks a-year. The abbot of St. Edmund's Bury was more innocent and more reſolute: the viſitors wrote that they found no ſcandals in that houſe: but at laſt he was prevailed with, by a penſion of 500 marks, to reſign. The inferior governors had ſome 30, 20, or 10*l.* penſions; and the monks had generally ſix pounds, or eight marks a piece. If any abbot died, the new abbot (they being choſen as the biſhops were upon a congé d'elire, and a miſſive letter) was named for that purpoſe, only to reſign the houſe; and all were made to hope for advancement, that ſhould give good example to others, by a quick and chearful ſurrender: by theſe means, 121 of thoſe houſes were this year reſigned to the king. In moſt houſes, the viſitor made the monks ſign a confeſſion of their former vices and diſorders, of which there is only one original extant, that eſcaped the general raſure of all ſuch papers in Queen Mary's time; in which they acknowledged, in a long narrative, "their former idleneſs, gluttony and ſenſuality; for which the pit of hell "was ready to ſwallow them up: others acknowledged, that the manner of their former pretended religion con-"ſiſted in ſome dumb ceremonies, by which they were blindly led, having no true knowledge of God's laws; but "that they had procured exemption from their dioceſans, and had ſubjected themſelves wholly to a foreign power, "that took no care to reform their abuſes; and therefore, ſince the moſt perfect way of life was revealed by Chriſt "and his apoſtles, and that it was fit they ſhould be governed by the king their ſupreme head, they reſigned to "him." Of this ſort, I have ſeen ſix. Some reſigned in hopes that the king would found them of new; theſe favoured the reformation, and intended to convert their houſes to better uſes; for preaching, ſtudy, and prayer: and Latimer preſſed Cromwell earneſtly, that two or three houſes might be reſerved for ſuch purpoſes in every county. But it was reſolved to ſuppreſs all; and therefore, neither could the interceſſions of the gentry of Oxfordſhire, nor the viſitors, preſerve the nunnery of Godſtow; though they found great ſtrictneſs of life in it, and it was the common place of the education of young women of quality in that county. The common preamble to

that prince, ſeveral of the inſtances have already been mentioned in this work; but to bring them under one point of view, ſee the note (*a*).

THE chief reaſons urged in its defence were, that the monks, notwithſtanding their ſubſcriptions, ſtill retained their attachment to the pope; and would, on all occaſions, have excited troubles in the kingdom againſt an excommunicated king. Their luxurious and debauched manner of living (*b*), their pretended miracles and impoſtures (*c*), ſhocking accounts of which were undoubtedly

moſt ſurrenders was, "That upon full deliberation, and of their own proper motion for juſt and reaſonable cauſes "moving their conſciences, they did freely give up their houſes to the king." Some ſurrendered, without any preamble, to the viſitors, as feoſees, in truſt for the king. In ſhort, they went on at ſuch a rate, that 159 reſignations were obtained before the parliament met; and of theſe the originals of 154 are yet extant. Some thought that theſe reſignations could not be valid, ſince the incumbents had not the property, but only the truſt for life of thoſe houſes; but the parliament did afterwards declare them good in law. It was alſo ſaid, that they, being of the nature of corporations, all deeds under their ſeals were valid; and that at leaſt by their reſignation and quitting their houſes, they forfeited them to the king: but this was thought to ſubſiſt rather on a nicety in law, than natural equity.

(*a*) As to the diſſolution of religious foundations, we may obſerve, that King Edgar, Archbiſhop Dunſtan, and the biſhops Ethelwold and Oſwald, in the tenth century, ejected ſeculars, and put in regulars, as hath been before mentioned.——Richard de Belmeis, by the authority of Pope Eugenius the Third, and King Stephen, turned a ſecular college into an abby of Auguſtine canons, at Lilleſhall: and Pope Alexander the Third, and King Henry the Second, turned the ſecular canons out of Waltham, and placed regulars there in their ſtead: and the order of Templars was ſuppreſſed by Pope Clement the Fifth.——A diſſolution of the alien priories was brought about in the reign of Henry the Fifth, with the concurrence of ſeveral biſhops, who purchaſed and procured their revenues, for the endowment of divers colleges by them founded: among theſe were William of Wickham, biſhop of Winchеſter, and Archbiſhop Chichley.——King Henry the Sixth founded the college of Eaton, and King's College, Cambridge, about the year 1441, and endowed them chiefly with alien priories: and William Wainfleet, biſhop of Winchеſter, procured revenues of the priory of Sile, or Atſile, in Suſſex, and the priory of Shelburne, in Hampſhire, (though the founder of the latter had carefully forbidden ſuch alteration) for the endowment of his foundation of Magdalene College, Oxford.——Cardinal Wolſey alſo obtained the bull of Pope Clement the Seventh, for the ſuppreſſion of ſeveral religious houſes, for the founding his colleges at Oxford and Ipſwich.——Beſides theſe, there are many more inſtances, too numerous to inſert.

(*b*) The luxurious manner of living of the monks, ſo early as the reign of Henry the Second, may be gathered from the following ſtories, related of thoſe of Canterbury and Winchеſter, by Giraldus Cambrenſis. "Their table," ſays he, ſpeaking of the firſt, "conſiſted regularly of ſixteen covers, or more, of the moſt coſtly dainties, dreſſed "with the moſt exquiſite cookery, to provoke the appetite, and pleaſe the taſte: they had an exceſſive abundance "of wine, particularly claret; of mulberry wine, of mead, and of other ſtrong liquors; the variety of which was "ſo great in theſe repaſts, that no place could be found for ale, though the beſt was made in England, and par-"ticularly in Kent." And of the prior and monks of St. Swithin at Winchеſter, he ſays, "They threw themſelves "proſtrate at the feet of King Henry the Second, and with many tears complained to him, that the biſhop of that "dioceſe, to whom they were ſubject as their abbot, had withdrawn from them three of the uſual number of "their diſhes: Henry enquired of them, how many there ſtill remained; and being informed they had ten, he "ſaid, that he himſelf was contented with three, and imprecated a curſe on the biſhop, if he did not reduce them "to that number."

(*c*) They (the viſitors) diſcovered many impoſtures about relicks and wonderful images, to which pilgrimages had been wont to be made. At Reading they had an angel's wing, which brought over the ſpear's point that pierced our Saviour's ſide; as many pieces of the croſs were found, as joined together would have made a big croſs. The rood of grace, at Boxley in Kent, had been much eſteemed, and drawn many pilgrims to it: it was obſerved to bow, and rowl its eyes; and look at times well pleaſed, or angry; which the credulous multitude imputed to a Divine power: but all this was diſcovered to be a cheat, and it was brought up to St. Paul's croſs, and all the ſprings were openly ſhewed that governed its ſeveral motions. At Hales in Glouceſterſhire, the blood of Chriſt was ſhewed in a phial; and it was believed that none could ſee it who were in mortal ſin: and ſo, after good preſents were made, the deluded pilgrims went away well ſatisfied, if they had ſeen it. This was the blood of a

tranſmitted by the viſitors; though one may venture to believe, they were not ſoftened in their relation: but above all, the damage ſuſtained by the nation, in the loſs of ſo many hands, who might have made uſeful manufacturers and huſbandmen, as well as the great check to population, by the number of men and women bound by their vows to celibacy. Cogent as theſe reaſons were, probably they would not have brought about this great event, but for that delicious incentive, their goods and manors, which the king's neceſſities, as well as his avarice, made him ſo extremely deſirous to ſeize.

ALTHOUGH the general ſuppreſſion of religious houſes, even conſidered in a political light only, was of a vaſt national benefit, yet it muſt be allowed, that at the time they flouriſhed, they were not entirely uſeleſs. Monaſteries were then the repoſitories, as well as ſeminaries of learning; many valuable books, and national records, as well as private evidences, having been preſerved in their libraries; the only places wherein they could have been ſafely lodged, in thoſe turbulent times: many of them, which had eſcaped the ravages of the Danes, were deſtroyed, with more than Gothic barbarity, at their Diſſolution (*a*).

EVERY abby had at leaſt one perſon, whoſe office it was to inſtruct youth; and to the monks, the hiſtorians of this country are chiefly beholden for the knowledge they have of former national events. The arts of painting, architecture, and printing, were alſo ſucceſsfully cultivated within their walls.

RELIGIOUS houſes were likewiſe the hoſpitals for the ſick and poor, many of both being daily relieved by them: they alſo afforded lodging and entertainment to travellers, at a time when there were no inns.

duck, renewed every week, put in a phial, very thick of one ſide, as thin on the other; and either ſide turned towards the pilgrim, as the prieſts were ſatisfied with their oblations. Several other ſuch like impoſtures were diſcovered, which contributed much to the undeceiving of the people. *Burnet's Abridg. Hiſt. Refor.*

(*a*) The barbarous ravages committed on the libraries of the monks, are thus ſet forth and lamented by John Bale, in his Declaration upon Leland's Journal, anno 1549. "Covetouſneſs," ſaith he, "was at that time ſo "buſy about private commodity, that public wealth in that moſt neceſſary, and of reſpect, was not any where "regarded. A number of them, which purchaſed thoſe ſuperſtitious manſions, reſerved of thoſe library books, "ſome to ſerve their jakes, ſome to ſcour the candleſticks, and ſome to rub their boots; ſome they ſold to the "grocers, and ſoap-ſeller; and ſome they ſent over ſea, to the book-binders, not in ſmall numbers; but, at "times, whole ſhips full: yea, the univerſities of this realm are not all clear in this deteſtable fact. But curſed "is that belly, which ſeeketh to be fed with ſo ungodly gains, and ſo deeply ſhameth his natural country. I "know (ſays he) a merchantman (which ſhall at this time be nameleſs) that bought the contents of two noble "libraries for forty ſhillings price: a ſhame it is to be ſpoken! This ſtuff hath he occupied inſtead of grey paper, "by the ſpace of more than theſe ten years, and yet he hath ſtore enough for as many years to come: a prodigious "example is this, and to be abhorred by all men, which loved their nation as they ſhould do. Yea, what may "bring our realm to more ſhame and rebuke, than to have it noiſed abroad, that we are deſpiſers of learning. I "ſhall judge this to be true, and utter it with heavineſs, that neither the Britons, under the Romans and Saxons, "nor yet the Engliſh people, under the Danes and Normans, had ever ſuch damage of their learned monuments, "as we have ſeen in our time. Our poſterity may well curſe this wicked fact of our age; this unreaſonable ſpoil "of England's moſt noble antiquities."

THE nobility and gentry, who were heirs to their founders, in them could provide for a certain number of ancient and faithful ſervants; by procuring them corodies, or ſtated allowances of meat, drink, and cloaths. It was alſo an aſylum or retreat for aged, indigent perſons, of good family.

THE places near the ſite of theſe abbies were conſiderably benefited, both by the concourſe of people reſorting to them, by fairs procured for them, and by their exemption from the foreſt laws; add to which, the monaſtic eſtates were generally let at very eaſy rents, the fines given at renewals included. To conclude, their ſtately buildings, and magnificent churches, were ſtriking ornaments to the country; the furious zeal with which theſe were demoliſhed, their fine carvings deſtroyed, and their beautiful painted windows broken, would almoſt tempt one to imagine, that the perſons who directed theſe depredations, were actuated with an enmity to the fine arts, inſtead of a hatred to the Popiſh ſuperſtition.

ARCHITECTURE.

ARCHITECTURE.

MOST of the writers who mention our ancient buildings, particularly the religious ones, notwithſtanding the ſtriking difference in the ſtyles of their conſtruction, claſs them all under the common denomination of Gothic: a general appellation by them applied to all buildings not exactly conformable to ſome one of the five orders of architecture. Our modern antiquaries more accurately divide them into Saxon, Norman, and Saracenic; or that ſpecies vulgarly, though improperly, called Gothic.

AN opinion has long prevailed, chiefly countenanced by Mr. Somner (*a*), that the Saxon churches were moſtly built with timber; and that the few they had of ſtone, conſiſted only of upright walls, without pillars or arches; the conſtruction of which, it is pretended, they were intirely ignorant of. Mr. Somner ſeems to have founded his opinion on the authority of Stowe, and a diſputable interpretation of ſome words in King Edgar's charter (*b*); "Meaning no more, as I apprehend," ſays Mr. Bentham, in his Curious Remarks on Saxon Churches, "than that the "churches and monaſteries were in general ſo much decayed, that the roofs were "uncovered, or bare to the timber; and the beams rotted by neglect, and "overgrown with moſs." It is true, that Bede, and others, ſpeak of churches built with timber; but theſe appear to have been only temporary erections, haſtily

(*a*) Indeed, it is to be obſerved, that, before the Roman Advent, moſt of our monaſteries and church-buildings were all of wood: ("All the monaſteries of my realm," ſaith King Edgar, in his charter to the abby of Malmſbury, dated in the year of Chriſt 974, "to the ſight are nothing but worm-eaten and rotten timber and boards:") and that, upon the Norman Conqueſt, ſuch timber fabricks grew out of uſe, and gave place to ſtone buildings, raiſed upon arches; a form of ſtructure introduced by that nation, furniſhed with ſtone from Caen in Normandy. "In "the year 1087," (Stowe's words of the cathedral of London) "this church of St. Paul was burnt with fire, and "therewith moſt part of the city. Mauricius, then biſhop, began therefore the new foundation of a new church "of St. Paul; a work that men of that time judged would never have been finiſhed, it was then ſo wonderful for "length and breadth: as alſo the ſame was builded upon arches, or vaults of ſtone, for defence of fire, which was "a manner of work before that time unknown to the people of this nation, and then brought from the French, and "the ſtone was fetched from Caen in Normandy."——"St. Mary Bow Church, in London, being built much "about the ſame time and manner, that is, on arches of ſtone, was therefore called (ſaith the ſame author) New "Mary Church, or St. Mary le Bow; as Stratford Bridge, being the firſt builded with arches of ſtone, was "therefore called Stratford le Bow." This doubtleſs is that new kind of architecture the continuer of Bede (whoſe words Malmſbury hath taken up) intends, when, ſpeaking of the Normans income, he ſaith, "You may obſerve "every where, in villages churches, and in cities and villages monaſteries, erected with a new kind of archi-"tecture."——And again, ſpeaking doubtfully of the age of the eaſtern part of the choir of Canterbury, he adds, "I dare conſtantly and confidently deny it to be elder than the Norman Conqueſt; becauſe of the building it upon "arches; a form of architecture, though in uſe with and among the Romans long before, yet, after their departure, "not uſed here in England, till the Normans brought it over with them from France." *Somner's Antiq. Canterbury.*

(*b*) "Quæ velut muſcivis ſcindulis carioſiſque tabulis, tigno tenus viſibiliter diruta."

run up for the preſent exigency (*a*): and for the other poſition, that the Saxons had neither arches nor pillars in their buildings, it is not only contradicted by the teſtimony of ſeveral cotemporary or very ancient writers, who expreſſly mention them both, but alſo by the remains of ſome edifices univerſally allowed to be of Saxon workmanſhip; one of them the ancient conventual church at Ely.

THE writers here alluded to, are Alcuin, an eccleſiaſtic, who lived in the eighth century; and in a poem, entitled, De Pontificibus et Eccleſiæ Ebor, publiſhed by Dr. Gale, A. D. 1691; deſcribes the church of St. Peter at York; which he himſelf, in conjunction with Eanbald, had aſſiſted Archbiſhop Albert to rebuild. In this poem he particularizes, by name, both columns and arches, as may be ſeen in note (*b*).

THE author of the deſcription of the abby of Ramſay in Huntingdonſhire, which was founded A. D. 974, by Ailwood, ſtyled Alderman of all England, aſſiſted therein by Oſwald, biſhop of Worceſter; in that account names both arches and columns, as is ſhewn in note (*c*).

RICHARD PRIOR, of Hexam, who flouriſhed about the year 1180, and left a deſcription of that church, part of which was ſtanding in his time, though built by Wilfrid, anno 674; he likewiſe ſpeaks of arches, and columns with their capitals richly ornamented: ſee note (*d*).

(*a*) "Baptizatus eſt (Sc. Rex Edwinus, A D. 627,) autem Eboraci in die Sancto Paſchæ.——In eccleſia St. Petri "apoſtoli quam ipſe de ligno citato opere erexit." *Bedae Hiſt. Eccl. lib. ii. c.* 14.————Curavit majorem ipſo "in loco et auguſtiorem de lapide fabricare baſilicam, in cujus medio ipſum quod prius fecerat oratorium "includeretur." *Ibid.*

(*b*) "Aſt nova baſilicæ miræ ſtructura diebus
"Præſulis hujus erat jam cæpta, peracta, ſacrata.
"Hæc nimis alta domus ſolidis, ſuffulta columnis,
"Suppoſita quæ ſtant curvatis arcubus, intus
"Emicat egregiis laquearibus atque feneſtris,
"Pulchraque porticibus fulget circumdata multis,
"Plurima diverſis retinens ſolaria teſtis,
"Quæ triginta tenet variis ornatibus aras
"Hoc duo diſcipuli templum, Doctore jubente,
"Ædificarunt Eanbaldus et Alcuinus, ambo
"Concordes operi devota mente ſtudentes
"Hoc tamen ipſe pater ſocio cum Præſule templum,
"Ante die decima quam clauderet, ultima vitæ
"Lumina præſentis, Sophiæ ſacraverat almæ."

(*c*) "Duce quoque turres ipſis tectorum culminibus eminebant, quarum minor verſus occidentem, in fronte "Baſilicæ pulchrum intrantibus inſulam a longe ſpectaculum præbebat; major vero in quadrifidæ ſtructuræ medio "columnas quatuor, porrectis de alia ad aliam arcubus ſibi invicem connexus, ne laxi defluerent, deprimebat."
Hiſt. Ramſianſis, inter. xv. Scriptores, Edit. per Gale.

(*d*) Profunditatem ipſius eccleſiæ criptis, et oratoriis ſubterraneis, et viarum amfractibus, inferius cum magna induſtria fundavit: parietes autem quadratis, et variis, et bene politis columpnis ſuffultos, et tribus tabulatis diſtinctos immenſæ longitudinis, et altitudinis erexit: ipſos etiam et capitella columpnorum quibus ſuſtentatur, et arcum ſanctuarii hiſtoriis, et imaginibus, et variis celaturarum figuris ex lapide prominentibus, et picturarum, et colorum grata vari tate mirabilique decore decoravit: ipſum quoque corpus eccleſiæ appenticiis, et porticibus undique circumcinxit. Quæ miro atque inexplicabili artificio per parietes, et cocleas inferius, et ſuperius diſtinxit; in ipſis vero cocleis, et ſuper ipſas, aſcenſoria ex lapide, et deambulatoria, et varios viarum amfractus modo, ſurſum modo deorſum artificioſiſſime ita machinari fecit, ut innumera hominum multitudo ibi exiſtere, et ipſum

MANY more authorities might be cited, was not the matter ſufficiently clear. Indeed, it is highly improbable, that the Saxons could be ignorant of ſo uſeful a contrivance as the arch: many of them, built by the Romans, they muſt have had before their eyes; ſome of which have reached our days: two particularly are now remaining in Canterbury only; one in the caſtle-yard, the other at Riding Gate. And it is not to be believed, that once knowing them, and their convenience, they would neglect to make uſe of them; or having uſed, would relinquiſh them: beſides, as it appears, from undoubted authorities, they procured workmen from the continent (*a*), to conſtruct their capital buildings, "according to the Roman "manner." This alone would be ſufficient to confute that ill-grounded opinion; and at the ſame time proves, that what we commonly call Saxon, is in reality Roman architecture.

THIS was the ſtyle of building practiſed all over Europe; and it continued to be uſed by the Normans, after their arrival here, till the introduction of what is called the Gothic, which was not till about the end of the reign of Henry the Firſt; ſo that there ſeems to be little or no grounds for a diſtinction between the Saxon and Norman architecture. Indeed, it is ſaid, the buildings of the latter were of larger dimenſions, both in height and area; and they were conſtructed with a ſtone brought from Caen in Normandy, of which their workmen were peculiarly fond: but this was ſimply an alteration in the ſcale and materials, and not in the manner of the building. The ancient parts of moſt of our cathedrals are of this early Norman work.

THE characteriſtic marks of this ſtyle are theſe. The walls are very thick, generally without buttreſſes; the arches, both within and without, as well as

corpus eccleſiæ circumdare poſſit, cum a nemine tamen infra in ea exiſtentium videri queat: oratoria quoque quam plurima ſuperius, et inferius ſecretiſſima, et pulcherrima in ipſis porticibus cum maxima diligentia, et cautela conſtituit, in quibus altaria in honore, B. Dei Genetricis ſemperque Virginis Mariæ, et St. Michaelis Archangeli, ſanctique Johannis Bapt. honeſtiſſime preparari fecit. Unde etiam uſque hodie quædam illorum ut turres, et propugnacula ſupereminent. *Richardi Prioris Haguſt. lib. i. cap.* 3.

(*a*) Cum centoribus Ædde et Eona, et cementariis, omniſque pene artis miniſterio in regionem ſuam revertens, cum regula Benedicti inſtituta eccleſiarum Dei bene melioravit. *Edii vit. S. Wilfridi, cap.* 14. *Bedæ Hiſt. Ecc. lib. iv. cap.* 2.——————De Roma quoque, et Italia, et Francia, et de aliis terris ubicumque invenire poterat, cæmentarios, et quoſlibet alios induſtrios artifices ſecum retinuerat, et ad opera ſua facienda ſecum in Angliam adduxerat. *Rich. Prior Hogulſt. lib.* 1. *cap.* 5.

St Peter's church, in the monaſtery of Weremouth, in the neighbourhood of Gyrwi, was built by the famous Benedict Biſcopius, in the year 675. This abbot went over into France, to engage workmen to build his church after the Roman manner, (as it is called by Bede in his Hiſtory of Weremuth) and brought them over for that purpoſe: he proſecuted this work with extraordinary zeal and diligence; inſomuch, that, within the compaſs of a year, after the foundations were laid, he cauſed the roof to be put on, and divine ſervice to be performed in it. Afterwards, when the building was near finiſhed, he ſent over to France for artificers ſkilled in the myſtery of making glaſs, (an art till that time unknown to the inhabitants of Britain) to glaze the windows, both of the porticos, and the principal parts of the church; which work they not only executed, but taught the Engliſh nation that moſt uſeful art. *Bentham's Hiſtory of Ely, p.* 21.

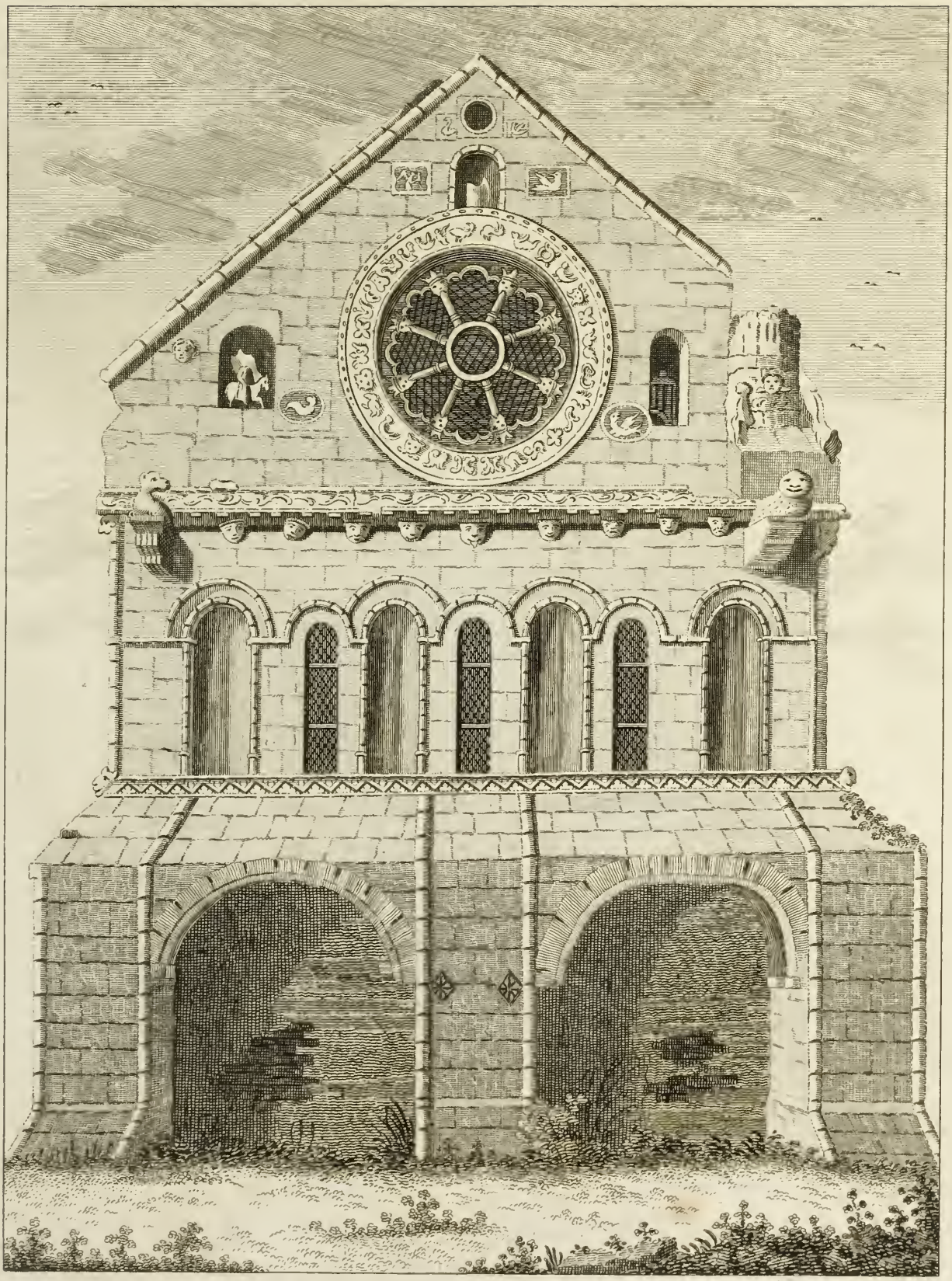
What Bede here affirms of the abbot Benedict, that he firſt introduced the art of making glaſs in this kingdom, is by no means inconſiſtent with Eddius's account of Biſhop Wilfrid's glazing the windows of St. Peter's Church at York, about the year 669, *i. e.* ſeven or eight years before this time; for glaſs might have been imported from abroad by Wilfred. But Benedict firſt brought over the artiſts, who taught the Saxons the art of making glaſs.——

thoſe over the doors and windows, ſemicircular, and ſupported by very ſolid, or rather clumſy columns, with a kind of regular baſe and capital: in ſhort, plainneſs and ſolidity conſtitute the ſtriking features of this method of building. Nevertheleſs, the architects of thoſe days ſometimes deviated from this rule: their capitals were adorned with carvings of foliage, and even animals; and their maſſive columns decorated with ſmall half columns united to them; grooves cut ſpirally winding round them, or overſpread with a kind of lozenge net-work. An inſtance of the ſecond may be ſeen in the Undercroft, at Canterbury; the two laſt occur at Durham: but the moſt beautiful ſpecimens of this work are to be met with in the Ruined Choir at Orford in Suffolk. Their arches too, though generally plain, ſometimes came in for more than their ſhare of ornaments; particularly thoſe over the chief doors: ſome of theſe were overloaded with a profuſion of carving. It would be impoſſible to deſcribe the different ornaments there crowded together; which ſeem to be more the extemporaneous product of a groteſque imagination, than the reſult of any particular deſign. On ſome of theſe arches is commonly over the key-ſtone repreſented God the Father, or our Saviour ſurrounded with angels; and below a melange of foliage, animals, often ludicrous, and ſometimes even indecent ſubjects. Partly of this ſort is the great door at Barfreſton Church in Kent.

The idea of theſe artiſts ſeems to have been, that the greater number of ſmall and diſſimular ſubjects they could there aſſemble, the more beautiful they rendered their work. It is not however to be denied, that the extreme richneſs of theſe inferior parts, ſerved, by their ſtriking contraſt, to ſet off the venerable plainneſs of the reſt of the building; a circumſtance wanting in the Gothic ſtructures; which being equally ornamented all over, fatigue and diſtract, rather than gratify the eye. I would not here be underſtood to aſſert, that all the Saxon ornamented arches were devoid of beauty and taſte; on the contrary, there are ſeveral wherein both are diſplayed, particularly in ſome belonging to the church of Ely. Beſides the ornaments here mentioned, which ſeem always to have been left to the fancy of the ſculptor, they had others, which were in common uſe, and are more regular. Moſt of them, as mentioned by Mr. Bentham, in his ingenious preface to the Hiſtory of Ely, the reader will find in the note (*a*); and ſpecimens

That the windows in churches were uſually glazed in that age abroad, as well as in theſe parts, we learn from Bede; who, ſpeaking of the church on Mount Olivet, about a mile from Jeruſalem, ſays, "In the weſt front of "it were eight windows, which, on ſome occaſions, uſed to be illuminated with lamps; which ſhone ſo bright "through the glaſs, that the mount ſeemed in a blaze." *Bedæ lib. de Locis Sanctis, cap.* 6.

(*a*) As to their arches, though they were for the moſt part plain and ſimple, yet ſome of their principal ones, as thoſe over the chief entrance at the weſt-end, and others moſt expoſed to view, were abundantly charged with ſculpture of a particular kind; as the chevron work, or zig-zag moulding, the moſt common of any; and various other kinds, riſing and falling, jetting out and receding inward alternately, in a waving or undulating manner: the embattled frette, a kind of ornament formed by a ſingle round moulding, traverſing the face of the arch, making its returns and croſſings always at right angles, ſo forming the intermediate ſpaces into ſquares alternately open above and below; ſpecimens of this kind of ornament appear on the great arches, in the middle of the weſt front, at Lincoln; and within the ruinous part of the building adjoining to the great weſtern tower at Ely:—the triangular frette, where the ſame kind of moulding, at every return, forms the ſide of an equilateral triangle, and



Publish'd March 2 1772 by S Hooper N°25 Ludgate Hill

Dent & Jones Sculp

BARFRESTON CHURCH, *KENT.*

July 21, 1773 F. Jukes

The grand Door of Barfreston Church in Kent.

of them are given in the miſcellaneous plate, in the view of the eaſt end of Barfreſton Church; and in the entrance into what was the Stranger's Hall, in the monaſtery of Chriſt's Church, Canterbury, built by Archbiſhop Lanfranc. The ſmall pillars, or columns, were formerly richly ornamented; but, by order of one of the deans, were chipped plain. The eſcutcheons over theſe are remarkable; they not being cuſtomary at the time of its erection.

About the time of Alfred probably, but certainly in the reign of Edgar (*a*), high towers and croſs aiſles were firſt introduced; the Saxon churches till then being only ſquare, or oblong buildings, generally turned ſemicircularly at the eaſt end. Towers at firſt ſcarcely roſe higher than the roof; being intended chiefly as a kind of lanthorn, for the admittance of light. An addition to their height was in all likelihood ſuggeſted on the more common uſe of bells; which, though mentioned in ſome of our monaſteries in the ſeventh century, were not in uſe in churches till near the middle of the tenth.

To what country, or people, the ſtyle of architecture called Gothic, owes its origin, is by no means ſatisfactorily determined (*b*). It is indeed generally conjectured to

conſequently incloſes the intermediate ſpace in that figure; the nail-head reſembling the heads of great nails driven in at regular diſtances; as in the nave of old St. Paul's, and the great tower at Hereford (all of them found alſo in more ancient Saxon buildings):—the billeted moulding, as if a cylinder ſhould be cut into ſmall pieces of equal length, and theſe ſtuck on alternately round the face of the arches; as in the choir of Peterborough, at St. Croſs, and round the windows of the upper tire on the outſide of the nave at Ely:—this latter ornament was often uſed (as were alſo ſome of the others) as a faſcia, band, or fillet, round the outſide of their buildings.—Then to adorn the inſide walls below, they had rows of little pillars and arches; and applied them alſo to decorate large vacant ſpaces in the walls without (capitals of theſe were frequently ornamented with groteſque work):—and the corbel-table, conſiſting of a ſeries of ſmall arches without pillars, but with the heads of men or animals, ſerving inſtead of corbels or brackets to ſupport them, which they placed below the parapet, projecting over the upper, and ſometimes the middle tire of windows:—the hatched moulding, uſed both on the faces of the arches, or as a faſcia on the outſide; as if cut with the point of an axe, at regular diſtances, and ſo left rough:—and the nebule, a projection terminated by an undulating line, as under the upper range of windows at Peterborough. To theſe marks that diſtinguiſh the Saxon or Norman ſtyle, we may add, that they had no tabernacles, (or niches with canopies) or pinnacles or ſpires; or indeed, any ſtatues to adorn their buildings on the outſide, which are the principal grace of what is now called the Gothic; unleſs thoſe ſmall figures we ſometimes meet with over their door ways; ſuch as is that little figure of Biſhop Herbert Loſing, over the north tranſept door at Norwich, ſeemingly of that time; or another ſmall figure of our Saviour, over one of the ſouth doors of Ely, &c. may be called ſo. But theſe are rather mezzo relievos than ſtatues; and it is known, that they uſed reliefs ſometimes with profuſion, as in the Saxon or Norman gateway at Bury, and the two ſouth doors at Ely. Eſcutcheons of arms are hardly (if ever) ſeen in theſe fabrics, though frequent enough in after times; neither was there any tracery in their vaultings.——Theſe few particularities in the Saxon and Norman ſtyle of building, however minute they may be in appearance, yet will be found to have their uſe; as they contribute to aſcertain the age of an edifice, at firſt ſight.————————(*a*) Vide note (*c*), page 64.

(*b*) The ſtyle of building with pointed arches is modern, and ſeems not to have been known in the world, till the Goths ceaſed to make a figure in it.—Sir Chriſtopher Wren thought this ſhould rather be called the Saracenic way of building.—The firſt appearance of it here, was indeed in the time of the Cruſades; and that might induce him to think the archetype was brought hither by ſome who had been engaged in thoſe expeditions, when they returned from the Holy Land. But the obſervations of ſeveral learned travellers, who have accurately ſurveyed the ancient mode of building in thoſe parts of the world, do by no means favour that opinion, or diſcover the leaſt traces of it. Indeed, I have not yet met with any ſatisfactory account of the origin of pointed arches; when invented, or where firſt taken notice of. Some have imagined they might poſſibly have taken their riſe from thoſe arcades we ſee in the early Norman or Saxon buildings on walls, where the wide ſemicircular arches croſs and interſect each other, and form at their interſection, a narrow and ſharp pointed arch. In the wall ſouth of

be of Arabian extraction, and to have been introduced into Europe by ſome perſons returning from the Cruſades in the Holy Land. Sir Chriſtopher Wren (*a*) was

the choir, at St. Croſs, is a facing of ſuch wide round interlaced arches, by way of ornament to a flat vacant ſpace; only ſo much of it as lies between the legs of the two neighbouring arches, where they croſs each other, is pierced through the fabric, and forms a little range of ſharp pointed windows; it is of King Stephen's time: whether they were originally pierced, I cannot learn. *Bentham.*

(*a*) Theſe ſurveys, and other occaſional inſpections of the moſt noted cathedral churches and chapels in England, and foreign parts; a diſcernment of no contemptible art, ingenuity, and geometrical ſkill in the deſign and execution of ſome few, and an affectation of height and grandeur, though without regularity and good proportion in moſt of them, induced the ſurveyor to make ſome enquiry into the riſe and progreſs of this Gothic mode, and to conſider how the old Greek and Roman ſtyle of building, with the ſeveral regular proportions of columns, entablatures, &c. came, within a few centuries, to be ſo much altered, and almoſt univerſally diſuſed.

He was of opinion (as has been mentioned in another place) that what we now vulgarly call the Gothic, ought properly and truly to be named the Saracenic architecture, refined by the Chriſtians; which firſt of all began in the caſt, after the fall of the Greek empire, by the prodigious ſucceſs of thoſe people that adhered to Mahomet's doctrine; who, out of zeal to their religion, built moſques, caravanſaras, and ſepulchres, wherever they came.

Theſe they contrived of a round form, becauſe they would not imitate the Chriſtian figure of a croſs; nor the old Greek manner, which they thought to be idolatrous; and for that reaſon all ſculpture became offenſive to them.

They then fell into a new mode of their own invention, though it might have been expected with better ſenſe; conſidering the Arabians wanted not geometricians in that age, nor the Moors, who tranſlated many of the moſt uſeful old Greek books. As they propagated their religion with great diligence, ſo they built moſques in all their conquered cities, in haſte. The quarries of great marble, by which the vanquiſhed nations of Syria, Egypt, and all the eaſt had been ſupplied; for columns, architraves, and great ſtones were now deſerted; the Saracens therefore were neceſſitated to accommodate their architecture to ſuch materials, whether marble or free-ſtone, as every country readily afforded. They thought columns, and heavy cornices impertinent, and might be omitted; and affecting the round form for moſques, they elevated cupolas in ſome inſtances, with grace enough. The Holy War gave the Chriſtians, who had been there, an idea of the Saracen works; which were afterwards by them imitated in the weſt: and they refined upon it every day, as they proceeded in building churches. The Italians (among which were yet ſome Greek refugees) and with them French, Germans, and Flemings, joined into a fraternity of architects; procuring papal bulls for their encouragement, and particular privileges: they ſtyled themſelves free maſons, and ranged from one nation to another, as they found churches to be built (for very many in thoſe ages were every where in building, through piety or emulation). Their government was regular, and where they fixed near the building in hand, they made a camp of huts. A ſurveyor governed in chief; every tenth man was called a warden, and overlooked each nine: the gentlemen of the neighbourhood, either out of charity, or commutation of penance, gave the materials and carriages. Thoſe who have ſeen the exact accounts in records of the charge of the fabrics of ſome of our cathedrals, near four hundred years old, cannot but have a great eſteem for their œconomy; and admire how ſoon they erected ſuch loſty ſtructures. Indeed, great height they thought the greateſt magnificence: few ſtones were uſed, but what a man might carry up a ladder on his back from ſcaffold to ſcaffold; though they had pullies, and ſpoked wheels, upon occaſion; but having rejected cornices, they had no need of great engines: ſtone upon ſtone was eaſily piled up to great heights; therefore, the pride of their works was in pinnacles and ſteeples. In this they eſſentially differed from the Roman way, who laid all their mouldings horizontally, which made the beſt perſpective: the Gothic way, on the contrary, carried all their mouldings perpendicular; ſo that the ground-work being ſettled, they had nothing elſe to do but to ſpire all up as they could. Thus they made their pillars of a bundle of little Torus's, which they divided into more, when they came to the roof; and theſe Torus's ſplit into many ſmall ones, and traverſing one another, gave occaſion to the tracery-work, (as they called it) of which this ſociety were the inventors. They uſed the ſharp-headed arch, which would riſe with little centering, required lighter key-ſtones, and leſs butment, and yet would bear another row of doubled arches riſing from the key-ſtone: by the diverſifying of which, they erected eminent ſtructures, ſuch as the ſteeples of Vienna, Straſburg, and many other. They affected ſteeples, though the Saracens themſelves moſt uſed cupolas. The church of St. Mark at Venice is built after the Saracen manner. Glaſs began to be uſed in windows; and a great part of the outſide ornament of churches conſiſted in the traccry works of diſpoſing the mullions of the windows for the better fixing in of the glaſs. Thus the work required fewer materials, and the workmanſhip was for the moſt part performed by flat moulds; in which the wardens could eaſily inſtruct hundreds of artificers. It muſt be confeſſed, this was an ingenious compendium of work, ſuited to theſe northern climates; and I muſt alſo own,

of that opinion (*a*); and it has been ſubſcribed to by moſt writers who have

that works of the ſame height and magnificence in the Roman way, would be very much more expenſive, than in the other Gothic manner, managed with judgment. But, as all modes, when once the old rational ways are deſpiſed, turn at laſt into unbounded fancies; this tracery induced too much mincing of the ſtone into open battlements, and ſpindling pinnacles, and little carvings without proportion of diſtance; ſo the eſſential rules of good perſpective and duration were forgot. But, about two hundred years ago, when ingenious men began to reform the Roman language to the purity, which they aſſigned and fixed to the time of Auguſtus, and that century; the architects alſo, aſhamed of the modern barbarity of building, began to examine carefully the ruins of old Rome and Italy, to ſearch into the orders and proportions, and to eſtabliſh them by inviolable rules: ſo, to their labours and induſtry, we owe, in a great degree, the reſtoration of architecture.

The ingenious Mr. Evelyn makes a general and judicious compariſon, in his Account of Architecture, of the ancient and modern ſtyles; with reference to ſome of the particular works of Inigo Jones, and the Surveyor; which, in few words, gives a right idea of the majeſtic ſymmetry of the one, and the abſurd ſyſtem of the other.—— 'The "ancient Greek and Roman architecture anſwer all the perfections required in a faultleſs and accompliſhed "building; ſuch as for ſo many ages were ſo renowned and reputed by the univerſal ſuffrages of the civilized "world; and would doubtleſs have ſtill ſubſiſted, and made good their claim, and what is recorded of them, had "not the Goths, Vandals, and other barbarous nations, ſubverted and demoliſhed them; together with that "glorious empire, where thoſe ſtately and pompous monuments ſtood: introducing, in their ſtead, a certain "fantaſtical and licentious manner of building, which we have ſince called Modern, or Gothick. Congeſtions of "heavy, dark, melancholy, and monkiſh piles, without any juſt proportion, uſe or beauty, compared with the "truly ancient; ſo as when we meet with the greateſt induſtry, and expenſive carving, full of fret and lamentable "imagery, ſparing neither of pains nor coſt, a judicious ſpectator is rather diſtracted, or quite confounded, than "touched with that admiration which reſults from the true and juſt ſymmetry, regular proportion, union, and "diſpoſition; and from the great and noble manner in which the auguſt and glorious fabrics of the ancients are "executed." *Accounts of Architecture, p. 9.*

It was after the irruption and ſwarms of thoſe truculent people from the north, the Moors and Arabs from the ſouth and caſt, over-running the civilized world, that, wherever they fixed themſelves, they ſoon began to debauch this noble and uſeful art; when, inſtead of thoſe beautiful orders, ſo majeſtical and proper for their ſtations, becoming variety, and other ornamental acceſſories, they ſet up thoſe ſlender and miſshapen pillars, or rather bundles of ſtaves, and other incongruous props, to ſupport incumbent weights, and ponderous arched roofs, without entablature; and though not without great induſtry, (as Mr. D'Aviler well obſerves) nor altogether naked of gaudy ſculpture, trite and buſy carvings, it is ſuch as gluts the eye, rather than gratifies and pleaſes it with any reaſonable ſatisfaction. For proof of this (without travelling far abroad) I dare report myſelf to any man of judgment, and that has the leaſt taſte of order and magnificence, if, after he has looked a while upon King Henry the Seventh's Chapel at Weſtminſter, gazed on its ſharp angles, jetties, narrow lights, lame ſtatues, lace, and other cut work, and crinkle crankle, and ſhall then turn his eyes on the Banquetting-houſe, built at Whitehall, by Inigo Jones, after the ancient manner; or on what his majeſty's ſurveyor, Sir Chriſtopher Wren, has advanced at St. Paul's; and conſider what a glorious object the cupola, porticos, colonades, and other parts preſent to the beholder; or compare the ſchools and library at Oxford with the theatre there; or what he has built at Trinity-College, in Cambridge; and ſince all theſe, at Greenwich and other places; by which time our home traveller will begin to have a juſt idea of the ancient and modern architecture; I ſay, let him well conſider, and compare them judicially, without partiality and prejudice, and then pronounce which of the two manners ſtrikes the underſtanding as well as the eye, with the more majeſty and ſolemn greatneſs; though in ſo much a plainer and ſimple dreſs, conform to the reſpective orders and entablature; and accordingly determine to whom the preference is due: not as we ſaid, that there is not ſomething of ſolid, and odly artificial too, after a ſort. But the univerſal and unreaſonable thickneſs of the walls, clumſy buttreſſes, towers, ſharp-pointed arches, doors, and other apertures, without proportion; nonſenſical inſertions of various marbles impertinently placed; turrets and pinnacles, thick ſet with monkies and chimeras; and abundance of buſy work, and other incongruities, diſſipate and break the angles of the ſight; and ſo confound it, that one cannot conſider it with any ſteadineſs, where to begin or end; taking off from that noble air and grandeur, bold and graceful manner, which the ancients had ſo well, and judiciouſly eſtabliſhed. But in this ſort have they and their followers, ever ſince, filled not Europe alone, but Aſia and Africa beſides, with mountains of ſtone; vaſt and gigantic buildings indeed! but not worthy the name of architecture, *&c.* *Wren's Parentalia.*

(*a*) This we now call the Gothic manner of architecture, (ſo the Italians called what was not after the Roman ſtyle) though the Goths were rather deſtroyers than builders: I think it ſhould with more reaſon be called the

treated on this ſubject (*a*). If the ſuppoſition is well grounded, it ſeems likely that many ancient buildings of this kind, or at leaſt their remains, would be found in thoſe countries from whence it is ſaid to have been brought; parts of which have at different times been viſited by ſeveral curious travellers, many of whom have made deſigns of what they thought moſt remarkable. Whether they overlooked or neglected theſe buildings, as being in ſearch of thoſe of more remote antiquity, or whether none exiſted, ſeems doubtful. Cornelius le Brun, an indefatigable and inquiſitive traveller, has publiſhed many views of eaſtern buildings, particularly about the Holy Land: in all theſe, only one Gothic ruin, the church near Acre, and a few pointed arches, occur; and thoſe built by the Chriſtians, when in poſſeſſion of the country. Near Iſpahan, in Perſia, he gives ſeveral buildings with pointed arches; but theſe are bridges and caravanſeras, whoſe age cannot be aſcertained; conſequently, are as likely to have been built after as before the introduction of this ſtyle into Europe.

At Iſpahan itſelf, the Mey doen, or Grand Market-place, is ſurrounded by divers magnificent Gothic buildings; particularly the Royal Moſque, and the Talael Ali-kapie, or Theatre. The magnificent bridge of Alla-werdie-chan, over the river Zenderoet, 540 paces long, and ſeventeen broad, having thirty-three pointed arches, is alſo a Gothic ſtructure: but no mention is made when or by whom theſe are built. The Chiaer Baeg, a royal garden, is decorated with Gothic buildings; but theſe were, it is ſaid, built only in the reign of Scha Abbas, who died anno 1629.

One building indeed, at firſt ſeems as if it would corroborate this aſſertion, and that the time when it was erected, might be in ſome degree fixed: it is the

Saracen ſtyle; for thoſe people wanted neither arts nor learning; and after we in the weſt had loſt both, we borrowed again from them, out of their Arabic books, what they with great diligence had tranſlated from the Greeks.—They were zealots in their religion; and, wherever they conquered, (which was with amazing rapidity) erected moſques and caravanſeras in haſte; which obliged them to fall into another way of building; for they built their moſques round, diſliking the Chriſtian form of a croſs. The old quarries, whence the ancients took their large blocks of marble for whole columns and architraves, were neglected; and they thought both impertinent. Their carriage was by camels; therefore, their buildings were fitted for ſmall ſtones, and columns of their own fancy, conſiſting of many pieces: and their arches were pointed without key-ſtones, which they thought too heavy.——The reaſons were the ſame in our northern climates, abounding in free ſtone, but wanting marble.

(*a*) Modern Gothic, as it is called, is deduced from a different quarter: it is diſtinguiſhed by the lightneſs of its works, by the exceſſive boldneſs of its elevations, and of its ſections; by the delicacy, profuſion, and extravagant fancy of its ornaments. The pillars of this kind are as ſlender as thoſe of the ancient Gothic are maſſive; ſuch productions, ſo airy, cannot admit the heavy Goths for their author; how can be attributed to them, a ſtyle of architecture, which was only introduced in the tenth century of our æra? Several years after the deſtruction of all thoſe kingdoms, which the Goths had raiſed upon the ruins of the Roman empire, and at a time when the very name of Goth was entirely forgotten, from all the marks of the new architecture, it can only be attributed to the Moors; or, what is the ſame thing, to the Arabians or Saracens; who have expreſſed, in their architecture, the ſame taſte as in their poetry; both the one and the other falſely delicate, crowded with ſuperfluous ornaments, and often very unnatural: the imagination is highly worked up in both; but it is an extravagant imagination; and this has rendered the edifices of the Arabians (we may include the other Orientals) as extraordinary as their thoughts. If any one doubts of this aſſertion, let us appeal to any one who has ſeen the moſques and palaces of Fez; or ſome of the cathedrals in Spain, built by the Moors: one model of this ſort, is the church at Burgos; and even in this iſland there are not wanting ſeveral examples of the ſame; ſuch buildings have been vulgarly

tomb of Abdalla (*a*), one of the apoſtles of Mahomet, probably him ſurnamed Abu Becr. If this tomb is ſuppoſed to have been built ſoon after his death, eſtimating that event to have happened according to the common courſe of nature, it will place its erection about the middle of the ſeventh century: but this is by far too conjectural to be much depended on. It alſo ſeems as if this was not the common ſtyle of building at that time, from the Temple of Mecca; where, if any credit is to be given to the print of it, in Sale's Koran, the arches are ſemicircular. The tomb here mentioned, has one evidence to prove its antiquity; that of being damaged by the injuries of time and weather. Its general appearance much reſembles the eaſt end of the chapel belonging to Ely Houſe, London; except that, what is filled up there by the great window in the tomb, is an open pointed arch; alſo, the columns, or pinnacles, on each ſide, are higher in proportion.

SOME have ſuppoſed that this kind of architecture was brought into Spain by the Moors (who poſſeſſed themſelves of a great part of that country the beginning of the eighth century, which they held till the latter end of the fifteenth); and that from thence, by way of France (*b*), it was introduced into England. This at

called Modern Gothic, but their true appellation is Arabic, Saracenic, or Moreſque. ——This manner was introduced into Europe through Spain: learning flouriſhed among the Arabians, all the time that their dominion was in full power; they ſtudied philoſophy, mathematics, phyſic and poetry. The love of learning was at once excited; in all places, that were not at too great a diſtance from Spain, theſe authors were read; and ſuch of the Greek authors as they had tranſlated into Arabic, were from thence turned into Latin. The phyſic and philoſophy of the Arabians ſpread themſelves in Europe, and with theſe their architecture; many churches were built after the Saracenic mode: and others with a mixture of heavy and light proportions, the alteration that the difference of the climate might require, was little, if at all conſidered. In moſt ſouthern parts of Europe, and in Africa, the windows, (before the uſe of glaſs) made with narrow apertures, and placed very high in the walls of the buildings, occaſioned a ſhade and darkneſs within ſide, and were all contrived to guard againſt the fierce rays of the ſun; yet were ill ſuited to theſe latitudes, where that glorious luminary ſheds its feebler influences, and is rarely ſeen but through a watery cloud. *Rious's Architecture.*

(*a*) Le vingt-troiſiéme de ce mois nous allames encore en ceremonie au village de Kaladoen, á une bonne lieuë de la ville, pour y voir le tombeau D'Abdulla. On dit que ce ſaint avoit autrefois l'inſpection des eaux D'Emoen Oſſeyn, & quil etoit un des 12 diſciples, ou á ce quils pretendent; un des apotres de leur prophete, ce tombeau qui eſt placé entre quatre murailles, revetues de petites pierres, eſt de marbre gris, orné de caracteres Arabes, & entouré de lampes, de cuivre étamée; on y monte par 15 Marches d'un pied de haut, & l'on y en trouve 15 autres un peu plus élevées qui conduiſent, a une platte forme quarée, qui a 32 pieds de large de chaque côté, & ſur le devant, de la quelle il y a deux colomnes de petites pierre., entre les quelles il s'en trouve de bleues. La baſe en a 5 pieds de large, & une petite porte, avec un eſcalier a noyau qui a auſſi 15 Marches. Elles ſont fort endommagées par les injures du temps, & il parcit qu'elles ont eté une fois plus élevées quelles ne ſont a preſent. L'eſcalier en eſt ſi étroit qu'il faut qu'un homme de taille ordinaire ſe deſhabille pour y monter, comme je fis, & paſſai la moitié du corps au deſſus de la colomne. Mais ce qu'il y a de plus extraordinaire, eſt que lors qu'on ébranle une des colomnes en faiſant un mouvement du corps; l'autre en reſſent les ſecouſſe, & eſt agitée da même; c'eſt une choſe dont jai fait l'epreuve, ſans en pouvoir comprendre, ni apprendre la raiſon. Pendant que j'etois occupé a deſſiner ce batiment, qu'on trouve au Num. 71, un jeune garçon de 12 a 13 ans, boſſu par devant, grimpa en dehors, le long de la muraille, juſqu'au haut de la colomne dont il fit le tour, & redeſcendit de même ſans ſe tenir a quoi que ce ſoit, qu'aux petites pierres, de ce bâtiment, aux endroits oú la chaux en étoit detachée; & il ne le fit que pour nous divertir.

(*b*) The Saracen mode of building ſeen in the eaſt, ſoon ſpread over Europe, and particularly in France; the faſhions of which nation we affected to imitate in all ages; even when we were at enmity with it. Nothing was thought magnificent that was not high beyond meaſure; with the flutter of arch buttreſſes, ſo we call the ſloping

firſt ſeems plauſible; but if it was fact, the public buildings erected by that people, would have borne teſtimony of it: but not the leaſt traces of Gothic architecture are to be met with in the portraits of the Mooriſh palaces, given in Les Delices D'Eſpagne, ſaid to be faithful repreſentations; and where, as well as in an authentic drawing of the Mooriſh Caſtle at Gibraltar, the arches are all repreſented ſemicircular. Perhaps a more general knowledge of theſe buildings would throw ſome lights on the ſubject, at preſent almoſt entirely enveloped in obſcurity: poſſibly the Moors may, like us, at different periods, have uſed different manners of building. Having thus in vain attempted to diſcover from whence we had this ſtyle, let us turn to what is more certainly known, the time of its introduction into this kingdom, and the ſucceſſive improvements and changes it has undergone.

Its firſt appearance here was towards the latter end of the reign of King Henry the Second; but was not at once thoroughly adopted; ſome ſhort ſolid columns, and ſemicircular arches, being retained, and mixed with the pointed ones. An example of this is ſeen in the weſt end of the Old Temple Church; and at York, where, under the choir, there remains much of the ancient work; the arches of which are but juſt pointed, and riſe on ſhort, round pillars: both theſe were built in that reign. More inſtances might be brought, was not the thing probable in itſelf; new inventions, even when uſeful, not being readily received. The great weſt tower of Ely Cathedral was built by Biſhop Rydel, about this time: thoſe arches were all pointed.

In the reign of Henry the Third, this manner of building ſeems to have gained a complete footing; the circular giving place to the pointed arch, and the maſſive column yielding to the ſlender pillar. Indeed, like all novelties, when once admitted, the rage of faſhion made it become ſo prevalent, that many of the ancient and ſolid buildings, erected in former ages, were taken down, in order to be

arches that poiſe the higher vaultings of the nave. The Romans always concealed their butments; whereas the Normans thought them ornamental. Theſe I have obſerved are the firſt things that occaſion the ruin of cathedrals; being ſo much expoſed to the air and weather: the coping, which cannot defend them, firſt failing, and if they give way, the vault muſt ſpread. Pinnacles are of no uſe, and as little ornament. The pride of a very high roof, raiſed above reaſonable pitch, is not for duration; for the lead is apt to ſlip; but we are tied to this indiſcreet form, and muſt be contented with original faults in the firſt deſign. But that which is moſt to be lamented, is the unhappy choice of the materials; the ſtone is decayed four inches deep, and falls off perpetually in great ſcales. I find, after the Conqueſt, all our artiſts were fetched from Normandy; they loved to work in their own Caen ſtone, which is more beautiful than durable. This was found expenſive to bring hither; ſo they thought Rygate ſtone, in Surry, the neareſt like their own; being a ſtone that would ſaw and work like wood, but not durable, as is manifeſt: and they uſed this for the aſhlar of the whole fabric, which is now diſfigured in the higheſt degree. This ſtone takes in water; which, being frozen, ſcales off; whereas good ſtone gathers a cruſt, and defends itſelf, as many of our Engliſh free-ſtones do. And though we have alſo the beſt oak timber in the world, yet theſe ſenſeleſs artificers, in Weſtminſter-hall, and other places, would work their cheſnuts from Normandy: that timber is not natural to England; it works finely, but ſooner decays than oak.—The roof in the abby is oak, but mixed with cheſnut, and wrought after a bad Norman manner; that does not ſecure it from ſtretching, and damaging the walls, and the water of the gutters is ill carried off. All this is ſaid, the better, in the next place, to repreſent to your lordſhip what has been done, and is wanting ſtill to be carried on; as time and money is allowed to make a ſubſtantial and durable repair. *Wren's Parentalia, page* 298.

re-edified in the new taſte; or had additions patched to them, of this mode of architecture. The preſent cathedral church of Saliſbury was begun early in this reign, and finiſhed in the year 1258. It is entirely in the Gothic ſtyle; and, according to Sir Chriſtopher Wren, may be juſtly accounted one of the beſt patterns of architecture of the age in which it was built. Its excellency is undoubtedly in a great meaſure owing to its being conſtructed on one plan; whence ariſes that ſymmetry and agreement of parts, not to be met with in many of our other cathedral churches; which have moſtly been built at different times, and in a variety of ſtyles. The faſhionable manner of building at this period, and till the reign of Henry the Eighth, as is deſcribed by Mr. Bentham, ſee in note (*a*).

(*a*) During the whole reign of Henry the Third, the faſhionable pillars to our churches were of Purbec marble, very ſlender and round, encompaſſed with marble ſhafts a little detached, ſo as to make them appear of a proportionable thickneſs; theſe ſhafts had each of them a capital richly adorned with foliage, which together, in a cluſter, formed one elegant capital for the whole pillar. This form, though graceful to the eye, was attended with an inconvenience, perhaps not apprehended at firſt; for the ſhafts, deſigned chiefly for ornament, conſiſting of long pieces cut horizontally from the quarry, when placed in a perpendicular ſituation, were apt to ſplit and break; which probably occaſioned this manner to be laid aſide in the next century. There was alſo ſome variety in the form of the vaultings in the ſame reign: theſe they generally choſe to make of chalk, for its lightneſs; but the arches and principal ribs were of free-ſtone. The vaulting of Saliſbury Cathedral, one of the earlieſt, is high pitched, between arches and croſs-ſpringers only, without any further decorations: but ſome that were built ſoon after, are more ornamental, riſing from their impoſts with more ſpringers, and ſpreading themſelves to the middle of the vaulting, are enriched at their interſection with carved orbs, foliage, and other devices: as in Biſhop Norwood's work, in the Preſbytery, at the eaſt end of the cathedral of Ely.———As to the windows of that age, we find them very long, narrow, ſharp-pointed, and uſually decorated on the inſide and outſide with ſmall marble ſhafts: the order and diſpoſition of the windows, varied in ſome meaſure, according to the ſtories of which the building conſiſted; in one of three ſtories, the uppermoſt had commonly three windows within the compaſs of every arch, the center one being higher than thoſe on each ſide; the middle tire or ſtory had two within the ſame ſpace; and the loweſt, only one window, uſually divided by a pillar or mullion, and after ornamented on the top with a trefoil, ſingle roſe, or ſome ſuch ſimple decoration; which probably gave the hint for branching out the whole head into a variety of tracery and foliage, when the windows came afterwards to be enlarged. The uſe of painting, and ſtained glaſs, in our churches, is thought to have begun about this time: this kind of ornament, as it diminiſhed the light, induced the neceſſity of making an alteration in the windows; either by increaſing the number, or enlarging their proportions; for ſuch a gloomineſs, rather than overmuch light, ſeems more proper for ſuch ſacred edifices, and better calculated for recollecting the thoughts, and fixing pious affections: yet without that alteration, our churches had been too dark and gloomy; as ſome of them now, being diveſted of that ornament, for the ſame reaſon, appear over light.———As for ſpires and pinnacles, with which our oldeſt churches are ſometimes, and more modern ones are frequently decorated, I think they are not very ancient; the towers and turrets of churches built by the Normans, in the firſt century after their coming, were covered as platforms, with battlements or plain parapet walls; ſome of them indeed, built within that period, we now ſee finiſhed with pinnacles or ſpires; which were additions, ſince the modern ſtyle of pointed arches prevailed; for before we meet with none. One of the earlieſt ſpires we have any account of, is that of old St. Paul's, finiſhed in the year 1222: it was, I think, of timber, covered with lead; but not long after, they began to build them of ſtone; and to finiſh all their buttreſſes in the ſame manner.———Architecture, under Edward the Firſt, was ſo nearly the ſame as in his father Henry the Third's time, that it is no eaſy matter to diſtinguiſh it. Improvements no doubt were then made; but it is difficult to define them accurately. The tranſition from one ſtyle to another, is uſually affected by degrees, and therefore not very remarkable at firſt; but it becomes ſo at ſome diſtance of time: towards the latter part indeed of his reign, and in that of Edward the Second, we begin to diſcover a manifeſt change of the mode, as well in the vaulting and make of the columns, as the formation of the windows. The vaulting was, I think, more decorated than before; for now the principal ribs ariſing from their impoſt, being ſpread over the inner face of the arch, ran into a kind of tracery; or rather, with tranſoms divided the roof into various angular compartments,

In the beginning of the reign of Henry the Eighth, or rather towards the latter end of that of Henry the Seventh, when brick buildings became common, a new kind of low pointed arch grew much in uſe: it was deſcribed from four centers, was very round at the haunches, and the angle at the top was very obtuſe. This ſort of arch is to be found in every one of Cardinal Wolſey's buildings; alſo at Weſt Sheen; an ancient brick gate at Mile End, called King John's Gate; and in the great gate of the palace at Lambeth. From this time Gothic architecture began to decline, and was ſoon after ſupplanted by a mixed ſtyle, if one may venture to call it one; wherein the Grecian and Gothic, however diſcordant and irreconcileable, are jumbled together. Concerning this mode of building,

and were uſually ornamented in the angles, with gilded orbs, carved heads or figures, and other emboſſed work. The columns retained ſomething of their general form already deſcribed; that is, as an aſſemblage of ſmall pillars or ſhafts: but theſe decorations were now not detached or ſeparate from the body of the columns, but made part of it; and being cloſely united and wrought up together, formed one entire, firm, ſlender and elegant column. The windows were now greatly enlarged, and divided into ſeveral lights by ſtone mullions, running into various ramifications above, and dividing the head into numerous compartments of different forms, as leaves, open flowers, and other fanciful ſhapes; and more particularly the eaſtern and weſtern windows (which became faſhionable about this time) took up nearly the whole breadth of the nave, and were carried up almoſt as high as the vaulting; and being ſet off with painted and ſtained glaſs, of moſt lively colours, with portraits of kings, ſaints, martyrs and confeſſors, and other hiſtorical repreſentations, made a moſt ſplendid and glorious appearance. The three firſt arches of the Preſbytery, adjoining to the dome and lantern of the Cathedral Church of Ely, began the latter part of Edward the Second's reign, A. D. 1322, to exhibit elegant ſpecimens of theſe faſhionable pillars, vaultings and windows. St. Mary's Chapel (now Trinity Pariſh Church) at Ely, built about the ſame time, is conſtructed on a different plan; but the vaulting and windows are in the ſame ſtyle. The plan of this chapel, generally accounted one of the moſt perfect ſtructures of that age, is an oblong ſquare; it has no pillars nor ſide iſles, but is ſupported by ſtrong ſpiring buttreſſes, and was decorated on the outſide with ſtatues over the eaſt and weſt windows; and within ſide alſo with ſtatues, and a great variety of other ſculpture, well executed. The faſhion of adorning the weſt end of our churches with rows of ſtatues, in tabernacles or niches, with canopies over them, obtained very ſoon after the introduction of pointed arches, as may be ſeen at Peterborough and Saliſbury; and in later times we find them in a more improved taſte, as at Lichfield and Wells.——The ſame ſtyle and manner of building prevailed all the reign of Edward the Third; and with regard to the principal parts and members, continued in uſe to the reign of Henry the Seventh, and the greater part of Henry the Eighth; only towards the latter part of that period, the windows were leſs pointed and more open; a better taſte for ſtatuary began to appear; and indeed, a greater care ſeems to have been beſtowed on all the ornamental parts, to give them a lighter and higher finiſhing; particularly the ribs of the vaulting, which had been large, and ſeemingly formed for ſtrength and ſupport, became at length divided into ſuch an abundance of parts, iſſuing from their impoſts as from a center, and ſpreading themſelves over the vaulting, where they were intermixed with ſuch delicate ſculpture, as gave the whole vault the appearance of embroidery, enriched with cluſters of pendent ornaments, reſembling the works Nature ſometimes forms in caves and grottos, hanging down from their roofs.——To what height of perfection modern architecture (I mean that with pointed arches, its chief characteriſtic) was carried on in this kingdom, appears by that one complete ſpecimen of it, the chapel founded by King Henry the Sixth, in his college at Cambridge, and finiſhed by King Henry the Eighth. The decorations, harmony, and proportions of the ſeveral parts of this magnificent fabric, its fine painted windows, and richly ornamented roof, its gloom, and perſpective, all concur in affecting the imagination with pleaſure and delight, at the ſame time that they inſpire awe and devotion. It is undoubtedly one of the moſt complete, elegant, and magnificent ſtructures in the kingdom; and if, beſides theſe larger works, we take into our view, thoſe ſpecimens of exquiſite workmanſhip we meet with in the ſmaller kinds of oratories, chapels, and monumental edifices, produced ſo late as the reign of Henry the Eighth, ſome of which are ſtill in being, or at leaſt ſo much of them, as to give an idea of their former grace and beauty, one can hardly help concluding, that architecture arrived at its higheſt point of glory in this kingdom, but juſt before its final period. *Bentham.*

Mr. Wharton, in his Obſervations on Spencer's Fairy Queen, has the following anecdotes and remarks:

——————————" Did ariſe
" On ſtately pillars, fram'd after the Doric guiſe.

" Although the Roman or Grecian architecture did not begin to prevail in England " till the time of Inigo Jones, yet our communication with the Italians, and our " imitation of their manners, produced ſome ſpecimens of that ſtyle much earlier. " Perhaps the earlieſt is Somerſet-Houſe in the Strand, built about the year " 1549, by the duke of Somerſet, uncle to Edward the Sixth. The monument " of Biſhop Gardiner, in Wincheſter Cathedral, made in the reign of Mary, " about 1555, is decorated with Ionic pillars; Spencer's verſes, here quoted, " bear an alluſion to ſome of theſe faſhionable improvements in building, which, " at this time, were growing more and more into eſteem. Thus alſo Biſhop Hall, " who wrote about the ſame time; *viz.* 1598:

" There findeſt thou ſome ſtately Doricke frame,
" Or neat Ionicke work.——————————

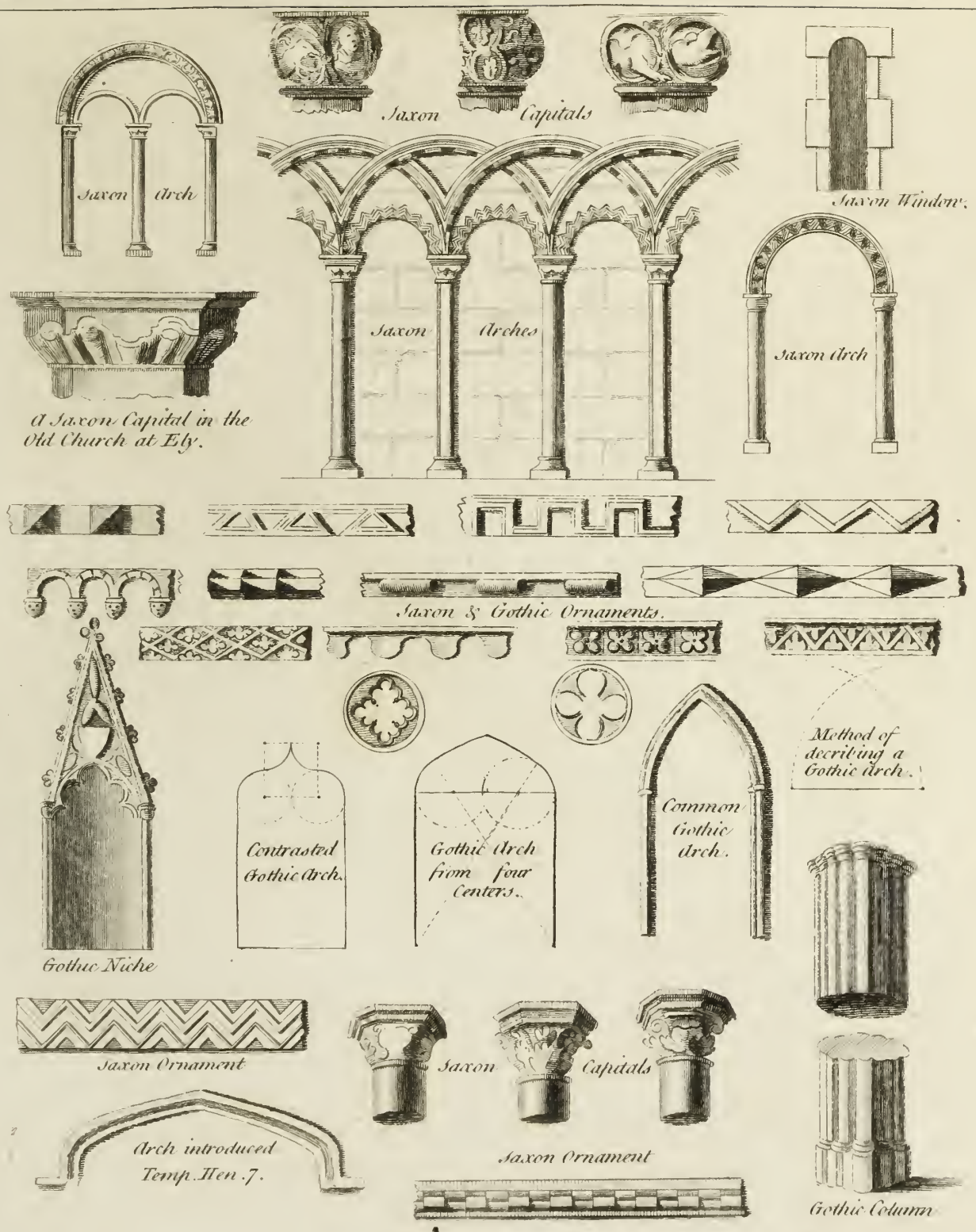
" But theſe ornaments were often abſurdly introduced into the old Gothic ſtyle: " as in the magnificent portico of the ſchools at Oxford, erected about the year " 1613; where the builder, in a Gothic edifice, has affectedly diſplayed his " univerſal ſkill in the modern architecture, by giving us all the five orders " together. However, moſt of the great buildings of Queen Elizabeth's reign, " have a ſtyle peculiar to themſelves both in form and finiſhing; where, though " much of the old Gothic is retained, and great part of the new taſte is adopted, " yet neither predominates; while both, thus indiſtinctly blended, compoſe a " fantaſtic ſpecies, hardly reducible to any claſs or name. One of its characteriſtics " is the affectation of large and lofty windows; where, ſays Bacon, you ſhall " have ſometimes fair houſes ſo full of glaſs, that one cannot tell where to " become, to be out of the ſun."

The marks which conſtitute the character of Gothic, or Saracenical architecture, are its numerous and prominent buttreſſes, its lofty ſpires and pinnacles, its large and ramified windows, its ornamental niches or canopies, its ſculptured ſaints, the delicate lace-work of its fretted roofs, and the profuſion of ornaments laviſhed indiſcriminately over the whole building: but its peculiar diſtinguiſhing characteriſtics are, the ſmall cluſtered pillars and pointed arches, formed by the ſegments of two interſecting circles; which arches, though laſt brought into uſe, are evidently of a more ſimple and obvious conſtruction than the ſemicircular ones; two flat ſtones, with their tops inclined to each other, and touching, form its rudiments, a number of boughs ſtuck into the ground oppoſite each other, and tied together at the top, in order to form a bower, exactly deſcribe it: whereas a ſemicircular arch appears the reſult of deeper contrivance, as conſiſting of more parts; and it ſeems leſs probable, chance, from whence all theſe inventions were

firſt derived, ſhould throw ſeveral wedge-like ſtones between two ſet perpendicular, ſo as exactly to fit and fill up the interval.

BISHOP WARBURTON, in his notes on Pope's Epiſtles, in the octavo edition, has ſome ingenious obſervations on this ſubject, which are given in the note (*a*): to which it may not be improper to add ſome particulars relative to Caen ſtone,

(*a*) Our Gothic anceſtors had juſter and manlier notions of magnificence, on Greek and Roman ideas, than theſe mimics of taſte, who profeſs to ſtudy only claſſic elegance: and becauſe the thing does honour to the genius of thoſe barbarians, I ſhall endeavour to explain it. All our ancient churches are called, without diſtinction, Gothic; but erroneouſly. They are of two ſorts: the one built in the Saxon times; the other in the Norman. Several cathedral and collegiate churches of the firſt ſort are yet remaining, either in whole or in part; of which, this was the original: when the Saxon kings became chriſtian, their piety (which was the piety of the times) conſiſted in building churches at home, and performing pilgrimages abroad, eſpecially to the Holy Land: and theſe ſpiritual exerciſes aſſiſted and ſupported one another. For the moſt venerable, as well as moſt elegant models of religious edifices were then in Paleſtine. From theſe, our Saxon builders took the whole of their ideas; as may be ſeen by comparing the drawings which travellers have given us of the churches yet ſtanding in that country, with the Saxon remains of what we find at home; and particularly in that ſameneſs of ſtyle in the later religious edifices of the Knights Templars, (profeſſedly built upon the model of the church of the Holy Sepulchre at Jeruſalem) with the earlier remains of our Saxon edifices.———Now the architecture of the Holy Land was Grecian, but greatly fallen from its ancient elegance.———Our Saxon performance was indeed a bad copy of it; and as much inferior to the works of St. Helene and Juſtinian, as theirs were to the Grecian models they had followed: yet ſtill the footſteps of ancient art appeared in the circular arches, the entire columns, the diviſion of the entablature, into a ſort of architrave, frize, and corniche, and a ſolidity equally diffuſed over the whole maſs. This, by way of diſtinction, I would call the Saxon architecture.———But our Norman works had a very different original. When the Goths had conquered Spain, and the genial warmth of the climate, and the religion of the old inhabitants, had ripened their wits, and inflamed their miſtaken piety, (both kept in exerciſe by the neighbourhood of the Saracens, through emulation of their ſcience, and averſion to their ſuperſtition) they ſtruck out a new ſpecies of architecture, unknown to Greece and Rome; upon original principles, and ideas much nobler than what had given birth even to claſſical magnificence. For this northern people having been accuſtomed, during the gloom of paganiſm, to worſhip the Deity in groves, (a practice common to all nations) when their new religion required covered edifices, they ingeniouſly projected to make them reſemble groves, as nearly as the diſtance of architecture would permit; at once indulging their old prejudices, and providing for their preſent conveniences, by a cool receptacle, in a ſultry climate: and with what ſkill and ſucceſs they executed the project, by the aſſiſtance of Saracen architects, whoſe exotic ſtyle of building very luckily ſuited their purpoſe, appears from hence, that no attentive obſerver ever viewed a regular avenue of well grown trees, intermixing their branches over head, but it preſently put him in mind of the long viſto through a Gothic cathedral; or ever entered one of the larger and more elegant edifices of this kind, but it repreſented to his imagination an avenue of trees: and this alone is what can be truly called the Gothic ſtyle of building.———Under this idea, of ſo extraordinary a ſpecies of architecture, all the irregular tranſgreſſions againſt art, all the monſtrous offences againſt nature, diſappear; every thing has its reaſon, every thing is in order, and an harmonious whole ariſes from the ſtudious application of means, proper and proportioned to the end. For could the arches be otherwiſe than pointed, when the workmen were to imitate that curve which branches of two oppoſite trees make by their interſection with one another; or could the columns be otherwiſe than ſplit into diſtinct ſhafts, when they were to repreſent the ſtems of a clump of trees, growing cloſe together? On the ſame principles they formed the ſpreading ramification of the ſtone-work in the windows, and the ſtained glaſs in the interſtices; the one to repreſent the branches, and the other the leaves, of an opening grove; and both concurred to preſerve that glo my light which inſpires religious reverence and dread. Laſtly, we ſee the reaſon of their ſtudied averſion to apparent ſolidity in theſe ſtupendous maſſes, deemed ſo abſurd by men accuſtomed to the apparent as well as real ſtrength of Grecian architecture. Had it been only a wanton exerciſe of the artiſt's ſkill, to ſhew he could give real ſtrength without the appearance of any, we might indeed admire his ſuperior ſcience; but we muſt needs condemn his ill judgment. But when one conſiders, that this ſurpriſing lightneſs was neceſſary to complete the execution of his idea of a Sylvan place of worſhip, one cannot ſufficiently a mire the ingenuity of the contrivance. ———This too will account for the contrary qualities in what I call the Saxon arch.tecture. Theſe artiſts copied, as has been ſaid, from the churches in the Holy Land, which were



HORDEOLC · FREDEBRVGE · Hdie angotant tenentes tras in Sudrie.
Rex. W. ten m dnio ~~Wochinges~~ De firma regis E.
Jdm Mashcham ten herold

with which many of our ancient cathedrals are built, as extracted from ſome curious records, originally given in Doctor Ducarrel's Anglo Norman Antiquities (*a*).

I SHALL cloſe this article, with recommending it to ſuch as deſire more knowledge of theſe matters than is communicated in this ſlight compilation, to peruſe Wren's Parentalia, Wharton's Thoughts on Spencer's Fairy Queen, and the Ornaments of Churches conſidered; but, above all, Mr. Bentham's Diſſertation on Saxon and Norman Architecture, prefixed to his Hiſtory of Ely, to which the author of this account eſteems himſelf much beholden.

built on the models of the Grecian architecture, but corrupted by prevailing barbariſm; and ſtill further depraved by a religious idea. The firſt places of Chriſtian worſhip were ſepulchres and ſubterraneous caverns, low and heavy from neceſſity. When Chriſtianity became the religion of the ſtate, and ſumptuous temples began to be erected, they yet, in regard to the firſt pious ages, preſerved the maſſive ſtyle; made ſtill more venerable by the church of the Holy Sepulchre; where this ſtyle was, on a double account, followed and aggravated.

In the note, page 30 of this work, it was hinted, that the coin, ſtone, and facing of the arches, in Gundulph's Tower, was brought from Caen in Normandy: a curious gentleman has favoured me with the following particular, reſpecting this ſtone. Formerly vaſt quantities of this ſtone were brought to England; London-Bridge, Weſtminſter-Abby, and many other edifices, being built therewith. *See Stowe's Survey of London, edit.* 1633, *p.* 31, 32, *&c. See alſo Rot. Liter. patent. Norman. de anno* 6 *Hen. V. P.* 1 *m.* 22.—" De quarreris albæ petræ in ſuburbio villæ de " Caen annexandis dominio regis pro reparatione eccleſiarum, caſtrorum, et fortalitiorum, tam in Anglia quam in " Normannia." *See alſo Rot. Normanniæ, de anno* 9 *Hen. V. m.* 31, *dors.*—" Arreſtando naves pro tranſportatione " lapidum et petrarum, pro conſtructione abbatiæ Sancti Petri de Weſtminſter a partibus Cadomi." *Ibid. m.* 30.—" Pro domo Jeſu de Bethleem de Shene, de lapidibus in quarreris circa villam de Cadomo capiendis pro conſtructione " eccleſiæ, clauſtri, et cellarum domus prædictæ." *See alſo Rot. Franciæ, de anno* 35 *Hen. VI. m.* 2.—" Pro " ſalvo conductu ad ſupplicationem abbatis et conventus Beati Petri Weſtmonaſterii, pro mercatoribus de Caen in " Normannia, veniendis in Angliam cum lapidibus de Caen, pro ædificatione monaſterii prædicti. Teſte rege, apud " Weſtm. 15 die Auguſti." *See alſo Rot. Franciæ, de anno* 38 *Hen. VI. m.* 23.—" De ſalvo conductu pro nave " de Caen in regnum Angliæ revenienda, cum lapidibus de Caen pro reparatione monaſterii de Weſtminſter. Teſte " rege apud Weſt. 9 die Maii.—Now, however, the exportation of this ſtone out of France, is ſo ſtrictly prohibited, " that, when it is to be ſent by ſea, the owner of the ſtone, as well as the maſter of the veſſel on board which it is " ſhipped, is obliged to give ſecurity, that it ſhall not be ſold to foreigners."

DOMESDAY-BOOK.

DOMESDAY-BOOK, according to Sir Henry Spelman, if not the moſt ancient, yet, without controverſy (*a*), the moſt venerable monument of Great Britain, contains an account of all the lands of England; except the four northern counties, Northumberland, Cumberland, Weſtmoreland, Durham, and part of Lancaſhire; and deſcribes the quantity and particular nature of them; whether meadow, paſture, arable, wood, or waſte land: it mentions their rents and taxations; and records the ſeveral poſſeſſors of lands, their number, and diſtinct degrees. King Alfred, about the year 900, compoſed a book of like nature; of which this was in ſome meaſure a copy.

THIS work, according to the Red Book in the Exchequer, was begun, by order of William the Conqueror, with the advice of his parliament, in the year of our Lord 1080, and completed in the year 1086 (*b*). The reaſon given for doing it, as aſſigned by ſeveral ancient records and hiſtories, was, that every man ſhould be ſatisfied with his own right; and not uſurp, with impunity, what belonged to another (*c*). Beſides theſe, other motives ſeem to have occaſioned

(*a*) Mr. Selden, in his preface to Eadmerus, p. 4, ſpeaking of Domeſday, ſays, "Neque puto alibi in orbe "Chriſtiano actorum publicorum autographa, quorum ſaltem ratio aliqua habenda eſt, extare quæ non ſæculis "aliquot his cedunt."

(*b*) This alſo appears, from the concurrent teſtimony of divers ancient writers; and from an entry written at the end of the ſecond volume of the work itſelf; where, in a large coeval hand, in capitals, are the words following: "Anno milleſimo octogeſſimo ſexto ab incarnatione Domini, vigeſimo vero regni Willi, facta eſt iſta deſcriptio, "non ſolum per hos tres comitatus, ſed etiam per alios."——My lord Littleton, in his Hiſtory of Henry the "Second, vol. ii. page 289, ſays, "It was made by order of William the Firſt, with the advice of his parliament, "the year one thouſand and eighty-ſix; but it ſeems not to have been finiſhed till the following year." His lordſhip does not cite any authority, to prove this ſuppoſition.

(*c*) The author of the Dialogues de Scaccario, who wrote in the time of Henry the Second, book i. cap. xvi. gives this account of it, ſpeaking of William the Conqueror: "Demum ne quid deeſſe videretur ad omnem "totius providentiæ ſummam, communicato conſilio, diſcretiſſimos a latere ſuo deſtinavit viros per regnum in "circuitu, ab his itaque totius terræ deſcriptio diligens facta eſt, tam in nemoribus quam paſcuis, et pratis, nec "non et agriculturis, et verbis communibus annotata, in librum redacta eſt; ut videlicet quilibet jure ſuo contentus "alienum non uſurpet impune. Fit autem deſcriptio per comitatus per centuriatas et hydas, prænotato in ipſo "capite regis nomine et deinde feriatim aliorum procerum nominibus appoſitis ſecundum ſtatus ſui dignitatem, qui "videlicet de rege tenent in capite. Apponuntur autem ſingulis numeri ſecundum ordinem ſic diſpoſitis, per quos "inferius in ipſa libri ſerie, quæ ad eos pertinent facilius occurrant. Hic liber ab indigenis Domus-Dei nuncapatur, "id eſt, dies judicii, per metaphoram. Sicut enim diſtricti et terribilis examinis illius noviſſimi ſententia, nulla "tergiverſationis arte valet eludi: ſic cum orta fuit in regno contentio de his rebus quæ illic annotantur; cum "ventum fuerit ad librum, ſententia ejus infatuari non poteſt, vel impune declinari. Ob hoc nos eundem librum "judiciorum nominavimus; non quod in eo de præpoſitis aliquibus dubiis feratur ſententia; ſed quod ab eo, ſicut "a prædicto judicio non licet ulla ratione diſcedere." *Drateg. de Scacc. page* 30, 31, *publiſhed by Mr. Madox.*

this ſurvey. Sir Martin Wright, in his Introduction to the Law of Tenures, appears to be of this opinion; which he expreſſes in the following words: "It "is very remarkable, that William the Firſt, about the twentieth year of his "reign, juſt when the general ſurvey of England, called Domeſday-Book, is "ſuppoſed to be finiſhed, and not till then, ſummoned all the great men and "landholders in the kingdom to London and Saliſbury, to do their homage, and "ſwear their fealty to him; by doing whereof, the Saxon Chronicler ſuppoſes, "that, at that time, the proceres, et omnes prædia tenentes, ſe illi ſubdidere, "ejuſque facti ſunt Vaſalli; ſo that we may reaſonably ſuppoſe, Firſt, That this "general homage and fealty was done at this time, (nineteen or twenty years "after the acceſſion of William the Firſt) in conſequence of ſomething new; "or elſe that engagements ſo important to the maintenance and ſecurity of a new "eſtabliſhment, had been required long before; and if ſo, it is probable that "tenures were then new; inaſmuch as homage and fealty were, and ſtill are, "mere feudal engagements, binding the homager to all the duties and obſervances "of a feudal tenant. Secondly, That as this general homage and fealty was "done about the time that Domeſday-Book was finiſhed, and not before, we "may ſuppoſe that that ſurvey was taken upon or ſoon after our anceſtors "conſent to tenures, in order to diſcover the quantity of every man's fee, and to "fix his homage. This ſuppoſition is the more probable, becauſe it is not likely "that a work of this nature was undertaken without ſome immediate reaſon; "and no better reaſon can be aſſigned why it was undertaken at this time, or "indeed why this ſurvey ſhould be taken at all; there being at that time extant, "a general ſurvey of the whole kingdom, made by Alfred."

The Saxon chronicle, publiſhed by Biſhop Gibſon, thus mentions it; "Poſt hæc, tenuit rex magnum concilium, "et graves ſermones habuit cum ſuis proceribus de hâc terra, quo modo incoleretur, et a quibus hominibus. "Mittebat ideirco per totam Anglorum terram in ſingulos comitatus ſuos ſervos, quibus permiſit ſcrutari quot "hydarum centenæ eſſent in comitatu, et quantum cenſus annui deberet percipere, ex eo comitatu. Permiſit "etiam deſcribi, quantum terrarum ejus archiepiſcopi haberent, et diœceſani epiſcopi, ac ejus abbates, ejus "comites; et ne longior in hoc ſim, quid aut quantum unuſquiſque haberet, qui terras poſſideret in Anglorum "gente, ſive terrarum, ſive pecoris, quantum illud pecunia valeret. Tam diligenter luſtrari terram permiſit, ut "ne unica eſſet hyda, aut virgata terræ, nequidem (quod dictu turpe, verum in factu turpe non exiſtimarit) bos, "aut vacca, aut porcus prætermittebatur, quod non is retulerat in cenſum: omniaque poſtea ſcripta ad eum "efferebantur." *Page* 186, *anno* 1085.

In the eſcheat rolls of Edward the Third, the occaſion and manner of making this ſurvey, and its authority, are declared nearly in the ſame words of the author of the Dialogues de Scaccario. It is thus ſpoken of in the annals of Waverly: "Miſit rex Willielmus juſtitiarios ſuos per unamquamque Scyram, id eſt provinciam Angliæ, "et iniquirere fecit per jus jurandum quot hidæ, id eſt jugera uni aratro ſufficientia per annum, eſſent in unaquaque "villa, et quot animalia; hinc autem fecit inquiri quid unaquaque urbs, caſtellum, vicus, villa, flumen, palus, "ſilva reddit per annum; hæc autem omnia in chartis ſcripta delata ſunt ad regem, et in theſauros repoſita ſunt "hodie ſervantur.—Rex tenuit curiam ſuam in natali apud Gloceſtre, ad paſcha apud Wintoniam, ad pentecoſtem "apud Londoniam: deinde accipiens hominium omnium terrariorum Angliæ cujuſcunque feodi eſſent, juramentum "fidelitatis, recipere non diſtulit." *Page* 133.

Mr. Agard, in his Preface to the Obſolete Words in Domeſday-Book, aſſigns an additional reaſon for the Conqueror's making this ſurvey; "Conqueſtor ſub ipſo ſuo ingreſſu regnum, hoc annuo tributo (Danegelt vocatum) "taxatum invenit; pro quo colligendo, Rex Ethelredus totum regnum in hidas diviſit, quarum ſingula ſex ſolido-

For the execution of this ſurvey, commiſſioners were ſent into every county and ſhire; and juries ſummoned in each hundred, out of all orders of freemen, from barons down to the loweſt farmers; who were, upon oath, to inform the commiſſioners the name of each manor, and that of its owner; alſo by whom it was held in the time of Edward the Confeſſor; the number of hides, the quantity of wood, of paſture, and meadow land; how many ploughs were in the demeſne, and how many in the tenanted part of it; how many mills, how many fiſh-ponds, or fiſheries belonged to it; with the value of the whole together in the time of King Edward, as well as when granted by King William, and at the time of this ſurvey; alſo whether it was capable of improvement, or of being advanced in its value: they were likewiſe directed to return the tenants of every degree, the quantity of lands now and formerly held by each of them; and what was the number of the villains or ſlaves; and alſo the number and kinds of their cattle and live ſtock. Theſe inquiſitions being firſt methodized in the county, were afterwards ſent up to the king's Exchequer; ſome of the particulars, concerning which the jury were directed to enquire, were thought unneceſſary to be inſerted. This ſurvey, at the time in which it was made, gave great offence to the people; and occaſioned a jealouſy that it was intended for the foundation of ſome new impoſition.

Notwithstanding the precaution taken by the Conqueror to have this ſurvey faithfully and impartially executed, it appears, from indiſputable authority (*a*), that a falſe return was given in by ſome of the commiſſioners; and that, as it is ſaid, out of a pious motive. This was in the caſe of the abby of Croyland in Lincolnſhire; the poſſeſſions of which were greatly under-rated, both with regard to quantity and value. Perhaps ſimilar, or more intereſted inducements, may have operated in other inſtances. A deviation from truth, ſo clearly proved, fully juſtifies a ſuſpicion of the veracity of any record or teſtimony. Perhaps more

" perſolvere tenetur.—Cum vero Rex Willielmus illud aliquando majoris, aliquando minoris emolumenti eſſe in " comperto habuiſſet, optimum eſſe duxit, ut inquiſitio per totum regnum haberetur, qua dignoſceret, quantum " ſingula oppida, villæ, et hamletta numerare tenerentur; et ut libro Domeſday ſcriberetur his verbis, pro vi " ſolidis. Hidæ, vel carucatis ſe defendit, quod æque valet ac ſi diceret, pro tot ſolidis. Hidæ, vel carucatis " Danegelt perſolvit." The author of the notes to the Regiſter of Original Writs, p. 14, erroneouſly aſſerts, that this book was made in the time of Edward the Confeſſor. His words are: " Fait aſſavoir que le livre de " Domeſday fuit fait en temps de Seint Edw. le roy, et touts les terres que ſurent en le main de dit Seint E. all " temps que le livre fuiſt fait ſount ancien demene, et les terres que ſurent adonques en auter main ſount Frank-" fee." This miſtake hath been adopted by Fitzherbert.

(*a*) Ingulphus, abbot of Croyland, himſelf confeſſes it, in his account of this ſurvey. His own words are: " Totam terram deſcripſit, nec erat hida in tota Anglia, quin valorem ejus et poſſeſſorem ſuum ſciyit; nec lacus " nec locus aliquis, quin in regis rotulo extitit deſcriptus, ac ejus reditus et proventus, ipſa poſſeſſio et ejus poſſeſſor " regiæ notitiæ manifeſtatus, juxta taxatorum fidem qui electi de qualibet patria territorium proprium deſcribebant. " Illi penes noſtrum monaſterium benevoli et amantes, non *ad verum pretium* nec *ad verum ſpatium* noſtrum " monaſterium librabant, miſericorditer præcaventes in futurum regiis exactionibus et aliis oneribus, *piiſſima* " nobis benevolentia providentes.—In illo vero deſcripti ſunt, non tantum totius terræ comitatus centuriæ et " decuriæ, ſylvæ, ſaltus, et villæ univerſæ; ſed in omni territorio quot carucatæ terræ, quot jugera, et quot " acræ, quæ paſcua et paludes, quæ tenementa, et qui tenentes continebantur."

Ingulphus, printed among the Scriptores Ang. vol. i. p. 80, 81.

of theſe pious returns were diſcovered; as it is ſaid, Ralph Flambard, miniſter to William Rufus, propoſed the making a freſh and more rigorous inquiſition; but it was never executed.

NEVERTHELESS, in deſpight of this impeachment of its credibility, "the "authority of Domeſday-Book (*a*), in point of tenure, hath never been permitted "to be called in queſtion; for inſtance, when it hath been neceſſary to diſtinguiſh "whether lands were held in ancient demeſne, or in what other manner, recourſe "hath always been had to Domeſday-Book, and to that only, to determine the "doubt. If lands were ſet down in that book, under the title of Terra Regis, "or if it was ſaid there, Rex Habet ſuch land, or ſuch a town, it was determined "to be the king's ancient demeſne. If the land or town was therein ſet down "under the name of a private lord or ſubject, then it was determined to have "been at the time of the ſurvey the land of ſuch private perſon, and not ancient "demeſne." Indeed, its name is ſaid to have been derived from its definitive authority, from which, as from the ſentence pronounced at Doomſday, or the Day of Judgment, there could be no appeal. But Stowe aſſigns another reaſon for this appellation; Domeſday-Book being, according to him, a corruption of Domus Dei-Book; a title given it becauſe heretofore depoſited in the king's treaſury, in a place of the church of Weſtminſter, or Wincheſter, called Domus-Dei: but this laſt explanation has but few advocates. This record is compriſed in two volumes; one a large folio, the other a quarto. The firſt is written on 382 double pages of vellum, in a ſmall, but plain character; each page having

(*a*) The tallages formerly aſſeſſed upon the king's tenants in ancient demeſne, were uſually greater than the tallages upon perſons in the counties at large; and therefore, when perſons were wrongfully tallaged with thoſe in ancient demeſne, it was uſual for them to petition the Crown to be tallaged with the community of the county at large: upon this the king's writ iſſued to the barons of the Exchequer, to acquit the party aggrieved of ſuch tallage, in caſe, upon ſearch of Domeſday-Book, the barons found the lands were not in ancient demeſne.

Madox Firma Burgi, p. 5 and 6. Hiſt. of the Exchequer, p. 499, 500.

The pound ſo often mentioned in Domeſday-Book (ſays Sir Robert Atkins, in his Hiſtory of Gloucerſhire) for reſerved rent, was the weight of a pound in ſilver, conſiſting of twelve ounces, which is equal in weight to three pounds and two ſhillings of our preſent money: the ſame weight in gold is now worth forty-eight pounds.

The ſhilling mentioned in the ſame book, conſiſted of twelve pence, and is equal in weight to three ſhillings of our money. The denomination of a ſhilling was of different value in different nations; and often of a different value in the ſame nation, as the government thought fit to alter it. There was no ſuch piece of money ever coined in this kingdom, until the year 1504, in the latter end of the reign of King Henry the Seventh. In the Saxon times, there went forty-eight ſhillings to the pound; then the ſhilling was accounted at five pence; and every one of thoſe pence being of the weight of our three pence, a ſhilling then muſt make fifteen pence; and forty-eight times fifteen pence, a pound weight. In the Norman time, and ever ſince, a ſhilling was accounted twelve pence; and every penny, as aforeſaid, weighing three pence, there muſt be the weight of three of our ſhillings in one ſhilling of the Norman computation: and conſequently, twenty Norman ſhillings do likewiſe make a pound weight. Silver pence were anciently the only current coin of England; and afterwards, about the reign of King John, ſilver halfpence and ſilver farthings were introduced. The penny was the greateſt piece of ſilver coin until the year 1353, when King Edward the Third began to coin groats; and they had their name from their large ſize, for Groſs did ſignify Great. Crowns and half crowns were firſt coined in the reign of King Edward the Sixth, in the year 1551, about one hundred and ſixty years ſince. *Page* 5.

It may not be improper to add, that a carucate, hide or plow land, was certain quantity of land, about 120 acres.

a double column. Some of the capital letters and principal paſſages are touched with red ink, as ſhewn in the ſpecimen; and ſome have ſtrokes of red ink run croſs them, as if ſcratched out. This volume contains the deſcription of thirty-one counties, arranged and written as follows:

Chent	— fol.	1	Midelſexe	— fol.	126	Northantſcire	— fol.	219
Sudſex	—	16	Hertfordſcire	-	132	Ledeceſtreſcire	—	230
Sudrie	—	30	Bockinghamſcire	-	143	Warwicſcire	—	238
Hantſcire	—	38	Oxenfordſcire	—	154	Staffordſcire	—	245
Berrocheſcire	-	56	Glowceſt'ſcire	—	162	Sciropeſcire	—	252
Wilteſcire	-	64	Wiriceſtreſcire	—	172	Ceſtreſcire	- -	262
Dorſette	—	75	Herefordſcire	—	179	Derbyſcire	—	272
Sumerſite	—	86	Grantbr'ſcire	—	189	Snotingh'ſcire	—	280
Deveneſcire	—	100	Huntedunſcire	—	203	Roteland	— f. 293,	367
Cornualgie	—	120	Bedefordſcire	—	209	Eurvicſcire	— 298,	379

Lindeſig, or Lincolnſhire, fol. 336, divided into the weſt riding, north riding, and eaſt riding.

Towards the beginning of each country, there is a catalogue of the capital lords or great land-holders, who poſſeſſed any thing in it; beginning with the king, and then naming the great lords, according to their rank and dignity.

The other volume is in quarto; it is written on 450 double pages of vellum, but in a ſingle column, and in a large but very fair character. It contains the counties of

Eſſex, fol. 1; Norfolk, fol. 109; Suffolk, fol. 281, to the end.

Part of the county of Rutland is included in that of Northampton; and part of Lancaſhire in the counties of York and Cheſter.

From the great care formerly taken for the preſervation of this ſurvey, may be gathered the eſtimation of its importance; the Dialogue de Scaccario ſays; "Liber ille (Domeſday) ſigilli regis comes eſt individuus in theſauro."

Until of late years, it has been kept under three different locks and keys; one in the cuſtody of the treaſurer, and the others of the two chamberlains of the Exchequer. It is now depoſited in the Chapter Houſe at Weſtminſter, where it may be conſulted, on paying to the proper officers a fee of 6*s*. 8*d*. for a ſearch, and four pence per line for a tranſcript.

Many copies of this ancient record, for particular counties, have been printed; and many more are in public and private libraries. A catalogue of them are given in an account of Domeſday-Book, written by Philip Carteret Webb, Eſq. and publiſhed in 1756, by the Antiquarian Society: another has been ſince printed by Richard Gough, Eſq. in his uſeful book, entitled, Anecdotes of Britiſh Topography, ranged under the different counties. As it appears there is no complete copy of the whole, a laudable deſign was ſometime ago ſet on foot for engraving a fac-ſimile copy of it; but ſeveral difficulties occurring, it is ſaid to be changed, for that of printing it with types: but this ſeems not entirely to anſwer the end, there being many abbreviations in the original, the readings of which

are diſputable. The intended copy will therefore only give the ſenſe of the editors, without leaving every one to judge for themſelves. It has indeed been ſuggeſted, that of the doubtful paſſages, exact copies might be engraved; but then it remains to be agreed what paſſages ſhall be deemed doubtful.

END OF THE PREFACE.

ERRATA.

INTRODUCTION, line 2, page 2, for *is* read *are*.
PREFACE, note (*u*), line 12, page 4, for *prædicti* read *prædicto*.
Note (*c*), line 1, page 7, for *une* read *un*.
Note (*a*), line 1, page 9, for *François* read *Francoiſe*.
Note (*b*), line 4, page 9, for *nevorum* read *nervorum*.
Note (*a*), line 1, page 10, for *Anglo* read *Anglos*.
Note (*c*), line 2, page 10, for *catapulta* read *catapultae*.
Note (*g*), line 2, page 10, for *creberrimas* read *creberrimos*.
Note (*a*), line 5, page 11, for *primam* read *primum*.
Note (*d*), line 2, page 11, for *rampebant* read *rumpebant*.
——— 9, page 12, for *one* read *thoſe*.
Note (*a*), line 2, page 13, for *plutes* read *plutei*.
——— 15, ——— for *qnod* read *quod*.
———, the laſt line, page 13, for *terrum* read *terram*.
Note (*b*), line 3, page 13, for *fuſſodicnda* read *fuffodienda*.
Note (*c*), line 5, page 15, for *leqnel* read *lequel*.
——— 6, ——— for *eontre* read *contre*.
——— 17, ——— for *jehan* read *Jehan*.
——— 24, ——— for *Jc* read *Je*.
Preface, line 21, page 17, for *or* read *of*.
Note (*a*), line 1, page 43, for *hærum* read *harum*.
Preface, line 30, page 50, for *over-run* read *over-ran*.
Note (*a*), line 10, page 53, for *ct* read *ad*.
Note (*d*), line 5, page 55, for *does* read *do*.
Preface, line 15, page 65, for *Henry the Firſt* read *Henry the Second*.
——— line 21, page 66, for *diſſimular* read *diſſimilar*.
——— line 4, page 67, read, *or columns whereof*.
——— line 43, ——— for *an other* read *others*.
Preface, line 2, page 72, for *borne* read *born*.
——— line 11, page 72, put a *colon* after *window:* and eraſe the *comma* after *tomb*,
——— line 12, ——— put *where* immediately after *arch*.
Note (*a*), line 71, page 77, for *was* read *were*.

N. B. The Errata to the Work will be given with the laſt Volume.

Publiſhed 1ſt March 1772 by S Hooper N°25 Ludgate hill . B. Godfrey . Sc.

BEDFORD BRIDGE.

THIS bridge ſtands upon the river Ouſe, which runs through, and almoſt equally divides the town. Hiſtory is ſilent, both as to the founder, and time of its conſtruction. Tradition ſays it was erected with part of the materials of the caſtle, demoliſhed by King Henry the Third, in the year 1224. It is highly probable this was built in the place of a much older bridge; as by an extract from Roger Hoveden's Chronicle, in Leland's Collectanea, it appears, that the part of the town, on the ſouthern bank of the river, was built by Edward the Elder, in the year 912. It ſeems, therefore, almoſt impoſſible the inhabitants could ſo long have wanted this neceſſary means of communication between the north and ſouth parts of the town.

THE caſtle was demoliſhed on the following occaſion: King John having taken it from William de Beauchamp, beſtowed it on Falco de Brent, or Breant, raiſed by his favour, from a private ſoldier, to great riches and power. This man having committed divers acts of violence on the neighbouring inhabitants, and dilapidated ſeveral religious houſes and churches, particularly that of St. Paul, for the purpoſe of repairing and ſtrengthening his caſtle, was, by Martin Paterſhul, Thomas de Multon, and Henry Braybrooke, judges, then ſitting at Dunſtable, fined in the ſum of three thouſand pounds.

FALCO being greatly enraged thereat, and conſidering it as an injury done him, ſent his brother to ſeize theſe judges, and bring them priſoners to Bedford. They, apprized of

his intentions, fled; but Braybrooke being taken, was carried to the caſtle, where he ſuffered a thouſand inſults and indignities.

The king, highly incenſed at this audacious violation of the laws, and determined to bring the offenders to exemplary puniſhment, laid ſiege to the caſtle; which, after a reſiſtance of ſixty days, ſurrendered at diſcretion. He then cauſed the governor, William de Brean, brother to Falco, with twenty-four knights, and eighty ſoldiers, to be hanged, and the fortifications to be levelled with the ground. The ſite and dwelling-houſe he returned to William de Beauchamp, and gave the ſtones, ſome to the canons of Newenham and Chadwell; ſome to the church of St. Paul; and, according to tradition, applied the remainder to the building of the bridge. At this ſiege the king was aſſiſted by Stephen, archbiſhop of Canterbury, who brought him a conſiderable and well-appointed body of men. Falco taking refuge in a church at Coventry, abjured the realm; or, as ſome writers ſay, was, with his wife and child, ſhortly after baniſhed.

Camden quotes the following curious account of the ſiege, from a writer cotemporary with the facts deſcribed:

"On the eaſt ſide, were one petrary and two mangonels daily applying upon the tower. "On the weſt two mangonels battering the old tower; as alſo one upon the ſouth, and another "upon the north part; which beat down two paſſages through the walls that were next "them: beſides theſe, there were two machines contrived of wood, ſo as to be higher than "the caſtle and tower, erected for the purpoſe of the baliſtarii, or gunners and watchmen; "they had alſo ſeveral machines, wherein the gunners and ſlingers lay in ambuſh; there was, "moreover, another machine called Cattus; under which the diggers, who were employed "to undermine the walls of the tower and caſtle, came in and out. The caſtle was taken "by four aſſaults: in the firſt, was taken the barbican; in the ſecond, the outer ballia; at "the third attack, the wall by the tower was thrown down by the miners; where, with "great danger, they poſſeſſed themſelves of the inner ballia; through a chink, at the "fourth aſſault, the miners ſet fire to the tower, ſo that the ſmoke burſt out, and the tower "chelf was cloven to that degree, as to ſhew viſibly ſome broad chinks; whereupon the "enemy ſurrendered."

This bridge is one hundred and ſixteen yards in length, four and a half broad, and has a parapet three feet and a half high; this, it is ſaid, was erected in the reign of Queen Mary, out of the ruins of St. Dunſtan's church, which ſtood on the ſouth ſide of the bridge. It has ſeven arches, and near the center were two gate-houſes; that on the north being uſed for a priſon, and that on the ſouth ſerved as a ſtore-houſe for the arms and ammunition of the troops quartered here. Theſe gate-houſes were taken down in the year 1765; and ſix lamps ſet up on poſts at proper diſtances. The bridge is kept in repair by the corporation, who have a very conſiderable eſtate.

In this view, which was taken in the year 1761, only the north gate-houſe appears.

BEDFORD BRIDGE.

PLATE II.

In this View both the gatehouſes, formerly ſtanding on this bridge, are ſhewn. In the former Plate, at the point from whence it was taken, which was choſen as the moſt pictureſque, only one of them could be ſeen. As theſe buildings have been taken down, it has been intimated to the Author, that a View, in which they might both appear, would be agreeable to ſeveral curious perſons, as more particularly preſerving the appearance of this ancient bridge. In obedience to this opinion, he here preſents a ſecond View, happy to have it in his power to oblige the Encouragers of his Work.

This drawing was made anno 1760.

BUSTLESHAM, BYSHAM-MONTAGUE; OR, BYSHAM MONASTERY, BERKSHIRE.

ROBERT DE FERRARIIS, in the reign of King Stephen, gave the Manor of Buſtleſham to the Templars; who thereupon made here a Preceptory for the Knights of that Order. Upon their diſſolution in the reign of King Edward II. this ſeems not to have paſſed with the greateſt part of their eſtates to the Knights of St. John of Jeruſalem; for they had before granted it away in fee to Hugh de Spenſer, jun. Afterwards it came to William Montacute, Earl of Saliſbury, who, A. D. 1338, built a Priory here for Canons of the Order of St. Auguſtine, which was endowed, 26 Hen. VIII. with 285l. 11s. ob. per ann. Dugdale; 327l. 4s. 6d. Speed. The Prior and Convent having ſurrendered this Monaſtery 5th July, 1536, King Henry VIII. in the year following, refounded and more amply endowed it with lands of the late diſſolved Abbey of Chertſey, and the Priories of Cardigan, Bethkelert, Ankerwike, Little Marlo, Medmenham, &c. to the value of 661l. 14s. 9d. per ann. for the maintenance of an Abbot, who was to have the privilege of wearing a mitre, and thirteen Benedictine Monks. But this new Abbey was of ſhort continuance, being ſurrendered, 30th of Hen. VIII. June 19th 1539, three years after its inſtitution.

THE ſite of it was granted, 7th of Ed. VI. to Sir Edward Hoby, in whoſe deſcendants it continued till the year 1768; when the laſt of that name dying, bequeathed it to John Mill, Eſq. the preſent proprietor, who by Act of Parliament

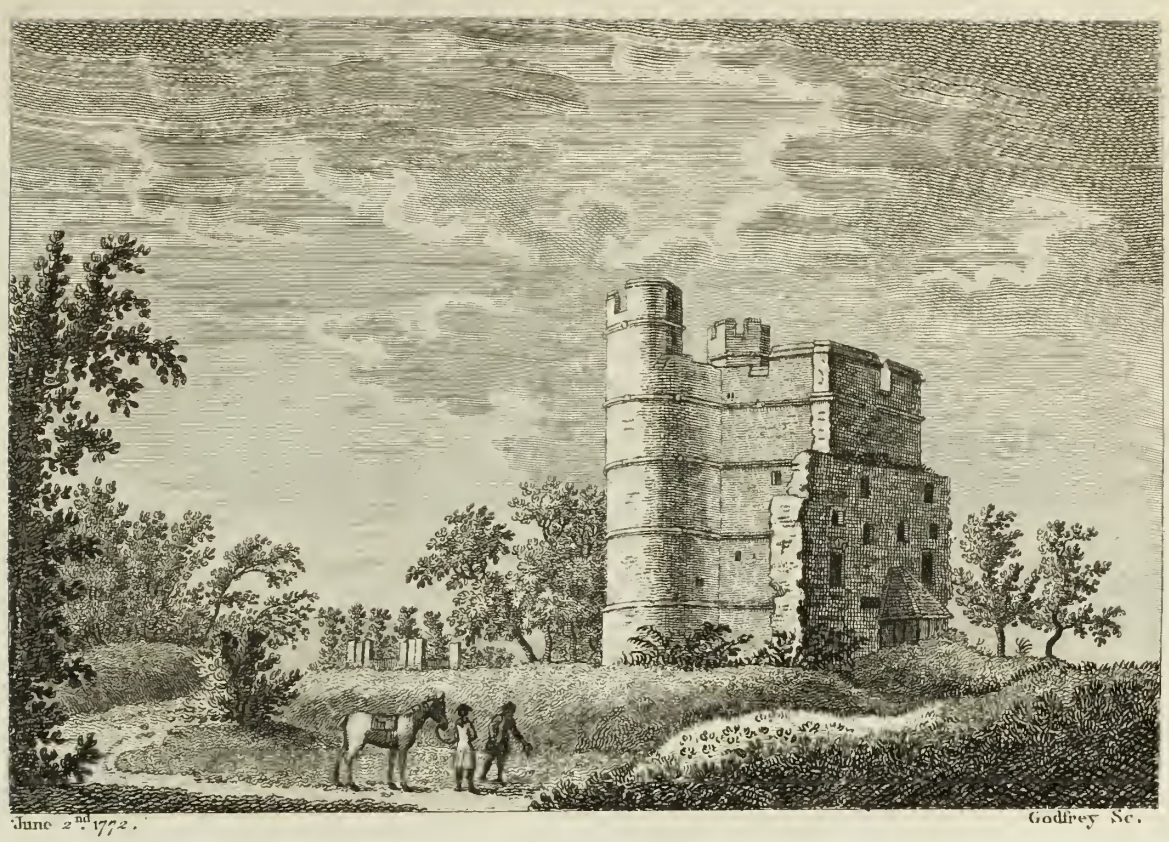
took upon him the name of Hoby. In the charter of the firſt foundation, this Monaſtery is ſaid to be dedicated to our Lord Jeſus Chriſt, and the Bleſſed Virgin his Mother; and in that of the ſecond foundation to the Bleſſed Virgin Mary; yet, in the time of Richard II. and in both the ſurrenders, it is ſtyled the Conventual Church of the Holy Trinity.

At the Diſſolution a penſion of 66l. 13s. 4d. was aſſigned to Abbot Cowdrey, who had, as I find, (ſays Browne Willis) either voided the ſame by death or preferment, before the year 1553; when only theſe following penſions remained in charge, viz. Will Walker 7l. John Mylleſt, Will Roke, Will Byggs, John Rolfe, Edward Stephenſon 5l. each. Beſides 14l. 13s. 4d. in annuities.

Hither, with the licence of Henry V. the bones of the founder, John Montacute, Earl of Saliſbury, were removed by Maud his widow, from the Abbey of Cirenceſter; and here alſo, according to Dugdale's Baronage, ſeveral others of that family lie interred.

This Abbey ſtands in the eaſternmoſt part of the County, near the banks of the Thames, about two miles north of the road leading from Maidenhead to Henley. Tradition ſays, Queen Elizabeth once reſided here. Since that time the Houſe has been greatly repaired and moderniſed, and has ſerved as a manſion for ſeveral reſpectable families.

This View was drawn Anno 1760.



DUNNINGTON CASTLE, BERKSHIRE.

THIS caſtle ſtands on an eminence, about a mile from Newbury, half a mile from Spinham Sands (the ancient Spina of Antoninus) and a ſmall diſtance from the little village of Dunnington; it is north of all theſe places, and not far from the rivulet of Lambourne.

BY a munuſcript in the Cotton Library, it appears that, in the time of Edward the Second, it belonged to Walter Abberbury, ſon and heir of Thomas Abberbury, who gave the king C. s. for it; and towards the latter part of the reign of King Richard the Second, Sir Richard Atterbury or Abberbury, who was a favourite of that king, obtained a licence to rebuild it: from him it deſcended to his ſon Richard, of whom, according to Urry, it was purchaſed by that prince of Engliſh poets Geoffry Chaucer.

HITHER, about the year 1397, in the ſeventieth year of his age, that bard retired, in order to taſte the ſweets of contemplation and rural quiet, having ſpent the greateſt part of his life in the hurry of buſineſs and intrigues of a court; during which time he had ſeverely experienced the mutability of fortune. Here he ſpent the laſt two or three years of his life, in a felicity he had not before known; but on the death of the king, going to court, to ſolicit the continuation of ſome of his grants, he ſickened, and died in London, in the year 1400.

BISHOP GIBSON, in his edition of Camden, ſays, "Here was an oak ſtanding, till within theſe few years, "commonly called Chaucer's oak; under which he is ſaid to have penned many of his famous poems;" and Mr. Urry, relating the above circumſtance, adds, "Mr. Evelin gives a particular account of this tree; and ſays, "there were three of them planted by Chaucer; the King's oak, the Queen's oak, and Chaucer's oak. The firſt "of theſe traditions is, in all likelihood, a miſtake; as moſt, if not all, of Chaucer's poems were written before he "retired to this place: but the latter (namely, that he ſtudied under an oak of his own planting at Dunnington) "is an abſolute impoſſibility, ſeeing that he was not in poſſeſſion of this eſtate above three years."

HIS ſon, Thomas Chaucer, who had been chief-butler to King Richard the Second, and ſeveral times ambaſſador to France, ſucceeded to the caſtle; with his daughter Alice, it went to her third huſband William de la Pole, firſt earl, and afterwards duke, of Suffolk, who reſided chiefly here and at Ewlham. This lord, abuſing the power he had over that weak prince, Henry the Sixth, enraged the commons ſo much, that they procured his baniſhment; and the partizans of the duke of York, dreading his return, ſeized him in Dover Road, whilſt on his paſſage, and cut off his head on the ſide of a cockboat. His body was buried at the chartereuſe at Hull. At his deceaſe the caſtle came to his ſon John, and from him deſcended to Edmond de la Pole, duke of Suffolk, the laſt

of that name; who, engaging in treaſonable practices againſt Henry the Seventh, was executed, and his eſtates conſequently eſcheated to the crown; where Dunnington remained, at leaſt, till the thirty-ſeventh of Henry the Eighth, as appears by an act of parliament then paſſed, whereby that king was authoriſed to erect his caſtle of Dunnington, with three other places therein named, into as many honours; and to annex to them ſuch lands as he ſhould think proper.

It afterwards came into the poſſeſſion of Charles Brandon, duke of Suffolk, probably by the grant of Henry the Eighth; and was entire in Camden's time, who thus deſcribes it: "A ſmall, but very neat caſtle, ſeated on the "browe of a woody hill, having a fine proſpect, and windows on all ſides very lightſome."

In the reign of King James the Firſt it belonged to a family of the name of Packer; and in the time of the Civil-wars, was owned by Mr. John Packer; when it was fortified as a garriſon for the king, and the government entruſted to Colonel Boys, being a poſt of great importance, commanding the high-road leading from the Weſt to London, and that from Oxford to Newbury.

During theſe troubles it was twice beſieged: once on the thirty-firſt of July, 1644, by Lieutenant general Middleton, who was repulſed with the loſs of one colonel, eight captains, one ſerjeant-major, and many inferior officers and ſoldiers: and again, September the twenty-ſeventh, in the ſame year, by Colonel Horton, who raiſing a batterry againſt it, at the foot of a hill near Newbury, fired upwards of a thouſand ſhot, by which he demoliſhed three of the towers, and a part of the wall. During this attack, the governor, in a ſally, beat the enemy out of their trenches, and killed a lieutenant-colonel and the chief engineer, with many private men. At length, after a ſiege of nineteen days, the place was relieved by the king; who, at Newbury, rewarded the governor with the honour of knighthood.

After the ſecond battle of Newbury, the king retiring towards Oxford in the night, left his heavy baggage, ammunition and artillery here. The place was ſummoned by the parliamentary generals, who threatened that, if it was not ſurrendered, they would not leave one ſtone upon another. To this Sir John Boys returned no other anſwer than, "That he was not bound to repair it; but, however, would, by God's help, keep the ground after-"wards." This was the favourable moment for totally ruining the king's affairs; but the earl of Mancheſter and Sir William Waller ſuffered it to eſcape; for, either on account of a diſagreement between them, or for ſome other reaſon, nothing farther was done; and the king, a few days afterwards, came unexpectedly, at the head of a body of horſe, and eſcorted his artillery and baggage to Oxford.

After the Civil-war was over, Mr. Packer pulled down the ruinous parts of the building, and with the materials erected the houſe ſtanding under it, now in the occupation of Mark Baſket, eſq. The caſtle at preſent belongs to Doctor Hartley, who married the heireſs of the name of Packer.

From an accurate plan, made by an officer who reſides near the ſpot, I am enabled to give not only the figure and dimenſions of the caſtle when entire, but alſo to deſcribe the works thrown up in the Civil-wars; all which he carefully traced out, amongſt the buſhes and briars, with which they are at preſent overgrown.

The walls of this caſtle nearly fronted the four cardinal points of the compaſs; having the north and ſouth ſides perpendicular on its eaſt end. Theſe ſides were conſequently parrallel. Its weſt end terminated in a ſemi-octagon, inſcribed in the half of a long oval. It was defended by four round towers; two on the angles, formed by the concurrence of the north and ſouth ſides with the eaſt end; and two others, placed on the angles formed by the junction of the ſame ſides with the ſemi-poligon.

The length of the eaſt end, including the towers, was eighty-five feet; and the extent, from eaſt to weſt, reckoning the thickneſs of the walls, one hundred and twenty feet.

Near the north-weſt tower was a well; and in the ſouth-eaſt angle a ſquare building, whoſe ſides meaſured twenty-four feet. Two of theſe ſides were formed by the exterior wall, and encloſed the tower.

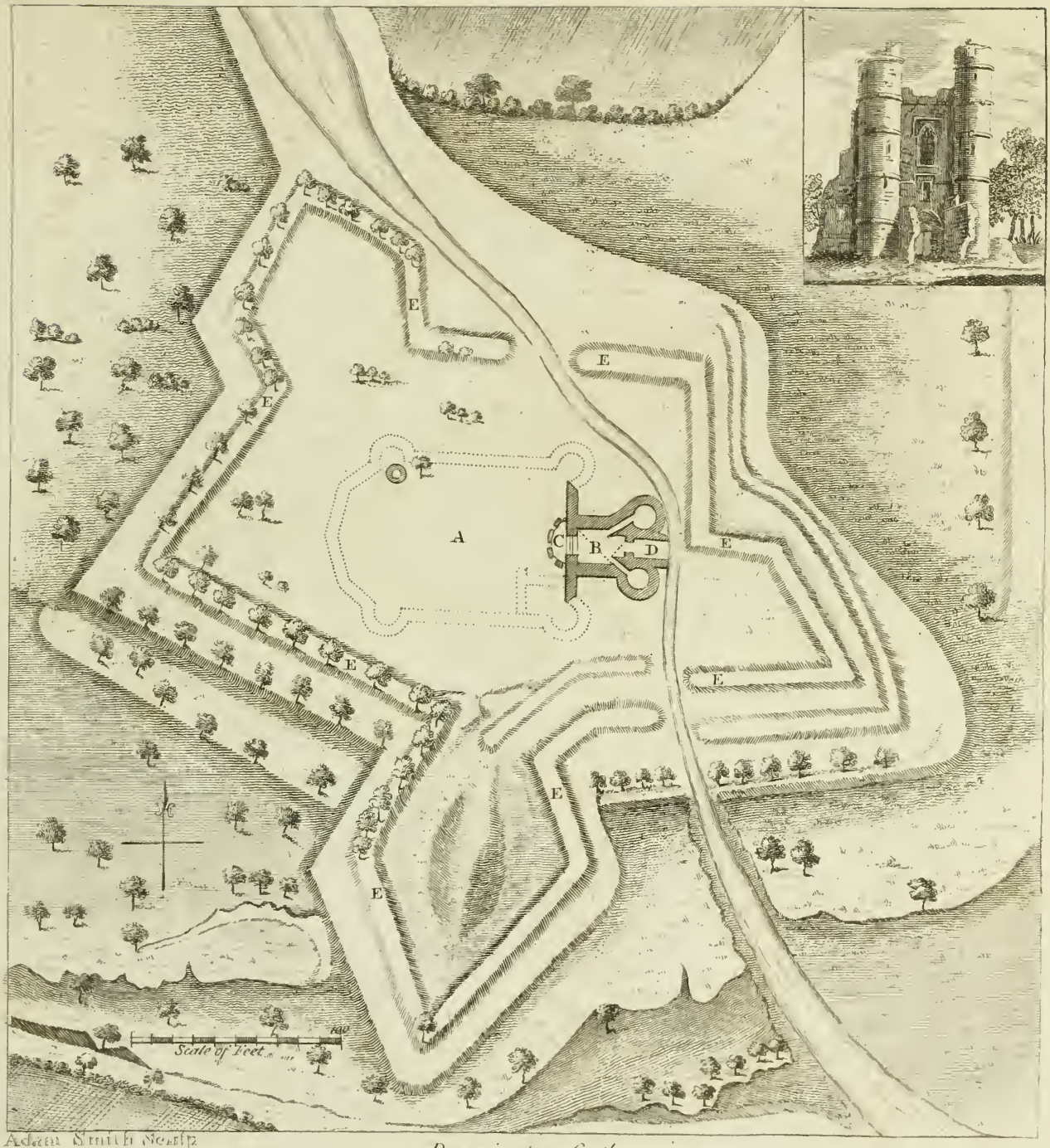
The entrance was at the eaſt end, through a ſtone gatehouſe, having a paſſage forty feet long; at the end of which is remaining the place for the portcullis. It is flanked by two round towers; that on the ſouth has a ſtair-caſe. This gate is now ſtanding, and is ſhewn in the view. In it is held the manor-court. On its weſt ſide a ſmall drinking room has lately been added by the proprietor.

Round about, and almoſt occupying the whole eminence, are the modern works, thrown up for the defence of the caſtle. Theſe explain and juſtify the ſpeech of Sir John Boys; which otherwiſe, conſidering its ſtate at that time, would have been a mere rodomontade.

Their ſhape is that of an irregular pentagon; the greateſt angle fronting the ſouth, on which was a very capacious baſtion. There was another, but ſmaller, on the north-weſt angle; and the north-eaſt ſide was defended by a demi-baſtion, placed on its ſouthern extremity. From the gorge of the great ſouthern baſtion, to the ſalient angle of the demi-baſtion, ran a double, and from thence to the north-eaſt angle of the pentagon a triple, rampart. The road paſſed through theſe works, cloſe to the gate of the caſtle.

This view was taken in the year 1768.

Plan of Dunnington Castle



Donnington Castle.

A. *The Castle in Ruins*

B. *The entrance with the Towers standing*

C. *A Drinking Room erected by the Proprietor*

D. *Another Porch open at Top*

E. *Temporary Works thrown up in the Civil Wars*

* *Between the vaulted Passage* B. *&* *Drinking Room* C. *over the Steps is a Vacancy for a Port Cullis*

ST. GEORGE's CHAPEL, WINDSOR, BERKSHIRE.

THIS view ſhews the chapel, dedicated to St. George, the houſes of the poor knights, and, at a diſtance, the round tower.

TANNER, in his Notitia Monaſtica, gives the following hiſtory of this chapel:

" IN the caſtle here was an old free chapel, dedicated to King Edward the Confeſſor, in which King Henry I. " placed eight fecular prieſts, who ſeem never to have been incorporated nor endowed with lands, but to have " been maintained by penſions yearly paid out of the king's exchequer. And in the park here was, in the " beginning of King Edward II.'s reign, a royal chapel for 13 chaplains, and 4 clerks, who had yearly ſalaries " out of the manors of Langley Mark, and Sippenham, in Bucks. King Edward III. anno regni 4, removed " thoſe chaplains and clerks out of the park into the caſtle; and ſhortly after added four more chaplains " and two clerks to them. But this victorious prince, being afterwards deſirous of raiſing this place of his " nativity to much greater ſplendor, refounded this ancient free chapel-royal, and in A. D. 1352, eſtabliſhed " it as a collegiate church, to the honour of the Virgin Mary, St. George, and St. Edward, King and Confeſſor, " conſiſting of a cuſtos, (ſince called a dean) twelve great canons, or prebendaries, thirteen vicars, or minor " canons, four clerks, ſix choriſters, twenty-ſix poor alms-knights, beſides other officers; their yearly revenues " were rated, 26 Hen. VIII. at £. 1602. 2s. 1d. ob. 9. This free chapel was particularly excepted out of the " act for ſuppreſſing colleges, &c. 1ſt Edw.VI. c. 14, and ſtill ſubſiſts in a flouriſhing condition."

THUS far reſpecting its foundation and endowment; its preſent ſtate and form is thus accurately delineated, in the work entitled, London and its Environs deſcribed.

" AMONG the buildings of this noble palace, we have mentioned the chapel of St. George, ſituated in the " middle of the lower court. This ancient ſtructure, which is now in the pureſt ſtyle of Gothic architecture

" was firſt erected by King Edward III. in the year 1337, ſoon after the foundation of the college, for the " honour of the Order of the Garter, and dedicated to St. George, the patron of England; but however noble " the firſt deſign might be, King Edward IV. not finding it entirely compleated, enlarged the ſtructure, and " deſigned the preſent building, together with the houſes of the dean and canons, ſituated on the north and " weſt ſides of the chapel; the work was afterwards carried on by Henry VII. who finiſhed the body of the " chapel, and Sir Reginald Bray, knight of the garter, and the favourite of that king, aſſiſted in ornamenting " the chapel and compleating the roof. The architecture of the inſide has always been eſteemed for its neatneſs " and great beauty; and in particular, the ſtone roof is reckoned an excellent piece of workmanſhip. It is an " ellipſis, ſupported by Gothic pillars, whoſe ribs and groins ſuſtain the whole cieling, every part of which has " ſome different device well finiſhed, as the arms of Edward the Confeſſor, Edw. III. Hen. VI. Edw. IV. Hen. VII. " and Henry VIII.; alſo the arms of England and France quarterly, the croſs of St. George, the roſe, portcullis, " lion rampant, unicorn, &c. In a chapel in the ſouth aiſle is repreſented in ancient painting, the hiſtory of " John the Baptiſt; and in the ſame aiſle are painted on large pannels of oak, neatly carved and decorated with " the ſeveral devices peculiar to each prince, the portraits at full length of Prince Edward, ſon to Henry VI. " Edward IV. Edward V. and Henry VII. In the north aiſle is a chapel dedicated to St. Stephen, wherein the " hiſtory of that ſaint is painted on the pannels, and well preſerved. In the firſt of theſe pannels St. Stephen " is repreſented preaching to the people; in the ſecond, he is before Herod's tribunal; in the third, he is " ſtoning; and in the fourth, he is repreſented dead. At the eaſt end of this aiſle is the chapter-houſe of " the college, in which is a portrait at full length, by a maſterly hand, of the victorious Edward III. in his " robes of ſtate, holding in his right hand a ſword, and bearing the crowns of France and Scotland, in token " of the many victories he gained over thoſe nations. On one ſide of this painting is kept the ſword of that " great and warlike prince. But what appears moſt worthy of notice, is the choir. On each ſide are the ſtalls " of the ſovereign, and knights companions of the moſt noble Order of the Garter, with the helmet, mantling, " creſt, and ſword, of each knight ſet up over his ſtall, on a canopy of ancient carving, curiouſly wrought, " and over the canopy is affixed the banner or arms of each knight properly blazoned on ſilk; and on the " back of the ſtalls are the titles of the knights, with their arms neatly engraved and blazoned on copper. " The ſovereign's ſtall is on the right hand of the entrance into the choir, and is covered with purple velvet " and cloth of gold, and has a canopy and compleat furniture of the ſame valuable materials; his banner is " likewiſe of velvet, and his mantling of cloth of gold. The prince's ſtall is on the left, and has no diſtinction " from thoſe of the reſt of the knights companions; the whole ſociety, according to the ſtatutes of the " inſtitution, being companions and colleagues, equal in honour and power. The altar-piece was, ſoon after " the reſtoration, adorned with cloth of gold, and purple damaſk, by King Charles II.; but on removing the " wainſcot of one of the chapels, in 1707, a fine painting of the Lord's Supper was found, which being " approved of by Sir James Thornhill, Verrio, and other eminent maſters, was repaired and placed on the " altar-piece. Near the altar is the queen's gallery for the accommodation of the ladies at an inſtallation. " In a vault under the marble pavement of this choir, are interred the bodies of Henry VIII. and Jane " Seymour his queen, King Charles I. and a daughter of the late Queen Anne. In the ſouth aiſle, near the " door of the choir, is buried Henry VI.; and the arch near which he was interred, was ſumptuouſly decorated " by Henry VIII. with the royal enſigns, and other devices, but they are now much defaced by time. In " this chapel is alſo the monument of Edward earl of Lincoln, lord high admiral of England, in the reign of " Queen Elizabeth, erected by his lady, who is alſo interred with him: the monument is of alabaſter, with " pillars of porphyry. Another, within a neat ſcreen of braſs work, is erected to the memory of Charles " Somerſet, earl of Worceſter, and knight of the Garter, who died in 1526, and his lady, daughter to William " Earl of Huntingdon. A ſtately monument of white marble, erected to the memory of Henry Somerſet, Duke " of Beaufort, and knight of the Garter, who died in 1699. There are here alſo the tombs of Sir George " Manners, Lord Roos; that of the Lord Haſtings, chamberlain to Edward IV. and ſeveral others.

" BEFORE we conclude our account of this ancient chapel, it will be proper to obſerve, that King James II. " made uſe of it for the ſervice of popery; and maſs being publicly performed there, it has ever ſince been " neglected and ſuffered to run to ruin; and being no appendage to the collegiate church, waits the royal " favour to retrieve it from the diſgrace of its preſent ſituation."

1 Jan.y 1773. Godfrey fc.

READING ABBY, BERKSHIRE.

(PLATE I.)

THIS was a mitred parliamentary abby, and one of the moſt conſiderable in England, both for the magnificence of its buildings, and the richneſs of its endowments. King Henry the Firſt began to lay the foundations anno 1121, having pulled down a ſmall deſerted nunnery, by ſome ſaid to have been founded by Elfrida, mother-in-law of King Edward, called the Martyr, in expiation of the murder of that king at Corfe-caſtle. The new monaſtery was completed in four years; but the church was either not conſecrated till the reign of Henry the Second, or elſe that ceremony was, for the ſecond time, performed in the year 1163 or 1164, by Archbiſhop Becket, the king and many of the nobility being preſent. It was dedicated to the honour of the Holy Trinity, the Bleſſed Virgin Mary, and St. John the Evangeliſt. Browne Willis, from diverſe good authorities and reaſons, to theſe adds St. James, making its tutelars ſtand in the following order: the Holy Trinity, the Bleſſed Virgin Mary, St. James, and St. John the Evangeliſt. It was, however, commonly called the abby of St. Mary, at Reading; probably from the extraordinary veneration paid in thoſe days to the Holy Virgin, which even exceeded that ſhewn to the name of Chriſt. It was endowed for two hundred monks of the Benedictine order, although at the inquiſition, 50 Edw. III. there were only one hundred.

IN this abby was buried the body of King Henry the Firſt, its founder; but his heart, eyes, tongue, brains, and bowels, according to Doctor Ducarrel, in his Anglo-Norman Antiquities, were depoſited under a handſome monument, before the high altar, in the antient priory church of Notre Dame du Pres, otherwiſe the Bonnes Nouveles, at Rouen, founded anno 1060, and deſtroyed during the ſiege of Rouen, in 1592.

HERE, likewiſe, was interred Adeliza, his ſecond queen; and, according to ſome writers, his daughter Maud, the empreſs, mother to King Henry the Second: though others, with more probability, fix the place of her ſepulchre at Bec, in Normandy. Over her tomb here, it is ſaid, were the following verſes:

Ortu magna, viro major, ſed maxima partu,
Hic jacet Henrici filia, ſponſa, parens.

IN this place was alſo buried, at the feet of his great grandfather, William, eldeſt ſon of King Henry the Second; likewiſe Conſtance, daughter of Edmund de Langley, duke of York; Anne, counteſs of Warwick;

a ſon and daughter of Richard, earl of Cornwall; and a great number of other perſons of rank and diſtinction. King Henry the Firſt had a tomb, on which was his effigies, as appears from a record, quoted by Tanner; and probably there were many other magnificent monuments, which were demoliſhed or removed, when the monaſtery was converted into a royal manſion; but it is not likely, that the bones of the perſons buried were diſturbed and thrown out, as aſſerted by Sandford, neither was the abby turned into a ſtable; for Camden ſays, "The monaſtery, wherein King Henry the Firſt was interred, was converted into a royal ſeat; adjoining to "which ſtands a fair ſtable, ſtored with noble horſes of the kings."

THE demolition of theſe monuments is thus pathetically lamented:

——————— Heu dira piacula, primus
Neuſtrius Henricus, ſitus hic, inglorius urna
Nunc jacet ejectus, tumulum novus advena quærit
Fruſtra; nam regi tenues invidit arenas
Auri ſacra fames, regum metuenda ſepulchris.

HISTORY particularizes only two councils held here, in the refectory, or rather the church; one in the reign of King John, by the pope's legate; the other, in that of Edward the Firſt, by Archbiſhop Peckham: there is reaſon, however, to believe, that diverſe others were held at the ſame place; likewiſe, in this monaſtery a parliament was aſſembled the thirty-firſt of Henry the Sixth, wherein diverſe laws were enacted.

THIS abby had funds for entertaining the poor and travellers of all ſorts; which, according to William of Malmſbury, was ſo well performed, that more money was ſpent in hoſpitality than expended on the monks. Yet, nevertheleſs, Hugh, the eighth abbot, having, as he ſays, in his grant, obſerved an improper partiality, in the entertainment of the rich, in preference to the poor (although the founder, King Henry, had directed, that hoſpitality ſhould be ſhewn, indifferently, to all perſons) he therefore founded an hoſpital, near the gate of the monaſtery, for the reception of ſuch pilgrims and poor perſons as were not admitted into the abby; and likewiſe gave to the ſaid hoſpital the church of St. Laurence, for ever, for the maintaining of thirteen poor perſons, in diet, cloaths, and other neceſſaries: allowing for the keeping of thirteen more, out of the uſual alms. This, in all likelihood, though done under the ſpecious pretence of charity, was only a method taken to exclude the meaner perſons from the table of the abby; which was, at that time, when inns were not ſo common as at preſent, often frequented by travellers of the better ſort. By this means, alſo, a conſiderable ſaving would accrue to the houſe; the fare of this hoſpital being, doubtleſs, ſuitable to the condition of the perſons there entertained.

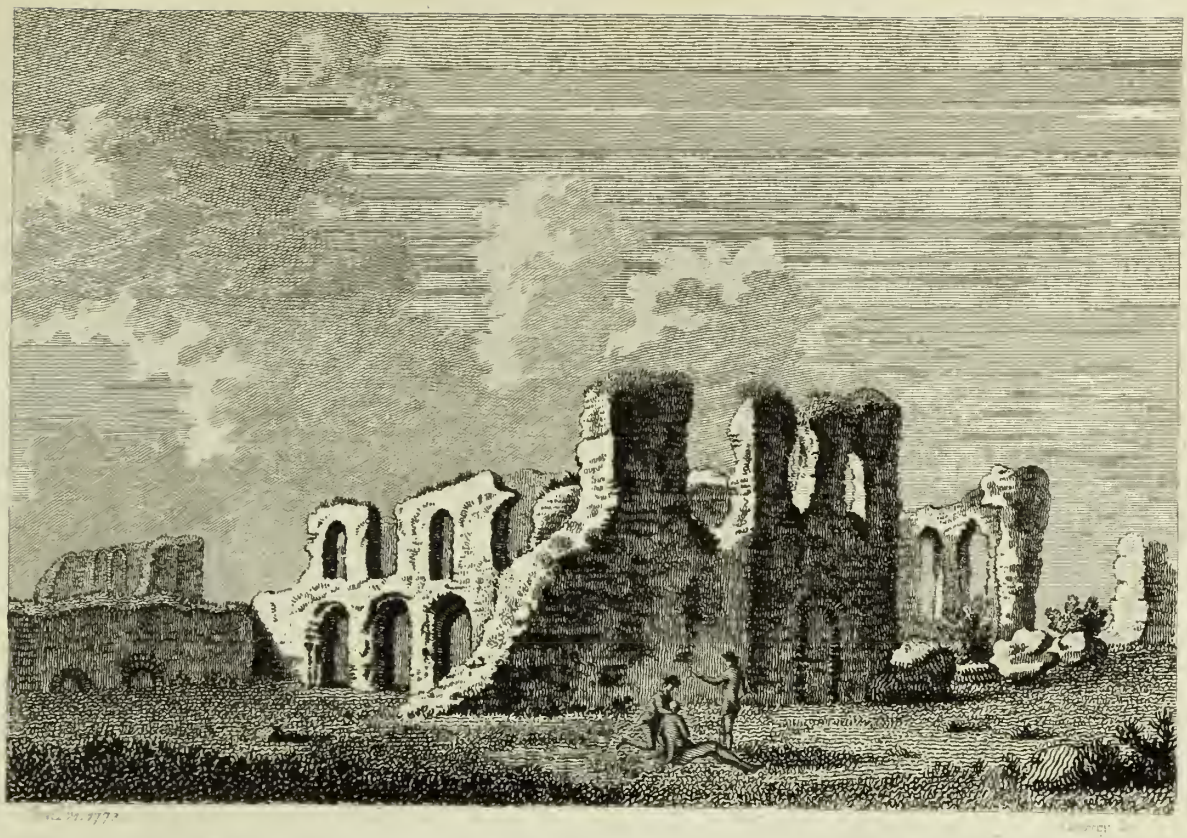
AN hoſpital for poor lepers was alſo founded near the church, by Aucherius, the ſecond abbot; it was dedicated to St. Mary Magdalen. Here they were comfortably maintained, and governed by diverſe rules and regulations, admirably well calculated for preſerving peace, harmony, and good order. Among them were theſe. Any one diſputing, and being ordered by the maſter to hold his peace, not obeying at the third monition, was to have nothing but bread and water that day. He who gave the lye was ſubject to the ſame puniſhment, attended with ſome humiliating circumſtances: if, after this, he continued ſullen, or did not patiently ſubmit to his caſtigation, it was to be repeated another day; when, if he ſtill perſevered in his obſtinacy, he was to loſe the benefit of the charity for forty days. A blow was immediate expulſion: and none were to go abroad, or into the laundreſs's houſe, without a companion.

HUGH FARRINGDON, the laſt abbot, refuſing to deliver up his abby to the viſitors, was attainted of high treaſon, on ſome charge trumped up againſt him; and, in the month of November, 1539, with two of his monks, named Rugg and Onion, was hanged, drawn, and quartered at Reading. This happened on the ſame day on which the abbot of Glaſtonbury ſuffered the like ſentence, for the ſimilar provocation.

AT the Diſſolution, the revenues of this monaſtery were valued at £1938. 14*s.* 3*d.* ob. q. Dugdale. £2116. 3*s.* 9*d.* ob. Speed. The abbot had an excellent ſummer retirement at Cholſey, near Wallingford, called the Abbot's Place; by which name it was granted to Sir Francis Englefield, 4 and 5 Philip and Mary. The ſite of this abby now belongs to the crown; the preſent leſſees, for a term of years, are John Blagrave, Eſq; and the repreſentatives of Henry Vanſittart, Eſq;

THE abby church ſeems to have been a ſpacious fabrick, built in the form of a croſs: ſome of its walls were lately remaining; they were of rough flint, and were formerly caſed with ſquared ſtone; but of this they have been ſtripped. There is likewiſe to be ſeen, the remainder of our Lady's chapel and the refectory; this laſt is eighty-four feet long, and forty-eight broad; and is, according to Willis, the room in which was held the parliament before-mentioned. The cloyſters have long been totally demoliſhed. About eight years ago, a very conſiderable quantity of the abby ruins, ſome of the pieces as much as two teams of horſes could draw, compoſed of gravel and flints, cemented together with what the bricklayers now call grout, a fluid mortar, conſiſting moſtly of lime, was removed, for General Conway's uſe, to build a bridge in the road betwixt Wargrove and Henley, adjoining to his park.

THIS view, drawn in 1762, repreſents the great gate of the abby, which was formerly embattled; about thirty years ago it was judged neceſſary to take off the embattlements: this has conſiderably hurt its appearance.



READING ABBEY.

(PLATE II.)

This Plate ſhews the South View of the remains of this once magnificent Abbey; majeſtic even its ruins!

The following circumſtances relative to this monaſtery occur in Prynne's Hyſtory of Papal Uſurpations. In the year 1215, the Abbot of Reading was one of the Delegates appointed by the Pope, together with Pandulph the Legate, and the Biſhop of Wincheſter, for the promulgating the excommunication againſt the Barons concerned in the oppoſition to King John; as alſo in the ſucceeding year, when diverſe of thoſe Barons were excommunicated particularly and by name. In the 39th of Henry IIId. the maintenance of two Jewiſh converts, both women, was impoſed on this Houſe; and in the ſame reign, the King attempting to borrow a large ſum of money from ſome of the great Abbies, among which were Weſtminſter, St. Alban's, Reading, and Waltham, was poſitively refuſed by the Abbot of Reading.

Fuller in his Church Hiſtory has this Anecdote of one of the Abbots, which he ſtiles "A pleaſant and true "Story: King Henry VIIIth, as he was hunting in Windſor Forreſt, either caſually loſt, or (more probably) wilfully "loſing himſelf, ſtruck down about dinner-time to the Abbey of Reading, where, diſguiſing himſelf, (much for "delight, more for diſcovery to ſee unſeen) he was invited to the Abbot's table, and paſſed for one of the King's "guard; a place to which the proportion of his perſon might properly entitle him. A Sir-loyne of beef was ſet "before him (ſo knighted, ſaith Tradition, by this King Henry); on which the King laid on luſtily, not diſgracing "one of that place, for whom he was miſtaken. Well fare thy heart (quoth the Abbot); and here in a cup of ſack "I remember the health of his Grace your Maſter. I would give an hundred pounds on the condition I could feed ſo "heartily on beef as you doe. Alas! my weak and ſqueazie ſtomach will hardly digeſt the wing of a ſmall rabbet "or chicken. The King pleaſantly pledged him, and heartily thanked him for his good chear; after dinner "departed, as undiſcovered as he came thither. Some weeks after, the Abbot was ſent for by a Purſuivant, brought "up to London, clapt in the Tower, kept cloſe priſoner, fed for a ſhort time with bread and water; yet not ſo "empty his body of food as his mind was filled with fears, creating many ſuſpicions to himſelf, when, and how he "had incurred the King's diſpleaſure. At laſt a Sir-loin of beef was ſet before him, on which the Abbot fed as "the farmer of his grange, and verified the proverb, That two hungry meals makes the third a glutton. In ſwift

"...ing

READING ABBEY.

" King Henry out of a private lobbie, where he had placed himſelf the inviſible ſpectator of the Abbot's behaviour, " My Lord (quoth the King) preſently depoſit your hundred pounds in gold, or elſe no going hence all the daies " of your life. I have been your phyſician to cure you of your ſqueazie ſtomach ; and here, as I deſerve, I demand " my fee for the ſame. The Abbot down with his duſt, and glad he had eſcaped ſo, returned to Reading ; as " ſomewhat lighter in purſe, ſo much more merrier in heart than when he came thence."

The ſucceſſion of the Abbots is thus given by Browne Willis, in his Hiſtory of Mitred Abbies : " 1. Hugh Prior " of Lewis, co. Suſſex, was at the time of the foundation, an. 1125, made the firſt Abbat by the founder Henry I ; " about four years after which, viz. an. 1129, he was tranſlated to the Archbiſhopric of Roan in Normandy, where " he died the Ides of Nov. 1134. On his quitting this Abbey, he was therein ſucceeded by, 2. Auſgerus, " called in the Monaſticon, Aucherius. He founded an houſe of Lepers to the honour of St. Mary Magdalen ; " and dying an. 1134, or, as Mathew of Weſtminſter ſays, 6. Cal. Feb. 1135, was ſucceeded by, 3. Edward, who " died in Dec. anno 1154, and was ſucceeded by, 4. Reginald, made Abbat the ſame year ; he died 3 Nones " Feb. 1158, as Mat. of Weſtm. ſays, and was ſucceeded by, 5. Roger ; in whoſe time Thomas Archbiſhop of " Canterbury dedicated the Monaſtery of Reading anew, King Henry the IId. and many of the nobility being " preſent : he died 13 Cal. Feb. an. 1164, and was ſucceeded by, 6. William, a religious and prudent man, made " Archbiſhop of Bourdeaux, an. 1173, by the ſpecial favour of King Henry ; whoſe ſucceſſor, 7. Joſeph, deceaſing " about the year 1180, was ſucceeded by, 8. Hugh, a learned writer, and a ſpecial benefactor to this houſe. He " erected an hoſpital without the gate of the Abbey to maintain 26 poor people, and all ſtrangers who ſhould " paſs that way. An. 1199, being made Abbat of Cluny, he quitted this abbey, and was ſucceeded the next year, " viz. 1200, by, 9. Halias ; who dying 12 Cal. Aug. 1212, was ſucceeded after near a year's vacancy by, 10. Simon. " He died the Ides of Feb. an. 1226, and was ſucceeded by, 11. Adam de Latebar or Lathbury, Prior of Leominſter, " co. Hereford ; upon whoſe deceaſe, An. 1238, 8 Ides April, 12. Richard, Sub-prior of this houſe, was appointed " Abbat. He continued but a ſmall time, and was ſucceeded by, 13. Adam, who reſigned an. 1249, and was ſuc- " ceeded by another of his name, viz. 14. Adam, Sacriſt of this houſe ; on whoſe death or ceſſion, the ſame year, " 15. William, Sub-prior of Coventry, became Abbat ; whoſe ſucceſſor, 16. Richard, dying anno 1261, 17. Richard " de Banaſter, alias de Rading, was elected Abbat. He preſided eight years, and was ſucceeded an. 1268, by, " 18. Robert de Burghare ; who reſigning an. 1287, 19. William de Sutton ſucceeded as Abbat : he died an. 1305, " and was ſucceeded by, 20. Nicholas de Quaplode, who had his election confirmed in September 1305. He began to " build Our Ladies Chapel on the 13 Cal. of May, an. 1314 ; and deceaſing an. 1327, had for his ſucceſſor, 21. John " Appleford. He died an. 1341, and was ſucceeded by, 22. Hen. de Appleford. He governed 20 years, and " dying 29th July 1360, 35th Edw. III. was ſucceeded by, 23. William de Dombleton, confirmed Abbat, " an. 1361. Dr. Tanner informs me he has met with one Nicholas, Abbat of Reading, an. 1362 ; but this ſeems " to be a miſtake ; for Will. Dombleton died poſſeſſed of this Abbey, an. 1368, and was then ſucceeded by, 24. John " de Sutton : upon whoſe death, which happened an. 1378, 25. Richard de Yately was elected Abbat. I do " not find when he died ; but it appears from Saliſbury Regiſter, that he preſided an. 1396 ; and 'tis probable that " he did ſo till the year 1409, when, 26. Thomas Erle was elected. He died an. 1430, and was ſucceeded " December the 1ſt, the ſame year, by, 27. Tho. Henley ; who dying Nov. 11, 1445, 28. John Thorne was " preferred to this dignity January the 7th following. During his government, he ſuppreſſed an old alms-houſe " of Poor Siſters, near St. Laurence's Church, founded in all likelihood by one of the preceding Abbats of " Reading, and employed the revenues to the uſe of the Almoner of this Abbey ; which King Henry the VIIth " being informed of, at his coming to Reading, he ordered Abbat Thorne to convert both the houſe and lands to " pious uſes ; whereupon the Abbat deſired the King that it might be made a Grammar School ; which being " aſſented to, one Will. Dene, a rich man and ſervant of the Abbey, gave 200 marks towards the advancement of " the ſaid ſchool ; which Mr. Leland tells us, appeared from his epitaph in the Abbey-church. This Abbat died " before this ſettlement was perfected, viz. an. 1486, in the ſecond year of King Henry VIIth, and was ſucceeded " by another, 29. John Thorne ; who died an. 1519, and was ſucceeded by, 30. Thomas Worceſter. He governed " but a ſhort time ; for in the next year, viz. 1520, he was ſucceeded by, 31. Hugh Farringdon, the laſt Abbot, " executed at Reading, as has before been obſerved, Anno 1533. I find only 59l. 13s. remaining in charge " out of the revenues of this late convent, to 13 Monks and Novices ; the execution of the Abbat probably de- " priving the dependants of their claims to fees and annuities. Theſe Monks were Elizeus Burgeſs, whoſe penſion " was 6l. as were John Fryſon, John Wright, John Harper, John Mylly, John Turner, Luke Wythorne, Tho. " Taylor, 5l. each. Robert Rayner's penſion was 4l. 6s. 8d. John South's, 3l. 6s. 8d. and Richard Purſer's, and " Richard Butts, 2l. a-piece."

This View was drawn Anno 1759.

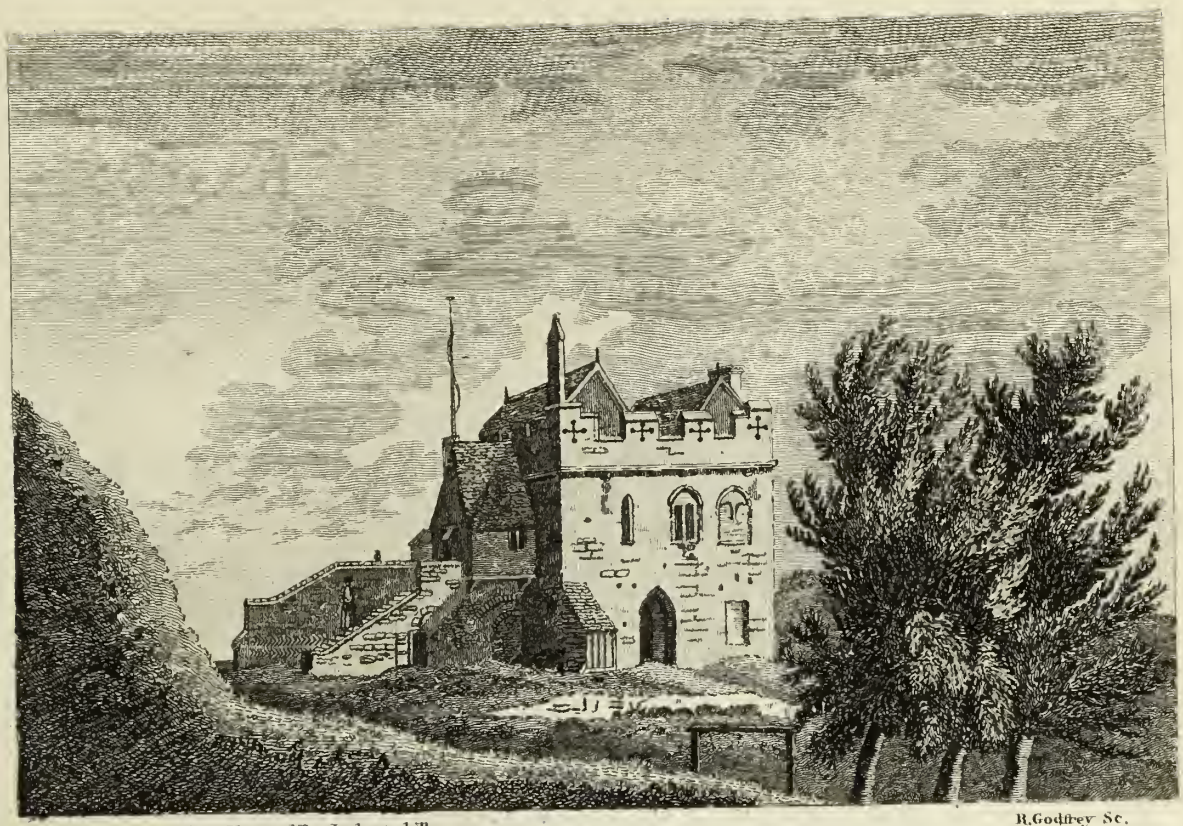
STIVECLE, OR STUKELEY CHURCH, BUCKINGHAMSHIRE.

THE ſolidity of this building, as well as its circular arches and zig-zag ornaments, evidently mark its great antiquity. The particular time of its erection is not known; it is however mentioned as early as the reign of Henry II. when it was given by Geffery de Clinton, chamberlain to that king, to the priory of Kenelworth in Warwickſhire, of which his father was founder. It is there called the church of Stivecle, or Stiff Clay, in all likelihood from the kind of ſoil whereon it ſtood. The preſent church muſt be from its ſtile at leaſt as old as that period.

STIVECLE, OR STUKELEY CHURCH, BUCKINGHAMSHIRE.

IT is a vicarage in the dioceſe of Lincoln and deanry of Mureſley; the church is dedicated to St. Mary; the Biſhop of Oxford is both proprietor and patron; the certified value £. 68. 19s. 8d. and rated in the King's Books at £. 9. 9s. 7d. the yearly tenths, eighteen ſhillings and elevenpence halfpenny.

THIS Plate is engraved from a drawing made at the expence of the late Dr. Littleton, biſhop of Carliſle, and communicated to the Author. The original is in the library of the Society of Antiquaries of London.



Publiſhd 1ſt March 1772, by S. Hooper N° 25 Ludgate-hill.

R. Godfrey Sc.

CAMBRIDGE CASTLE

Is ſituated on the north ſide of the river Cam, near the bridge; and was, with many others, erected by William the Conqueror, in the firſt year of his reign, for the purpoſe of awing his newly acquired ſubjects.

It appears, by Domeſday-book, that eighteen houſes were deſtroyed for the ſite of this caſtle, which was both ſtrong and ſpacious, having a noble hall, with many other magnificent apartments.

In the year 1216, in the reign of King John, it was beſieged, and taken by the Barons; and about the year 1291, King Edward the Firſt was entertained here two days and two nights. He is ſaid to be the firſt King who ever honoured it with the royal preſence.

In proceſs of time, this caſtle being neglected, and falling to ruin, the materials of its great hall were given, by King Henry the Fourth, to the Maſter and

Wardens of King's-Hall, towards building their chapel; and Queen Mary granted as much of the ſtones and timber to Sir John Huddleſtone, as ſufficed to build his houſe at Sawſton.

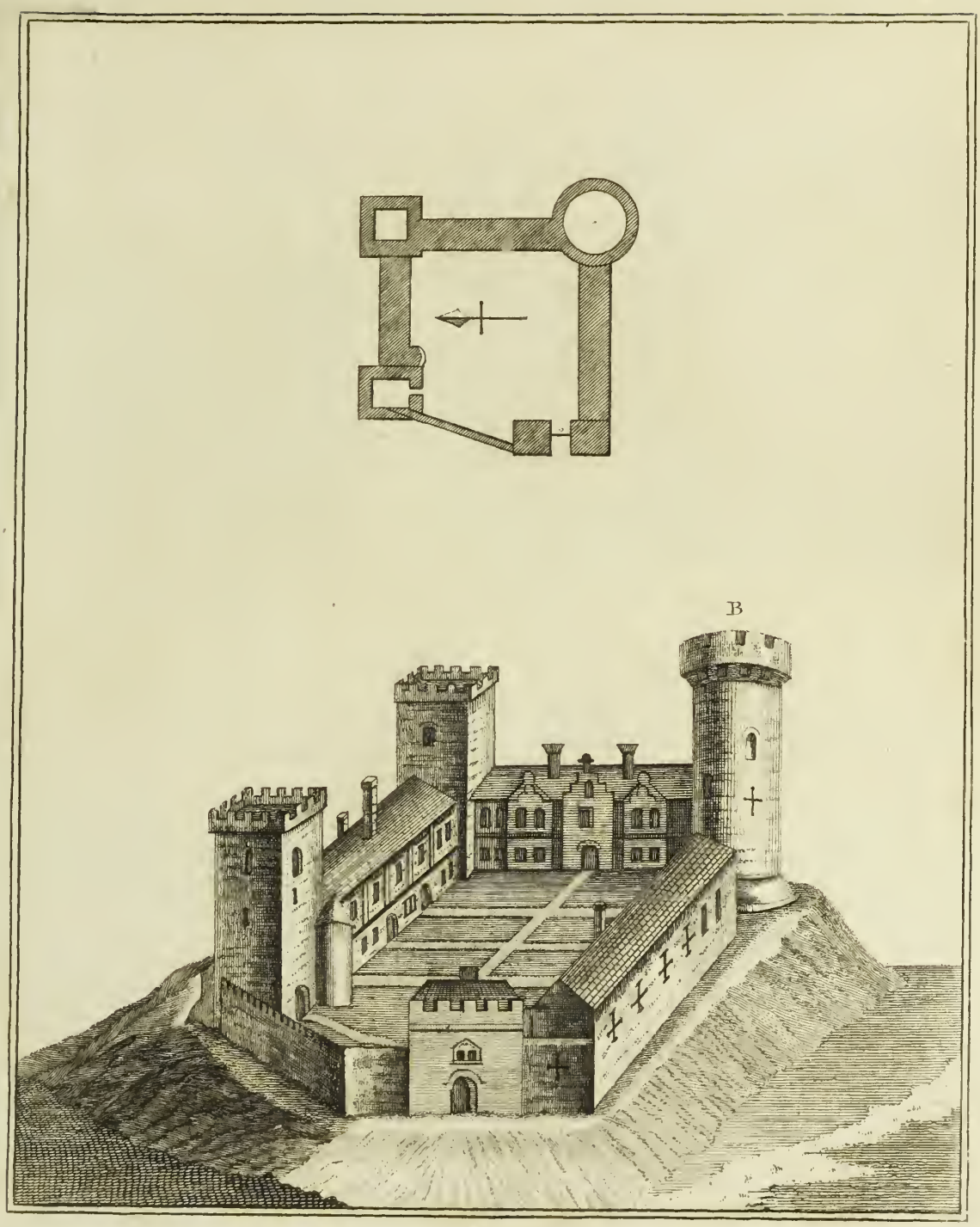
GREAT part of it was ſtanding in Cambden's time, who calls it "a large antient "caſtle, which ſeemeth now to have lived out his full time;" and Mr. Arthur Agard, an ingenious antiquary, his cotemporary, ſays, the JULLIET, or KEEP, was ſtanding when he was a ſcholar at Cambridge; but adds, that ſince his time it had been defaced.

IN an antient view of the town of Cambridge, printed at Straſbourg, in the year 1575 in the poſſeſſion of Doctor Ducarel, which ſeems to belong to a book, the caſtle is repreſented entire, and ſtanding on an eminence; its figure an irregular pentagon, having its north and ſouth ſides (which are perpendicular to that on the eaſt) parallel, and much longer than the others: theſe ſides are flanked by four towers; three of them ſquare, and one round. The round tower is at the ſouth-eaſt angle, and is much larger than the reſt; the entrance is through a tower, facing ſouth-weſt.

ON the inſide, adjoining to the walls, are buildings which have the appearance of dwelling-houſes, and were probably apartments for the governor, and barracks for the garriſon.

AS that print was publiſhed abroad, and well engraved, it was in all likelihood copied from ſome Engliſh draught, of approved authority, and of much earlier date.

IN the year 1769, when this view was taken, nothing remained but the gate-houſe, which then ſerved for the county priſon. At a ſmall diſtance from this building, is one of thoſe artificial mounts, ſo frequently to be found near antient caſtles. Immediately under it, and oppoſite the windows of the priſon, ſtands the gallows for the execution of malefactors.



Plan & View of Cambridge Castle, from an Ancient Drawing, formerly belonging to General Armstrong; supposed to be Drawn about the Reign of Queen Elizabeth.

B. The Juliet or great Tower mentioned by Ralp Agard vide Antiquarian discourses.

BEESTON CASTLE, CHESHIRE.

PLATE I.

THIS Caſtle, as appears not only from its preſent remains, but alſo from the teſtimony of Camden, was once ſtrongly fortified by art, as well as almoſt inacceſſible by nature. His words are, " Beeſton Caſtle, a place well guarded " by walls of a great compaſs, by the great number of its towers, and by a " mountain of very ſteep aſcent." Leland conceived ſo high an opinion of it, that he wrote, or rather repeated in ſome Latin verſes, a kind of prophecy, which, however, does not ſeem very likely to be accompliſhed. Theſe verſes are thus tranſlated by Biſhop Gibſon, in his edition of Camden.

Ranulph, returning from the Syrian land,
This Caſtle rais'd his country to defend,
The borderer to fright and to command.

Though ruin'd here the ſtately fabric lies,
Yet with new glories it again ſhall riſe,
If I a Prophet may believe old prophecies.

BEESTON CASTLE, CHESHIRE.

THE following account of this Caſtle is given in the Vale Royal of Cheſhire, publiſhed anno 1656, by Daniel King, and now become extremely ſcarce.

" AND ſo we cannot here but ſtay to look on the next ſtately houſe and fine " demeſne of Beeſton, the name both of the houſes, the townſhip, and that " famous and far-ſeen Caſtle, built there by the laſt Ranulph, the famous Earl " of Cheſter; and, without queſtion, was a place, when ſuch ſtrong holds were " in requeſt, of admirable and impregnable ſtrength. It is mounted upon the " top of a very ſteep hill of ſtone, the chief tower whereof, in the very ſu- " mitty of it, had a draw-well of an incredible depth to ſerve it with water. I " have meaſured it, and, notwithſtanding that by the great number of ſtones " which from the ruinated walls thoſe that repair thither do caſt in, it is ſup- " poſed the well in the outward to be half ſtopped up; yet it is of true mea- " ſure 91 yards deep, and the other above 80 yards deep by M. S. and from that " tower, a circular wall of a large compaſs, containing a fine plat of ground, " where, in the circuit of it, and in the middeſt of that, another well, which yet " by the long deſcent of a ſtone before it fall down to the water, when you ſhall " hear the fall of it of a huge depth; and the foot of the whole wall ſtanding " ſo deep on every ſide, that ſaving one way up to the gates of the Caſtle towards " the Eaſt, and thoſe very fair and ſtately, men can hardly find a footing to ſtand on " any part of the ſaid hill; concerning which, though I have no reaſon to fix my " belief upon any, either idle prophecies, as they call them, or vain predic- " tions of vulgar report; yet, neither will I be ſo ſcrupulous as not to make men- " tion of the common word thereabouts uſed, that Beeſton Caſtle ſhall ſave all " England on a day; nor ſo envious as not to take notice of Old Leland's bold " conjecture of the future exalting of the head of it in time to come; whereof " I only ſay this, that I wiſh every man to look upon what grounds he gives cre- " dit to any old dreams. To the place I wiſh all good, and to the name of " Beeſton I could alſo wiſh a continuance as the Caſtle ſtands, being now in " the poſſeſſion of an ancient Knight, Sir Hugh Beeſton, of much reſpect; but " now, through want of iſſue male, like to paſs into another name, the heir " being now married to one of the younger ſons of the Honourable and after- " mentioned Knight and Baronet Sir Thomas Savage."

ALTHOUGH the time when the Caſtle was built is not here ſpecified, it muſt have been between the year 1180, when Ranulph became Earl of Cheſter, and 1232, when he died.

THIS View, which repreſents the great gate, or chief entrance into the Caſtle, wa drawn Anno 1760.

BEESTON CASTLE, CHESHIRE.

PLATE II.

SINCE the printing of the Firſt Plate of this Caſtle, in which I inſerted the account of it as given in the Vale Royal of Cheſhire, I have met with a more ancient deſcription, written by Sampſon Erdeſwicke, Eſq; and printed in the year 1593. Altho' this ought, in point of time, to have preceded the other; yet as the Survey of Staffordſhire, in which it is contained, is become extremely ſcarce, I imagine the reader will rather excuſe the violation of order, than want the deſcription; I, therefore, have here tranſcribed it.

"As in Staffordſhire I have begun with Trent, ſo proceeding to the deſcription of Cheſhire, I think it my "readieſt courſe to begin with Wever, a fair river, which takes its firſt ſource or ſpring to Peckſorton-Hills, near "Beeſton Caſtle, and preſently runneth, firſt ſouth-eaſt, then plain ſouth, then bendeth ſouth-eaſt again, then "plain eaſt, then turneth ſuddenly plain north, and ſo keepeth on its courſe; though it have diverſe windings, ſome-"times weſtwards, and ſometimes eaſt, for fifteen or ſixteen miles ſtill northwards, and then returneth, as it were "ſuddenly weſt; which courſe it holdeth on, until it come into the Freet of Merſey, where it diſchargeth itſelf into "a pritty little ſea, and, as Trent doth, divides the ſhire into near two equal parts, eaſt and weſt; the one being "called the Overſide of Cheſhire, and the other the Lower ſide.

"Not far from the fountain of Wever (as I have ſaid) ſtands Beeſton Caſtle, which for that it was more eminent "and famous than any particular part of the ſhire (the city of Cheſter excepted), I covet to begin withal; and you "muſt ſomething bear with me, if a little I range about the head of Weever, for three or four miles on both ſides "of the river; for that in that part of the ſhire the rivers be not ſo plentiful as in other places thereof: and beſides, "the barony of Rob. filius Hugonis, being the firſt barony which is ſpoken of in Doomſday-Book, which there-

BEESTON CASTLE, CHESHIRE.

" fore I covet to begin withal, lieth the moſt part of it about this part of Cheſhire, and not far from Weever, be-
" tween it and Dee, except ſome little of it which lies in Flintſhire, then reputed as a member of the county
" palatine of Cheſter.

" BEESTON CASTLE ſtands very loftily and proudly, upon an exceeding ſteep and high rock, ſo ſteep upon all
" ſides but one, that it ſuffers no acceſs unto it; ſo that tho' it be walled about, yet (for the moſt part thereof) the
" wall is needleſs, the rock is ſo very high and ſteep: and where the nature of the thing admitteth acceſs, there
" is firſt a fair gate, and a wall furniſhed with turrets, which encloſeth a good quantity of ground (four or five
" acres) which lieth north-eaſtwards, ſomewhat riſeth until it come to the over-part of the rock, where is a great
" dike or ditch hewed out of the main rock, and within the ſame a goodly ſtrong gatehouſe and a ſtrong wall, with
" other buildings, which when they flouriſhed were a convenient habitation for any great perſonage. In which it is
" a wonder to ſee the great labour that hath been uſed to have ſufficient water; which was procured by, no doubt
" with great difficulty, a marvellous deep well through that huge high rock; which is ſo deep, as that it equals
" in depth the riveret, which runneth not far from the ſaid Caſtle, through Teverton, Hocknell, and ſo on to
" Merſey.

" THIS Caſtle ſtands within the mannor of Beeſton; but the ground whereon it ſtands, was procured by Ran-
" dulf, the third Earl of Cheſter, from the owner of the ſaid mannor, to the end he might make and fortify the ſaid
" Caſtle there, which he did accordingly.

" THE manor of Beeſton, whereof this place was a member before the Caſtle was builded, is within the pariſh of
" Bunbury, poſſeſſed at this day by Sir George Beeſton, whoſe ſon and heir Hugh Beeſton hath (as I hear) alſo
" purchaſed the Caſtle of Beeſton of the Queen.

" THE Beeſtons are deſcended paternally from the Bunberyes, who (as I take it) were Lords of the whole pariſh,
" or the moſt of it, about Henry the Second's time; and were at the firſt known by the name of St. Peere, but
" (by reaſon of their habitation, and the Seignory of Bunbury together) changed their name from St. Peere to
" Bunbury. As Henry of Bunbury (to whom his Father had given Beeſton about king Henry the Third's time)
" had iſſue a ſon named David, who was called David de Beeſton, by reaſon of his habitation; which David had
" iſſue Henry Beeſton, who had iſſue David Beeſton, William (that died without iſſue), Henry that begat Thomas
" and William that had iſſue, John, Raufe, and Agnes."

FROM the accounts here given it appears, this Caſtle was in decay when they were written; but its preſent ruinous condition ſhews the honourable ſcars of ſeveral vigorous attacks ſuſtained by it during the laſt Civil War.

IN the beginning of theſe troubles, this Caſtle was ſeized for the Parliament, but was attacked and taken December 12th, 1643, by the King's forces, then juſt landed from Ireland. It appears the garriſon made little or no defence; for Ruſhworth ſays, the Governour, one Captain Steel, was tried and executed for a coward. The Parliamentarians afterwards attempted to retake it, and it was unſucceſsfully beſieged for ſeventeen weeks, being bravely defended by Captain Valet. On Prince Rupert's approach the enemy abandoned it, March 18, 1644. In 1645 it was again attacked; and on the 16th of November it ſurrendered on conditions, after eighteen weeks continual ſiege, in which the garriſon were reduced to the neceſſity of eating cats, &c. The Governor, Colonel Ballard (ſays Ruſhworth), in compaſſion to his ſoldiers, conſented to beat a parly, whereupon a treaty followed; and having obtained very honourable conditions (even beyond expectation in ſuch extremity), viz. to march out, the Governor and Officers with horſes and arms, and their own proper goods (which loaded two wains), the common ſoldiers with their arms, colours flying, drums beating, matches alight, and a proportion of powder and ball, and a convoy to guard them to Flint Caſtle; he did, on Sunday the 16th of November, ſurrender the Caſtle, the garriſon being reduced to not above ſixty men, who marched away according to the conditions.

MANY traces of theſe operations, ſuch as ditches, trenches, and other military works, are ſtill diſcernible in the grounds about it.

THE ſite and Ruins of this Caſtle at preſent belong to Sir Roger Moſtyn, of Moſtyn, in the county of Flint, Bart.

THIS Plate gives a general proſpect of the Ruins as they appear when ſeen from the ſouth. It was drawn anno 1773.
Plate I. preſented a more particular view of the great Gateway.

BIRKEHEDDE PRIORY, CHESHIRE.

THIS Priory was, as appears from different writers, alſo called Bricheved, Byrkett, and Burket-Wood Priory. It was founded in the latter end of the reign of Henry the IId. or in that of Richard the Firſt, by Hamon Maſſey, third Baron of Dunham Maſſey, who placed therein ſixteen Benedictine Monks. A Manuſcript in Corpus Chriſti College, Cambridge, makes them Canons of the Order of St. Auguſtine. It was dedicated to St. Mary and St. James.

IN the Monaſticon are two charters of the ſaid Hamon Maſſey. In the firſt, he grants to this Monaſtery in free alms, half an acre of land at Dunham, and an acre at Lacheker, with the advowſon of the church of Bowdon; and in the other, the liberty of chooſing their own Prior, granted before by Pope Alexander: from whence it ſeems, as if the Papal permiſſion for ſuch election was not then ſufficient without the confirmation of the patron.

BIRKEHEDDE PRIORY, CHESHIRE.

At the Diſſolution, its revenues were eſtimated at 90*l.* 13*s.* per ann. according to Dugdale; 102*l.* 16*s.* 10*d.* Speed; its reputed value 108*l.*; and by a M.S. in Corpus Chriſti College, Cambridge, it was only reckoned at 80*l.* In the 36th of Henry the Eighth, it was granted to Ralph Worſeley.

This houſe is ſaid by Leland to have been ſubordinate to the Abbey of Cheſter; but Tanner does not ſubſcribe to that opinion. "The grant of free election for "a Prior, the diſtinct valuation of its poſſeſſions, both in Tax. Lincoln. and "26 Henry VIII. makes me doubt much, ſays he, whether this was a cell to "Cheſter."

In the Vale Royal of England, publiſhed Anno 1656, by Dan. King, there is a view of this Priory, by which it is plain that much of the buildings have been demoliſhed ſince the time when That was drawn. Annexed to it is the following account: "Where the paſſage lies over into Lancaſhire, unto Leaverpool, we "ſtep over into Berket-Wood, and where hath been a famous Priory, the foun- "dation whereof I am not yet inſtruct for; but now a very goodly demean, and "which is come, by deſcent from the Worſleyes, men of great poſſeſſions, now "to a gentleman of much worth, Thomas Powel, Eſq. the heir of that ancient "ſeat of Horſley, in the county of Flint; and one whom our county may gladly "receive, to be added to the number of thoſe that deſerve better commendation "than I am fit to give them; though unto him I am particularly bound to ex- "tend my wits to a higher reach, then here I will make tryall of."

At preſent it is the property of Richard Perry Price, Eſq. whoſe grandfather, Mr. Cleveland, purchaſed it of Mr. Powel..

What is ſhewn in the view here repreſented, ſeems to have been part of the church or chapel of the Priory. Towards the left hand, under the middle of the tuft of ivy, is the remains of a confeſſional ſeat, the entrance being through the Gothick arch: the ſmall window was the aperture, at which the penitents related their tranſgreſſions to the prieſt.

This drawing was made Anno 1770.

18 Dec.r 1772.

Drawaza fc.

CHESTER CASTLE.

PLATE I.

THIS caſtle, it is ſaid, was either built or greatly repaired by Hugh Lupus, earl of Cheſter, nephew to William the Conqueror; it is twice deſcribed in the Vale Royal of England, publiſhed anno 1656, by Dan. King; as that book is extremely ſcarce, I ſhall here literally tranſcribe both paſſages.

" The caſtle of Cheſter ſtandeth on a rocky hill, within the wall of the city, " not far from the bridge: which caſtle is a place having privileges of itſelf and " hath a conſtable, the building thereof ſeemeth to be very ancient. At the firſt " coming in is the gatehouſe, which is a priſon for the whole county, having di- " verſe rooms and lodgings; and hard within the gate is a houſe, which was ſome- " time the exchequer, but now the cuſtom-houſe; not far from thence, in the baſe " court, is a deep well, and thereby ſtables and other houſes of office; on the left " hand is a chapel, and hard by adjoining thereunto, the goodly fair, and large ſhire " hall, newly repaired, where all matters of law, touching the county Palatine, are " heard and judiciouſly determined; and at the end thereof the brave new ex- " chequer, for the ſaid county Palatine; all theſe are in the baſe-court. Then " there is a draw-bridge into the inner ward, wherein are diverſe goodly lodg- " ings for the juſtices, when they come, and here the conſtable himſelf dwelleth.

" The thieves and felons are arraigned in the ſhire hall, and being condemned, " are by the conſtable of the caſtle, or his deputy, delivered to the ſheriffs of " the city, a certain diſtance without the caſtle-gate, at a ſtone called the

" Glovers-ſtone; from which place the ſaid ſheriffs convoy them to the place of " execution, called Boughton."

Again. " Upon the ſouth-ſide of the city, near unto the ſaid water of Dee, " and upon a high bank, or rock of ſtone, is mounted a ſtrong and ſtately caſtle, " round in form; the Baſe-court, likewiſe incloſed with a circular wall, which to " this day retaineth one teſtimony of the Romans magnificence, having a fair and " antient ſquare tower; which, by the teſtimony of all writers I have hitherto " met withall, beareth the name of Julius Cæſar's tower; beſides which there re- " maineth yet many goodly pieces of buildings, whereof one of them containeth " all fit and commodious rooms for the lodging and uſe of the honourable juſtices " of aſſize twice a year; another part is a goodly hall, where the court of the " common pleas, and goal delivery, and alſo the ſheriffs of the counties court, " with other buſineſſes for the county of Cheſter, are conſtantly kept and holden; " and is a place for that purpoſe of ſuch ſtate and comelineſs, that I think it is " hardly equalled with any ſhire hall in any of the ſhires in England.

" And then next unto the ſouth-end of the hall is a leſs, but fair, neat and con- " venient hall, where is continually holden the princes highneſs moſt honourable " court of exchequer, with other rooms, fitly appendant thereunto, for keeping " of the records of that court. Within the precincts of which caſtle is alſo the " king's priſon for the county of Cheſter, with the office of Prothonotary, con- " venient rooms for the dwelling of the conſtables, or keeper of the ſaid caſtle " and goal, with diverſe other rooms for ſtabling and other uſes, with a fair draw " well of water in the middeſt of the court; diverſe ſweet and dainty orchards " and gardens, beſide much of the antient building, for want of uſe, fallen to " ruine and decay, and which we may well conjecture were of great ſtatelineſs, " and great uſe, conſidering that the ſame caſtle was, as hereafter will appear, " the pallace of many worthy princes, who kept therein, no doubt, great and " moſt brave retinues; and I find that the caſtle, with the precincts thereof, were " reſerved out of that charter of king Henry the Seventh, by which the city was " made a county of itſelf; and, accordingly, hath ever ſince been uſed for the " king's majeſty's ſervice of the county of Cheſter, and eſteemed a part thereof, " and not of the county of the city."

This caſtle is built of a ſoft reddiſh ſtone, which does not well endure the weather, and is at preſent much out of repair, ſeveral large pieces of the walls having lately fallen down into the ditch. Indeed its trifling conſequence as a fortreſs would hardly juſtify the expence of a thorough repair. It is, however, commanded by a governor and lieutenant governor, and is commonly garriſoned by two companies of invalids.

This drawing was made anno 1770.

CHESTER CASTLE.

PLATE II.

As this Edifice cannot well be repreſented at one view, without taking it at ſo great a diſtance as would render the parts extremely indiſtinct and confuſed, this ſecond proſpect was judged neceſſary; which being drawn from the ditch within the walls of the city, ſhews ſome of the principal internal buildings, giving the beholder an idea of the antient magnificence of this venerable Pile. The church ſeen in the back ground is dedicated to the Virgin Mary, and called St. Mary's of the Caſtle. In and near the angle under the great window appears the rock on which the caſtle is founded.

CHESTER CASTLE.

In Peck's Deſiderata Curioſa, Cheſter Caſtle ſtands in the liſt of Queen Elizabeth's Garriſons, with the following officers and ſalaries:

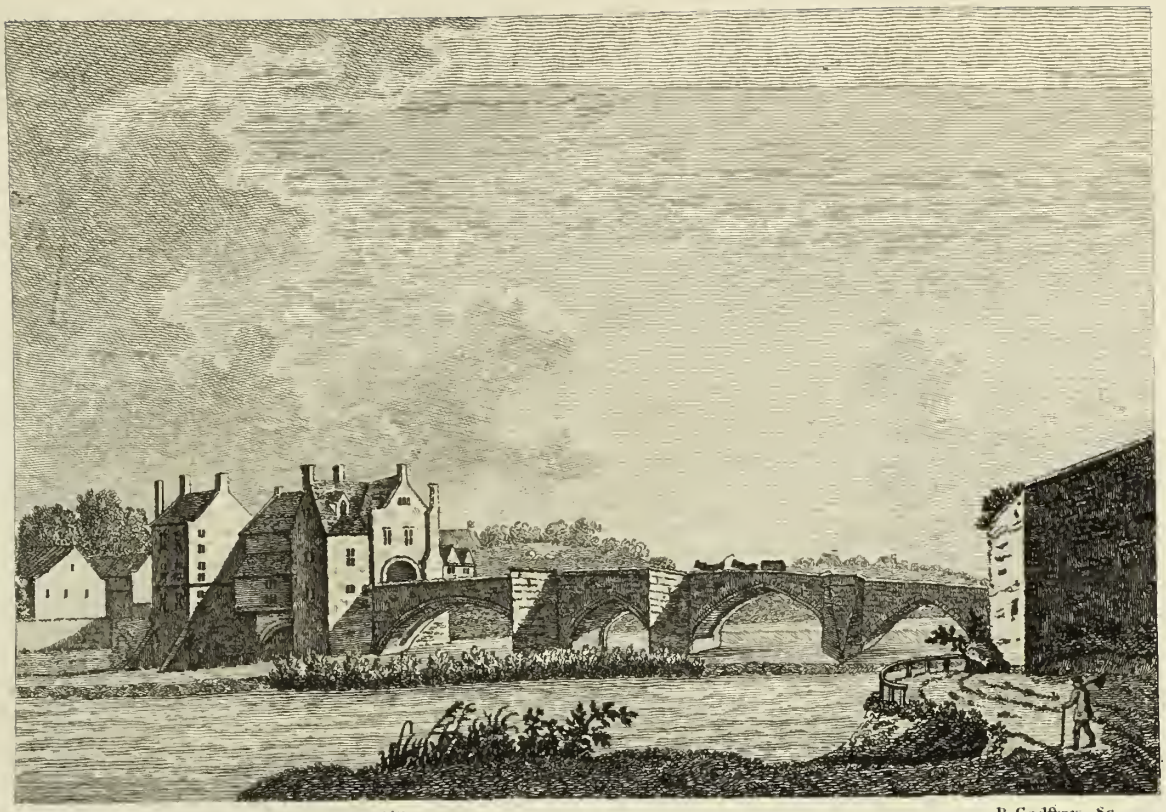
CHESTER.

	l.	s.	d.
Conſtable of the Caſtle; Fee - - - - -	6	13	4
Porter; Fee - - - - - -	4	11	3
Keeper of the Gardens; Fee - - - -	6	1	8
Surveior of the works within Cheſhire and Flint; Fee	6	1	8
Maſter Maſon; Fee - - - - -	8	12	4
Maſter Carpenter; Fee - - - -	9	2	6

It ſtill continues to be a Royal Garriſon, and has a Governor and Lieutenant Governor, each at 10*s. per diem*; and two independent companies of Invalids are ſtationed here.

During the Civil War under Charles the Firſt, Cheſter was beſieged, and at length, Feb. 3, 1645, taken by the Parliamentary forces, commanded by Sir William Brereton; but the Caſtle neither made any particular defence or ſeparate capitulation.

This Drawing was made anno 1769.



Publiſhd 1ſt March 1772 by S Hooper N° 25 Ludgate hill. B. Godfrey Sc.

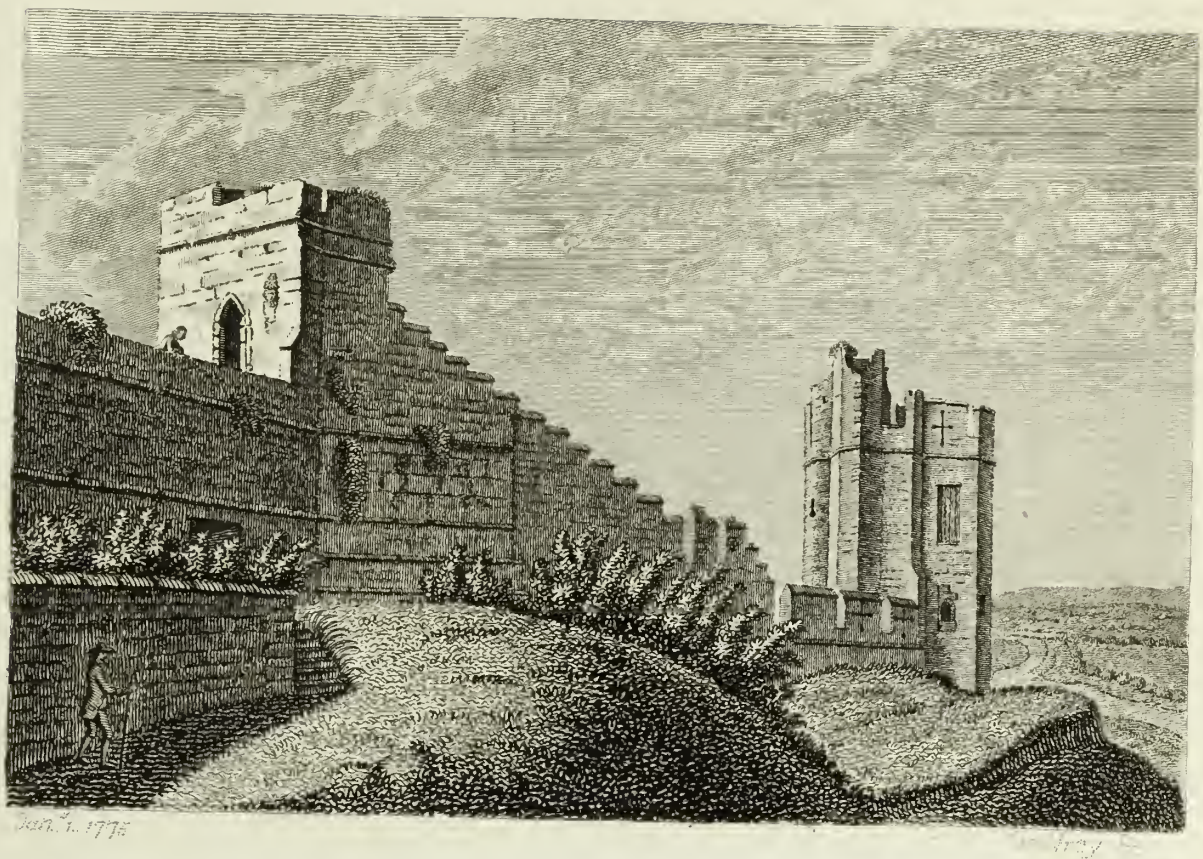
CHESTER BRIDGE.

THIS bridge is more worthy of notice for its pictureſque appearance, than remarkable for its antiquity; not but part of it is very ancient, though it appears to have been frequently repaired at different times, and with different materials; however, the greateſt part of it is built with the ſame reddiſh ſtone as the caſtle. Very little is to be met with relative to this bridge in the county hiſtories; it is ſlightly touched upon by Lee, in the Vale Royal of England, publiſhed by Dan. King, anno 1656, but neither the builder, the time of its erection, nor by whom it is repaired, is there mentioned. "The bridge gate, ſays he, is at the ſouth "part of the city, at the entering of the bridge, commonly called Dee Bridge, "which bridge is builded all of ſtone of eight arches in length: at the fartheſt end "whereof is alſo a gate; and without that, on the other ſide of the water, the "ſuburbs of the city, called Hond-bridge."

A MS. account of Cheſter, communicated by a friend, has the following paſſage relative to this bridge. "After the death of Elfleda, her brother Edward

ſucceeded to the throne, who, fighting againſt the Danes, would have been taken priſoner, but for the unparalleled courage and activity of his ſon Athelſtan. In the year after this engagement he viſited his territories in Cheſhire, and greatly ſecured them, by erecting fortreſſes at Thelwell and Mancheſter. He likewiſe finiſhed the bridge over the river Dee at Cheſter, which was begun by his ſiſter Elfleda, before which time there was a ferry for paſſengers under St. Mary's Hill, at the Ship Gate.

This view was drawn anno 1770.



THE NEW, OR, WATER TOWER, CHESTER.

THIS Tower ſeems to have been built for the defence of a Quay on the River Dee, which once flowed cloſe to it, but is now ſo choaked up by ſands, as to render it entirely uſeleſs for that purpoſe. It was built, according to the account given of it in King's Vale Royal of England, anno 1322, at the expence of the City, by one John Helpſtone, a maſon, who contracted to complete it, according to a given plan, for the ſum of one hundred pounds. The indenture, or agreement, is preſerved among the archives of the City.

THE following Deſcription of it is given in another part of the ſame book: "From the North Gate, ſtill weſtward, the wall extend-"eth to another tower, and from thence to the turning of the wall "ſouthwards; at which corner ſtandeth another fine turret, called

" the New Tower; and was pitched within the channel of Dee-
" water. Which New Tower was built, as it is reported, in or near
" to the place in the river which was the Key; whereunto veſſels of
" great burden, as well of merchandize as others, came cloſe up;
" which may the rather ſeem probable, as well by a deeper foun-
" dation of ſtone-work yet appearing from the foot of that Tower,
" reaching a good diſtance into the channel; as alſo by great rings of
" iron here and there faſtened to the ſides of the ſaid Tower, which
" if they ſerved not for the faſtening of ſuch veſſels as then uſed to
" approach to the ſame Key, I cannot learn what other uſe they ſhould
" be for."

And again, another paſſage in the ſame book ſays: "The Water-Gate
" is in the weſt ſide of the City; whereunto, in times paſt, great
" ſhips and veſſels might come at full ſea; but now ſcarce ſmall
" boats are able to come, the ſands have ſo choaked the channel;
" and although the Citizens have beſtowed marvellous great charges
" in building this New Tower, which ſtandeth in the very river
" between this Gate and the North-Gate, yet all will not ſerve; and
" therefore all the ſhips do come to a place called the New Key, ſix
" miles from the City."

The form of this Tower is extremely ſingular, its outſide being broken into a variety of angles; and thoſe neither increaſing its beauty, ſtability, or powers of defence.

This View was drawn Anno 1770.

Nov.r 23.d 1775. S. Hooper Ex. Sparrow Sc.

THE MONASTERY OF ST. BEES, CUMBERLAND.

Of this houſe Tanner gives the following hiſtory: "Bega, an holy woman "from Ireland, is ſaid to have founded, about the year of our Lord 650, a ſmall "monaſtery in Copeland, where afterward a church was built in memory of "her. This religious houſe being deſtroyed by the Danes, was reſtored by "William, ſon to Ranulph de Meſchin, Earl of Cumberland, temp. Hen. I. "and made a cell of a prior and ſix Benedictine monks to the abbey of St. "Mary at York. It was endowed (at the diſſolution) with 143l. 17s. 2d. *ob.* "*per ann.* Dugdale, 149l. 19s. 6d. Speed, and granted 7 Ed. 6th, to Sir Tho. "Challoner, but 4 et 5 *Phil. et Mar.* to the biſhop of Cheſter, and his ſucceſſors." The living is a curacy in the dioceſe of Cheſter; the patron Sir James Lowther.

THE MONASTERY OF ST. BEES, CUMBERLAND.

THIS monaſtery lies in a bottom about four miles ſouth ſouth-weſt from Whitehaven, and about one north from Egremont. The chief remains are thoſe of the conventual church, which is now uſed as a parochial one. The arches of this building are all pointed, except that over the weſt door, which is circular, and has zig-zag mouldings and ornaments of heads, like thoſe on the door of Iſley church in Oxfordſhire. The key ſtone ſeems to have repreſented the head of Chriſt. The windows in the chancel are long, and extremely narrow.

THE vicarage houſe appears to have been conſtructed out of the ruins of the monaſtery, and ſtands a little to the ſouth-weſt of it. Southward of the church are many foundations, which make it probable the offices extended that way. In the church yard, on the ſouth ſide of the church, are the almoſt ſhapeleſs trunks of the figures of two knights; one holding a ſhield, and the other with his hands joined, as in the attitude of praying. They are broken off at the knees, and much defaced by time.

A SMALL diſtance eaſt of the church ſtands the grammar ſchool, founded by Dr. Edmund Grindal, archbiſhop of Canterbury. It has a library to it, and has been much improved by the donations of Dr. Lamplugh, late archbiſhop of York, Dr. Smith, late biſhop of Carliſle, Sir John Lowther, and others. The right of nominating the maſter, is in the provoſt and fellows of Queens College, Oxford.

THE village of St. Bees lies a quarter of a mile ſouth of the monaſtery. The way to it lies over a bridge lately repaired, but having on it the date 1588, with the initials R. G.

This view, which ſhews the north-weſt aſpect of the church, was drawn 1774.

CARLISLE CASTLE, CUMBERLAND.

THIS Caſtle ſtands on the north-weſt ſide of the City of Carliſle, which it is ſaid exiſted before the coming of the Romans; being, according to our antient Chroniclers, built by a King named Luel, or Lugbul; whence it was ſtiled by the ancient Britons Caer-Luel, or Luel's City. It is encompaſſed on the north ſide by the river Eden, on the eaſt by the Petterel, and on the weſt by the Cande.

PROBABLY a ſpot ſo ſtrong by Nature was not deſtitute of a fortreſs during the time of the Romans, when, as appears from the many inſcriptions and ancient utenſils digged up hereabouts, Carliſle was a place of much eſtimation: but the preſent Caſtle was the work of William Rufus, built about the year 1093, 200 years after the City had been deſtroyed by the Danes.

KING William at firſt placed herein a colony of Flemmings; and afterwards removing theſe to the Iſle of Angleſea, he ſent in their ſtead a number of Huſbandmen from the ſouth to inſtruct the inhabitants in the art of cultivating their lands.

KING Henry I. is ſaid to have encreaſed the fortifications of the City, and to have ſtrengthened it with a garriſon; he alſo raiſed it to the dignity of an Epiſcopal See, granting it many privileges and immunities, with intention to render it ſtrong and populous, it being an important barrier againſt the incurſion of the Scots.

CARLISLE CASTLE, CUMBERLAND.

In the reign of Henry III. that Prince gave the cuſtody of the Caſtle and County to Robert de Veteri Ponte, or Vipont.

According to Camden, the Caſtle was rebuilt, or much repaired by King Richard III. whoſe Arms, he ſays, were ſet up againſt it. Probably theſe repairs became neceſſary from the damage it ſuffered in the great fire, anno 1292, in which, the Chronicle of Lanercoſt Abbey ſays, it was burned down, together with the Cathedral and Suburbs. Or it might, at length, have become ruinous from the aſſaults it had ſuſtained from the Scots, by whom it was often beſieged, and twice taken; once in the reign of King Stephen; and retaken by King Henry II.; and, again, in the time of King John."

King Henry VIII. cauſed ſeveral additions to be made to the fortifications of this Town and Caſtle: and Queen Elizabeth built the Chapel and Barracks, as appears by her Arms placed thereon.

This Caſtle is of an irregular figure, having a ſtrong Gate-houſe, and three ſmall ſquare Towers, of little or no uſe in the preſent mode of defence. Theſe communicate with a Rampart and Parapet, for the aſcent of which there are ſeveral flights of ſteps.

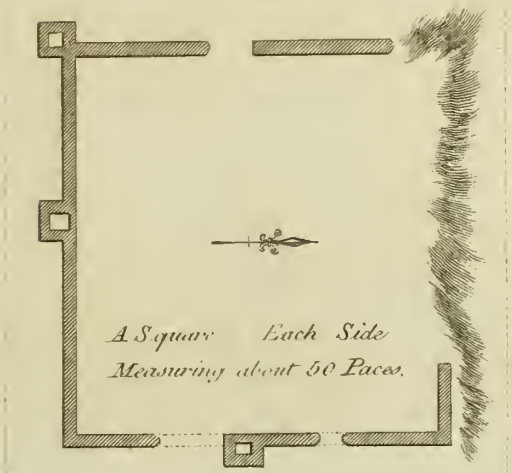
The Keep ſtands on the eaſt ſide. It is built of reddiſh ſtone, and now uſed for a ſtore-houſe. It is ſeparated from the Caſtle-yard by a ditch on its weſt ſide; which ditch is defended by a curious round Baſtion. In the inner Gate of the Caſtle is ſtill to be ſeen the old Portcullis.—Here are likewiſe ſeveral ancient guns mounted on rotten and unſerviceable carriages. This fortreſs ſuffered ſome injury during the Civil Wars in the reign of King Charles I. and was battered and taken by the Duke of Cumberland in the Rebellion of 1745. The breach cauſed by the Duke's batteries, which were planted on a riſing ground to the weſt at near 500 yards diſtance, are now repaired; for which purpoſe the inſide of the ſouth-wall has been ſtripped of its facing.

Here were ſeveral embraſures raiſed with earth, moſt of the batteries being originally en barbette.

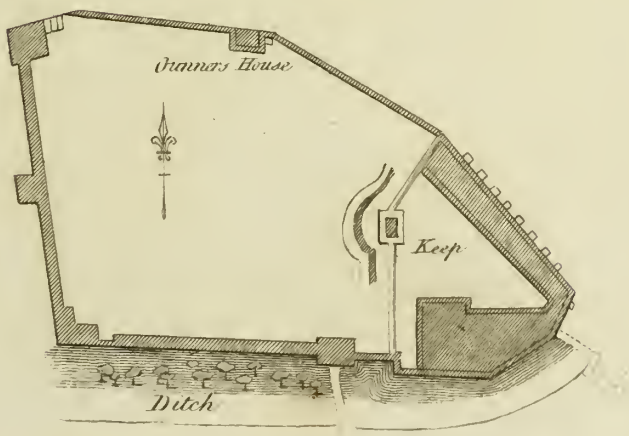
Here the unfortunate Mary Queen of Scots lodged when ſhe fled from Scotland. Her apartments are ſtill ſhewn among the Admiranda of the Caſtle.

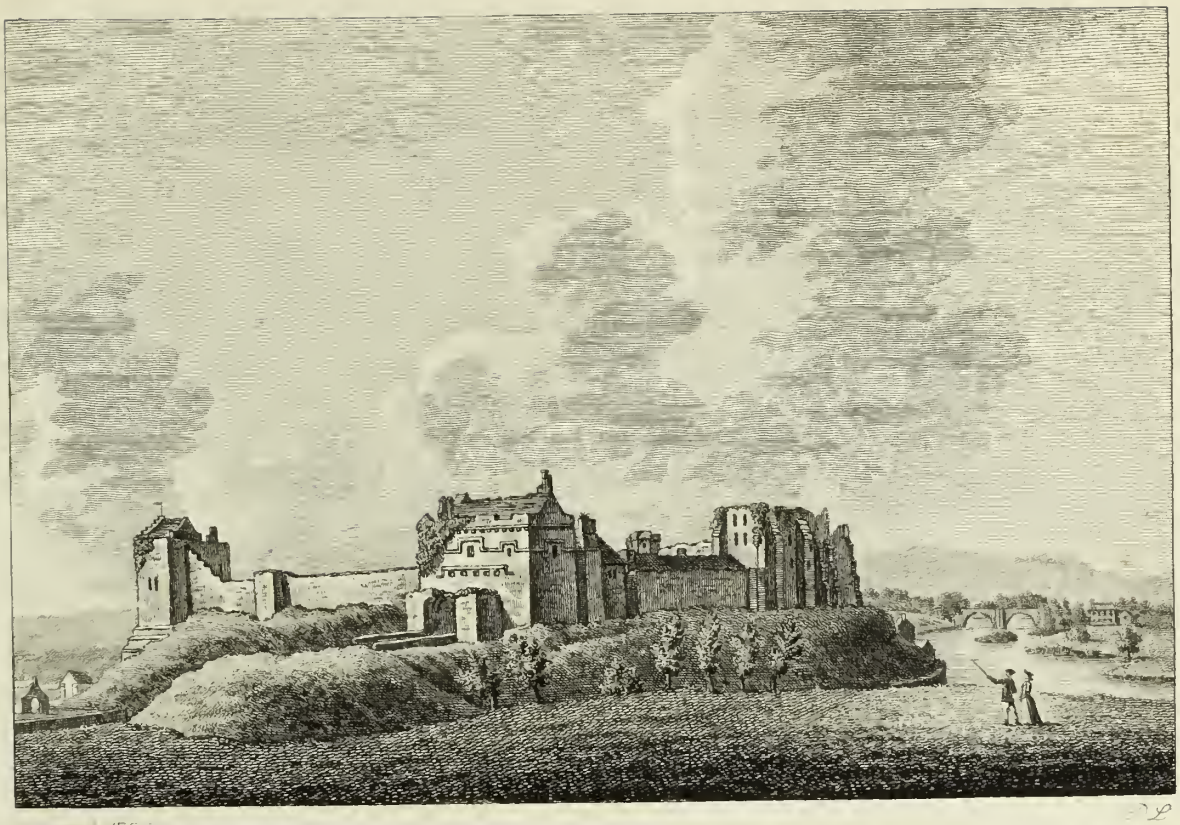
This View, which ſhews the North-Eaſt Aſpect, was drawn Anno 1774.

Penrith Castle Cumberland



Carlisle Castle





COCKERMOUTH CASTLE, CUMBERLAND.

PLATE I.

THIS was the Baronial Caſtle of the Honour of Cockermouth, built, as is ſuppoſed, ſoon after the Conqueſt, by William de Meſchines, who poſſeſſed that Honour by gift of his brother Ranulph, Earl of Cumberland; to whom the Conqueror gave all that part of Cumberland, called Copeland, lying between the Dudden and the Darwent.

FROM the ſaid William this Honour, for want of heirs male, came to Gilbert Pipard; and from him, for the like cauſe, to Richard de Lucy; whoſe daughter and co-heireſs marrying Thomas de Moulton, had iſſue a ſon Anthony, who took upon him the name of Lucy; and to him, as appears in Madox's Baronia, this Honour, together with the Manor of Pappe Caſtle, were granted by Edward III. in the ſecond year of his reign. This Anthony dying without iſſue, his eſtates devolved to his ſiſter Maud, who firſt married Gilbert de Umfraville, and afterwards Henry de Percy, Earl of Northumberland. She did, by a fine levied in the Octaves of St. John Baptiſt, in the reign of King Richard II. A. D. 1384, ſettle the Caſtle and Honour of Cockermouth, with a large proportion of her inheritance,

upon her huſband and his heirs male, with diverſe remainders to the family of the Percy's, upon condition that they ſhould always bear the arms of Lucy, which are, Gules, three luces or pikes, hauriant, argent, in all ſhields, banners, enſigns, and coats of arms whatſoever, quarterly with their own. In this family it continued till Joceline, the laſt Earl, leaving only a daughter, ſhe carried it in marriage to Charles Seymour, Duke of Somerſet; and by the death of Algernon (the laſt Duke) without heirs-male, it deſcended, together with the title of Earl of Egremont, to Sir Charles Windham, Bart. whoſe ſon is the preſent Proprietor.

Other Accounts attribute the building of this Caſtle to Waldof, firſt Lord of Allerdale, ſon of Goſpatrick, Earl of Northumberland, cotemporary with William the Conqueror. Waldof, it is ſaid, reſided firſt at Pappe Caſtle, in this neighbourhood; which he afterwards demoliſhed, and with the materials erected this edifice.

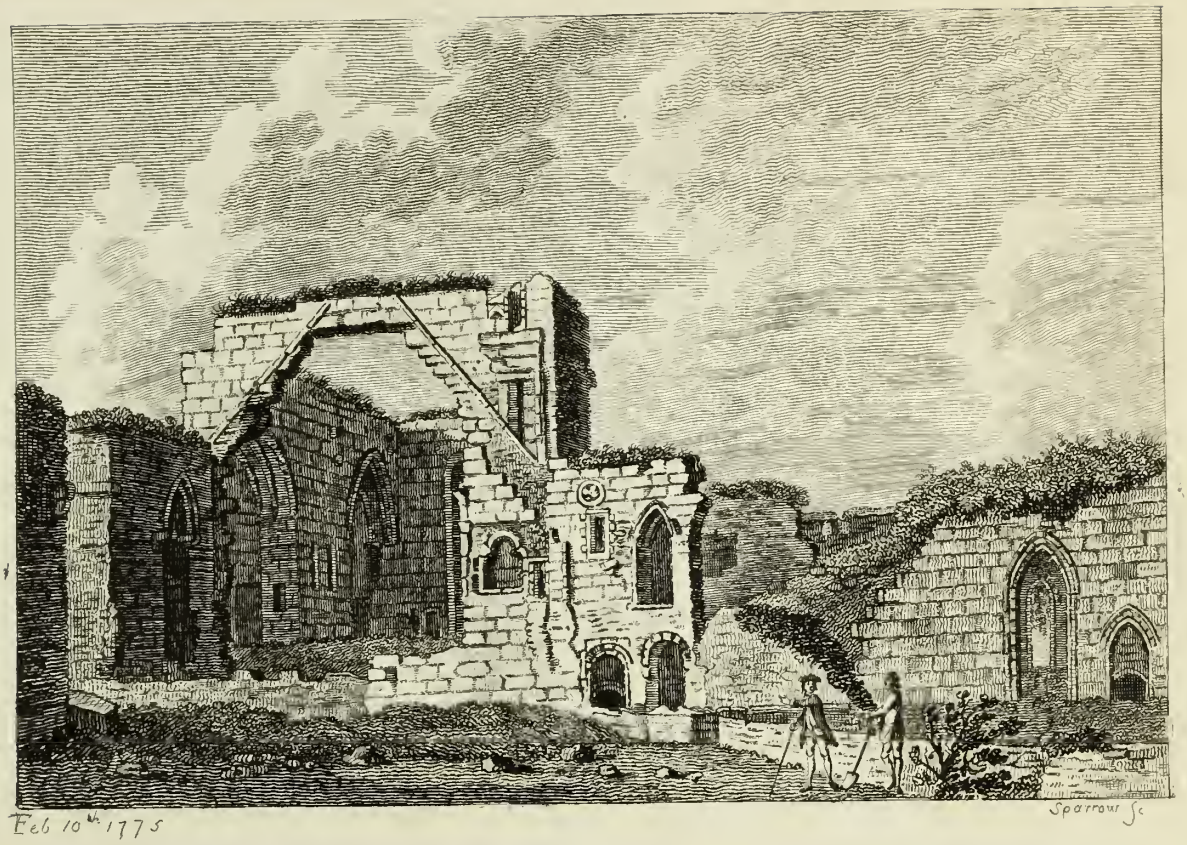
This Caſtle ſtands on the weſt ſide of the Coker, on a mount, ſeemingly artificial, near the Darwent. The dimenſions of the walls, which form nearly a ſquare, are computed about 600 yards in compaſs; they are flanked by ſeveral ſquare towers. The entrance is on the eaſt ſide, over a bridge. Over the outer gate are five ſhields of arms; four of them are ſaid to be thoſe of the Moulton's, Umfraville's, Lucy's, and Percy's. In this gate are ſome habitable rooms, wherein the Auditor holds a Court twice every year.

Within the walls are two courts. In the firſt are ſome ſmall modern tenements inhabited by a perſon who takes care of the Caſtle. From this court, through a gate, is the entrance into the ſecond. On each ſide of this gate are two deep dungeons, each capable of holding fifty perſons; they are vaulted at the top, and have only a ſmall opening in order to admit the priſoners, who either deſcended by a ladder, or were lowered down with ropes. On the outſide of the gate, juſt even with the ground, are two narrow ſlits; one on each ſide, ſloping inwards. Down theſe were thrown the proviſions allotted for the wretched beings confined there, who had no other light, or air, but what was admitted through theſe chinks.

Within the ſecond court ſtood the Manſion, now in ruins. The Kitchen, as it is called, makes a pictureſque appearance. It has one of thoſe monſtrous chimneys, ſo common in old manſions, which ſerve to give an idea of the ancient hoſpitality. Under it is a groined vault, ſaid to have been the Chapel, ſupported near the middle by a large polygonal column, and lighted by only one window.

During the Civil Wars it was garriſoned, Anno 1648, for the King; and being beſieged and taken, was burned, and never ſince repaired; altho' the preſent Earl has cauſed the outer walls to be new pointed, and the rubbiſh to be removed from the inner court.

This View, which repreſents the North-eaſt Aſpect, was drawn Anno 1774.



COCKERMOUTH CASTLE, CUMBERLAND.

PLATE II.

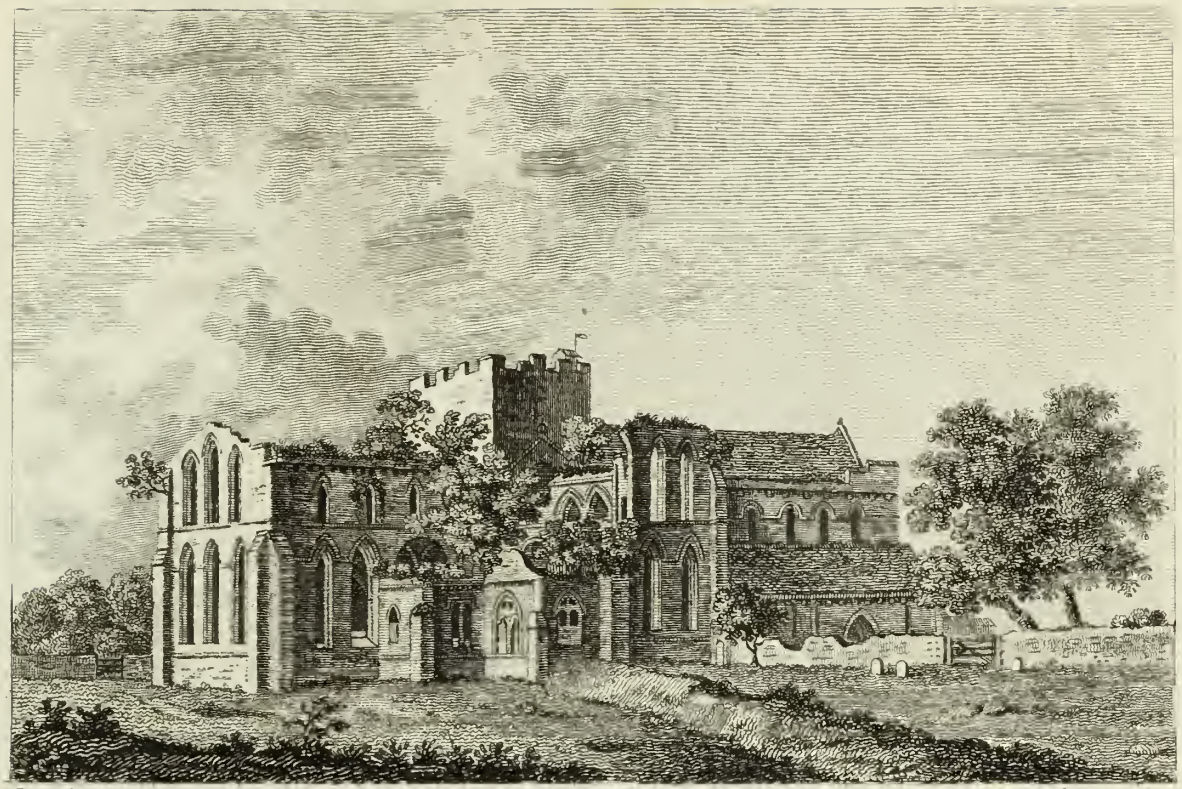
THE former view exhibited the outſide of this Caſtle; this ſhews the inſide of its inner Court, view'd nearly in the contrary direction.

THE great room called the kitchen is here very perſpicuous. Towards the right hand, and near its top, appear the remains of a ſtair-caſe.

THE ſmall door near the midde of the Plate, with an inner arch appearing juſt above the wall, is that which leads to the ſtair-caſe, deſcending into the chapel.

UNDER the largeſt of the two pointed arches, towards the right hand, lies the paſſage to and from the outer court.

This view was drawn anno 1774.



LANERCOST PRIORY, CUMBERLAND.

PLATE I.

THIS was a Priory of Canons Regular of the Order of St. Auguſtine, dedicated to the Honour of God and St. Mary Magdalene. It was founded by Robert, ſon of Hubert de Vallibus, Lord of Gilleſland. The Church was dedicated by Bernard, Biſhop of Carliſle, anno 1169.

ROBERT de Vallibus, the Founder, by his charter granted to theſe Canons diverſe valuable parcels of land, whoſe boundaries are therein deſcribed; alſo the Church of Walton, with the Chapel of Treverman, the Churches of Erchinton, of Brampton, Karlaton and Farlam, with all their appurtenances and dependencies.

HE likewiſe gave the paſturage for thirty cows, and twenty ſows, in his Foreſt of Walton; with all the bark of the timber-trees, and

the dry wood in the foreſts of his Barony; and free paſſage for themſelves and ſervants through his eſtates to their different churches and houſes, &c. to Brampton, Walton, Traverſman, Warboleman, and Roſwrageth, Danton, and Brenkibeth.

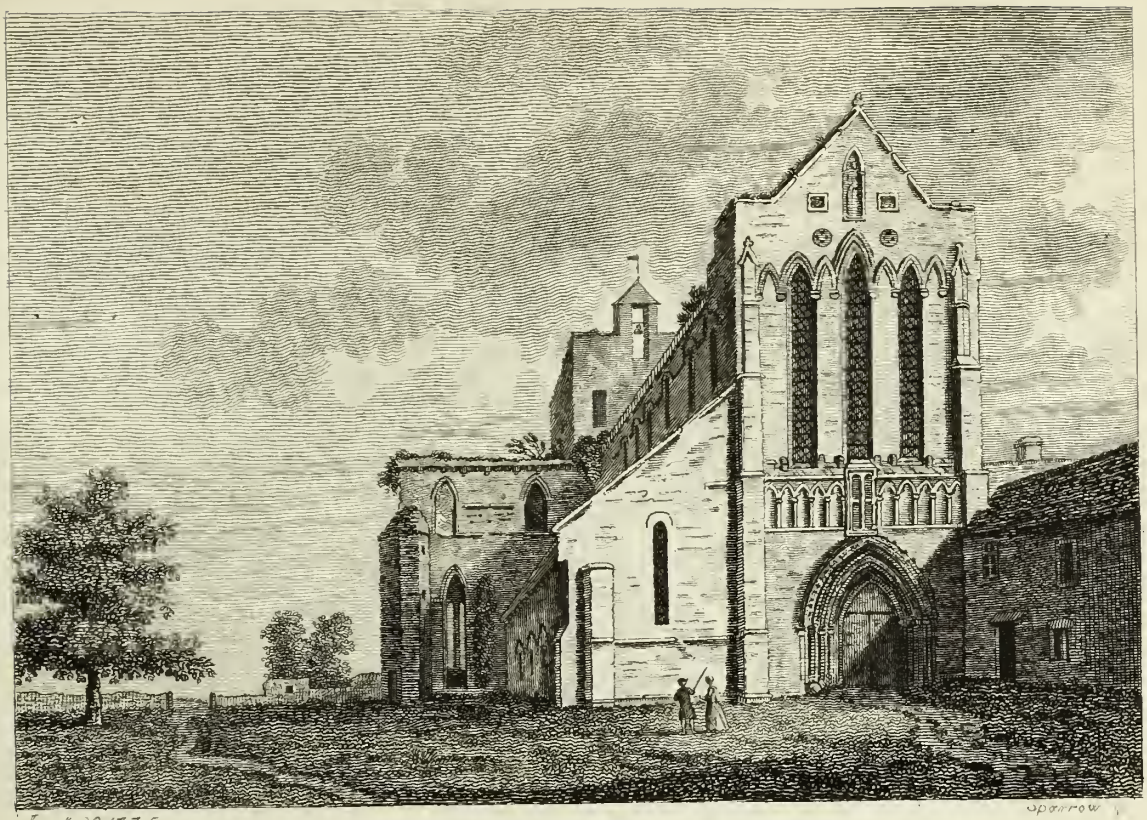
He moreover beſtowed on them certain lands in his Wood at Brampton, for the building of a barn to collect their tythes: he alſo permitted them to make themſelves a fiſh-pond any-where within his demeſnes, provided that it did not injure his mill.

All theſe, with many other donations, were confirmed by the charter of King Richard the Iſt.

Robert de Vallibus, dying without iſſue, was ſucceeded by his brother Ralph, whoſe great-grand-daughter Maud marrying Thomas de Multon, carried the Barony into that family. Their grand-daughter and heireſs Margaret in like manner conveyed it to the family of the Dacres. At the Diſſolution, the ſite was granted to Thomas Lord Dacre, as Patron, or Founder of this Houſe, being the legal repreſentative of Robert de Vallibus.

At the Suppreſſion, the annual revenues of this Houſe were eſtimated at 77l. 7s. 11d. Dugdale; 79l. 19s. Speed; at which time, here were a Prior and ſeven Canons.

This View, which repreſents the North Aſpect of the Priory Church, was drawn Anno 1774.



LANERCOST PRIORY, CUMBERLAND.

PLATE II.

THIS Priory is ſituated in a romantic valley, a ſmall diſtance north of the river Irthing, and a little to the ſouthward of the Picts Wall.

ITS remains conſiſt of the Priory-church, and ſome few of the offices of the Monaſtery, now fitted up for a farm-houſe.

THE Chancel is in ruins, where, amidſt ſhrubs, brambles, and nettles, appear ſeveral very elegant tombs of the Dacre family, but much damaged by the weather: the way into one of the vaults beneath is laid ſo open, that the ſtairs leading down are viſible. Here are two ſtories or ſeries of arches, the under ones circular, ſupported by columns of great thickneſs, ſome cylindrical, and ſome polygonal. About the ruined parts of this building many aſh-trees have taken root, and flouriſh among the disjointed ſtones, affording a very pictureſque appearance. The Nave is in good repair, and ſerves for the Pariſh-church; it has two ſide aiſles divided by pointed arches of a very conſiderable ſpan.

ON a ſtone on the inſide of the Eaſt Wall, is the following inſcription:

" Robertus de Vallibus filius Huberti Domini de Giſland
" Fundator Prioratus de Lanercoſt, A. D. 1116. Ædergaini Uxor ejus ſine Prole
" Reverendus G. Story hujus Ec. Paſtor
" Grato Animo hunc lapidem poſuit 1761."

Which may be thus tranſlated: "Robert de Vallibus, the ſon of Hubert, Lord of "Giſland, Founder of the Priory of Lanercoſt, A. D. 1116. Ædergane his wife "had no children. The Rev. G. Story, A. M. miniſter of this Church, out of "gratitude placed this ſtone 1761." According to this date, the Monaſtery was founded 53 years before the dedication of the Church. In the eaſt window, under a coat armorial of three cockle-ſhells, are the following lines:

"Mille & quingentos ad quinquaginta novemque
"Adjice, & hoc Anno condidit iſtud opus
"Thomas Daker Eques, ſedem qui primus in iſtam
"Venerat, extinctâ religione loci.
"Hoc Edvardus ei dederat, devoverat ante
"Henricus longæ Præmia Militiæ."

"To one thouſand and five-hundred add fifty and nine, and in that year Thomas "Daker, Eſq. built this work. He was the firſt who came to this ſeat after the "diſſolution of the Priory. It was given him by Edward, though before pro-"miſed by Henry, as a reward for his long military ſervices."

Probably the work here alluded to, was the window whereon the inſcription is placed; which in the outrageous zeal of the Times might have been demoliſhed at the ſurrender. The Church itſelf is apparently too ancient to be meant.

The weſt front of this Building was neatly finiſhed, and in a niche near the top is an elegant female figure. A ſmall diſtance weſt of the Church, in what was the Church-yard-wall, is the remains of a handſome gate, whoſe arch is a ſegment of a large circle. About a mile ſouth-eaſt-ward, on an eminence, ſtands Naworth Caſtle, which is plainly ſeen from hence. This was formerly alſo the property of the Dacre family.

This Monaſtery, at preſent, belongs to the Earl of Carliſle, into whoſe family it came by a marriage with the ſiſter and co-heir of the laſt Lord Dacre.

It is by ſome related, that this Priory was founded as an expiation for the death of one Giles Bueth, who pretending to have a right to the Barony of Gilliſland, was ſlain by Robert de Vallibus, or Hubert his father. But as no ſuch motive is mentioned, or hinted at in the Charter of Foundation, probably it is a groundleſs ſtory.

In the year 1306, as appears in Leland's Collectanea, King Edward the Firſt remained here ſome time, whilſt he ſent his Juſtices to Berwick, who there, according to Stowe, tried hundreds and thouſands of breakers of the peace and conſpirators, many of whom were hanged; "and the Counteſſe of Bowen was "cloſed in a cage, whoſe breadth, length, height, and depth, was eight "foote, and hanged over the wals of Berwike."

This View, which repreſents the Weſt Aſpect of the Priory Church, was drawn Anno 1774.

NAWORTH CASTLE, CUMBERLAND.

PLATE I.

This Caſtle is ſtill entire, and inhabited. For the annexed account of it, and its furniture, I am indebted to Thomas Pennant, Eſq. who permitted me to tranſcribe it from his memorandums. A viſit I made to it in Auguſt, 1774, enables me to bear teſtimony to the faithfulneſs of the deſcription, which here follows in his own words:

"Two miles from Brampton viſit Naworth Caſtle, once belonging to the Dacres, afterwards the property (I think by marriage) of William Lord Howard, commonly known by the name of Bauld-Willey.

"It is a large pile, ſquare, and built about a court. In the ſouth ſide is a gateway, with the arms of the Dacres; over the door, thoſe of the Howards. On the north, it impends over the river Ithing, at a great height; the banks ſhagged with wood. The whole houſe is a true ſpecimen of ancient inconvenience, of magnificence and littleneſs; the rooms numerous, acceſſible by ſixteen ſtair-caſes, with moſt frequent and ſudden aſcents and deſcents into the bargain. The great hall is twenty-five paces long, by nine and a half broad; of a good height; has a gallery at one end, adorned with four vaſt creſts, carved in wood; viz. a griffin and dolphin, with the ſcollops; an unicorn, and an

" ox with a coronet round his neck. In front, is a figure in wood of an armed man; two " others, perhaps vaſſals, in ſhort jackets and caps; a pouch pendant behind, and the " mutilated remains of Priapus to each; one has wooden ſhoes. Theſe ſeem the Ludibrium " Aulæ in thoſe groſs days.

" The top and upper end of the room is painted in ſquares, to the number of 107, " repreſenting the Saxon kings and heroes. The chimney here is five yards and a half " broad. Within this is another apartment, hung with old tapeſtry, a head of Anne of " Cleeves; on one ſide of her, a ſmall picture of a lady full-length, &c. and many others.

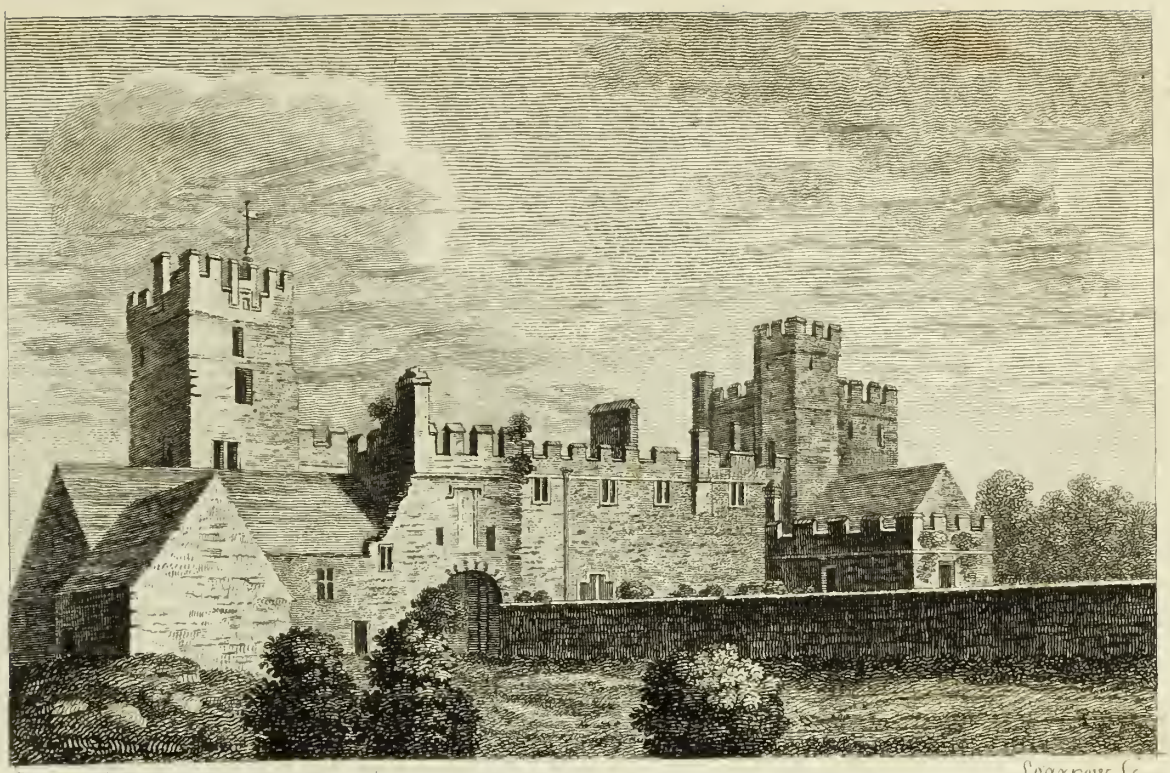
" A long narrow gallery.

" Lord William Howard's bed-room, arms and motto over the chimney. His library, " a ſmall room, in a very ſecret place, high up in one of the towers, well ſecured by doors, " and narrow ſtair-caſe. Not a book has been added ſince his days, i. e. thoſe of Queen " Elizabeth. In it is a vaſt caſe, three feet high, which opens into three leaves, having " ſix great pages paſted in, being an account of St. Joſeph of Arimathea, and his twelve " diſciples, who founded Glaſtonbury; and at the end, a long hiſtory of ſaints, with the " number of years or days for which each could grant indulgences.

" The roof is coarſely carved. The windows are high, and are to be aſcended by three " ſtone ſteps; ſuch was the caution of the times. It is ſaid Lord William was very " ſtudious, and wrote much; that once, when he was thus employed, a ſervant came to " tell him that a priſoner was then juſt brought in, and deſired to know what ſhould be " done with him? Lord William, vexed at being diſturbed, anſwered peeviſhly, Hang him. " When he had finiſhed his ſtudy, he called, and ordered the man to be brought before " him for examination; but found that his orders had been literally obeyed. He was a " very ſevere, but moſt uſeful man at that time, in this lawleſs place. His dungeon inſtills " horror; it conſiſts of four dark apartments, three below, and one above, up a long ſtair- " caſe, all well ſecured; in the uppermoſt is one ring, to which criminals were chained, " and the marks where many more have been.

" Close by the library is an ancient Oratory, moſt richly ornamented on the ſides of the " cieling with coats of arms and carvings in wood, painted and gilt. On one ſide is a " good painting on wood, in the ſtile of Lucas Van Leyden; it repreſents the Flagellation " of our Saviour, his Crucifixion and Reſurrection. Here are alſo various ſculptures in " white marble; an abbeſs, with a ſword in her hand, waiting on a king, who is ſtabbing " himſelf; a monk, with a king's head in his hand; and ſeveral others. This place is well " ſecured; for here Lord William enjoyed his religion in privacy.

" The chapel is below ſtairs; the top and part of the ſide are painted in pannels like " the hall; and on one ſide are the creſts of arms and pedigree of the Howards, from " Fulcho to 1623 and 1644. Under a great ſprawling figure of an old man, with a branch " riſing from him (on the cieling) is written, Pictor, MDXII. On the great window, in " glaſs, are repreſented a knight and a lady kneeling; on their mantles pictured theſe arms, " three eſcallops and chequers."



NAWORTH CASTLE, CUMBERLAND.

PLATE II.

TRADITION ſays this caſtle was built by the Dacres, but by which of them is not aſcertained. One of them, Robert de Dacre, from a quotation in Madox's Hiſtory of the Exchequer, ſeems to have been ſheriff of Cumberland, 39th of Hen. 3d, and another, Ranulph de Dacre, 14th of Ed. 1ſt, conſtable of the tower.

THE firſt mention of this caſtle is in the reign of Richard 2d, when in the 18th of that reign, it appears from Madox's Beronia, that William de Dacre, ſon and heir of Hugh de Dacre, who was brother and heir of Ranulph de Dacre, held it, with the manor of Irchington, to which it belonged; alſo the manors of Burgh, near Sandes, Layſingby, and Farlham, and other lands, by the ſervice of one entire barony, and of doing homage and fealty to the king, and of yielding to him for cornage at his exchequer at Carliſle yearly, at the feaſt of the aſſumption of St. Mary, 51s. 8d. By what feofment, whether old or new, ſays Madox, does not appear; neither in what king's reign Ranulph de Dacre, anceſtor of William here named, was feoff'd; but it is plain, ſome anceſtor under whom Ranulph claimed, was enfeft to hold by barony.

IT continued in the family of the Dacres, till the year 1569, when on the 17th of May, according to Stowe, "George Lord Dacre of Grayſtoke, ſonne and heire of Thomas Lord Dacre, being a child "in yeere's, and then ward to Thomas Lord Howard, Duke of Norfolk, was by a great miſchaunce "ſlayne at Thetford, in the houſe of Sir Richard Fulmenſtone, knight, by meane of a vauting horſe "of wood, ſtanding within the ſame houſe; upon which horſe, as he meant to have vauted, and the "pinnes at the feet being not made ſure, the horſe fell upon him, and bruiſed the brains out of his "head."

IN the January following, Leonard Dacre, Eſq; of Horlſey, in the county of York, ſecond ſon to Lord William Dacre of Giſland, being diſſatisfied with a legal deciſion, by which his nieces were adjudg-

ed to ſucceed to the eſtate of their brother the Lord Dacre, whoſe tragical death was juſt here related; he entered into a rebellion, with deſign to carry off the Queen of Scots; but being diſappointed by her removal to Coventry, and having the command of 3000 men, which he had been entruſted to raiſe for the queen's ſervice, he ſeized ſeveral caſtles, among which were thoſe of Greyſtock and Naworth; but being attacked and defeated by Lord Hunſdon, at the head of the garriſon of Berwick, he fled to Flanders, where he died.

THIS caſtle next came into the poſſeſſion of Lord William Howard, the third ſon of Thomas Duke of Norfolk, in right of his wife Elizabeth, ſiſter of George, the laſt Lord Dacre, beforementioned. In 1607, when Cambden viſited it, it was under repair; and Biſhop Gibſon ſays, it was again repaired, and made fit for the reception of a family, by the Right Hon. Charles Howard, great grandſon to the Lord William Howard beforementioned.

I SHALL here tranſcribe another deſcription of this caſtle and furniture, ſent me by a gentleman who viewed it anno 1732, which though it repeats many things mentioned in the former account, yet it has alſo diverſe circumſtances worthy obſervation, not there taken notice of.

"THIS is an ancient ſtone building; the front long, with a ſquare tower at each angle; then you "enter a court. In the noble hall, the pictures of Anglo-Saxon kings, and painted on wooden ſquare "panels, make the ceiling, and part of the wainſcot at the further end of the room: they were brought "from Kirk-Oſwald caſtle when that was demoliſhed. The chapel has a ceiling, and part of its wainſ-"cot of the ſame kind, being paintings of patriarchs, Jewiſh kings, &c. Here is alſo painted a genea-"logy of the family from Fulcho, with their arms. It has a floor of plaiſter of Paris, as have ſome other "of the rooms. Some of the apartments are very large and ſpacious; the ceiling of one conſiſts of "ſmall ſquare panels of wood, black and white interchangeably; the white has two different carvings, "the black is unwrought. The very little Popiſh chapel is above ſtairs; the inſide work curiouſly "carved and gilt; here are ſome ſmall figures of the paſſion, &c. Joining to this chapel is the library, "which has a good wooden roof; the books are old; there are not above one or two of the manu-"ſcripts here now. *Vide Cat. Librorum M. S. Angl. & Hib. Tom 2d, p.* 14, &c. The Earl of Carliſle "never lives here, but at Caſtle-Howard in Yorkſhire. In the garden wall are ſtones with Roman "inſcriptions, collected probably from the Picts Wall; a general account of theſe ſtones is given in "Horſley's Britannia Romana."

CAMBDEN, who alſo mentions theſe ſtones, gives the following copy of ſome of their inſcriptions. One is,

IVL. AVG. DVO. . M SILV. . VM

On another,

.I. O. M . . . . II . AEL . DAC . . C.P. . . EST
VRELIVS. FA. L. S. TRIB. PET. VO. COS.

On a third,

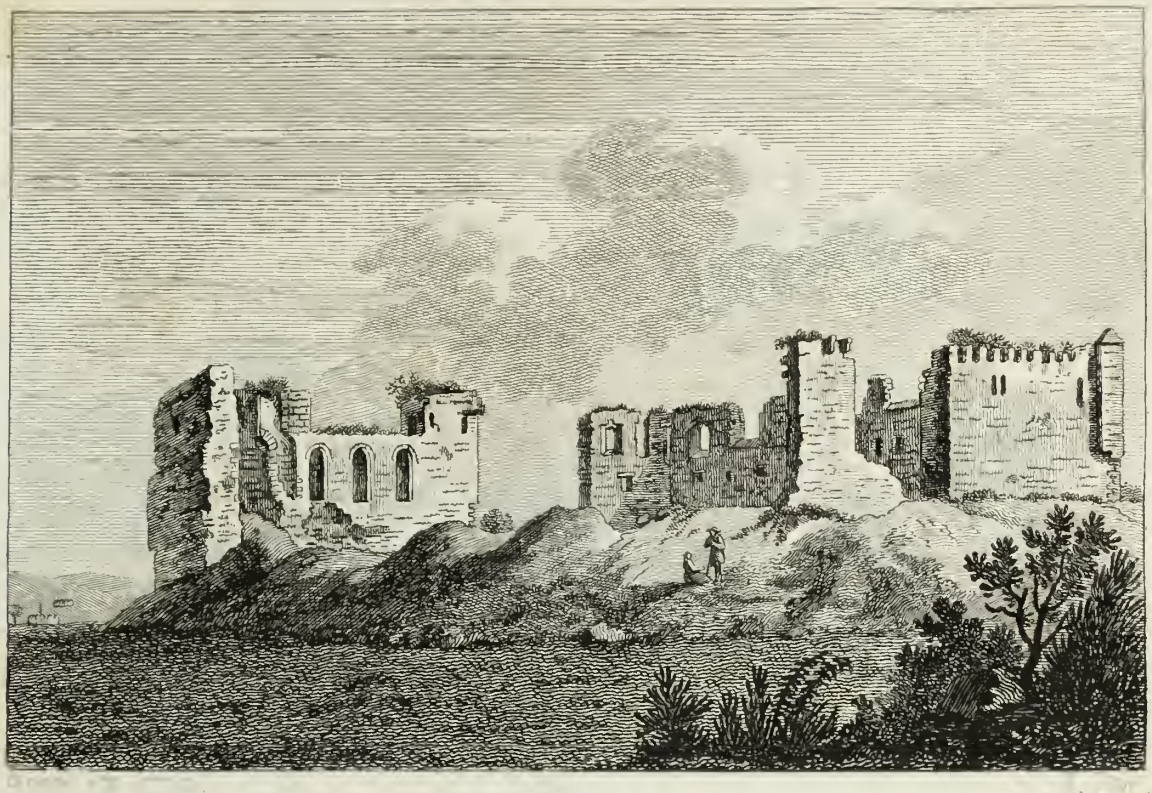
LEG. II. AVG.

On a fourth,

COH. J. AEL. DAC. CORD. . ALEC . PER. . . .

THESE ſtones were, by the late Earl of Carliſle, given to Sir Thomas Robinſon, who married his ſiſter, and were by him removed to his Muſeum at Rookſby.

This view, which repreſents the entrance into the caſtle, was drawn anno 1772.



PENRITH CASTLE, CUMBERLAND.

THIS Caſtle ſtands near the weſt end of the Town: both its builder and the time of its conſtruction are unknown. Leland, who mentions it in his Itinerary, calls it "A ſtrong Caſtel of the Kinges;" an appellation it does not from its remains appear to have deſerved.

CAMDEN alſo ſpeaks of it, but mentions neither the date of its erection, nor its founder. He, indeed, ſays, it was repaired in Henry the Sixth's time, out of the ruins of Maburg. This is by his laſt Editor juſtly deemed a miſtake, and contradicted in a marginal note.

IT is built of a coarſe reddiſh ſtone, and was nearly ſquare, each ſide meaſuring about 125 feet. All but a ſmall fragment of the north wall is tumbled down. There ſeems to have been a ſmall baſtion-like projection on the ſouth-weſt angle, but by much too trifling to ſerve for a defence. The ſouth-eaſt and north-eaſt angles have no ſuch addition; and whether or not there was one on the north-weſt cannot be diſcovered, thoſe angles being entirely demoliſhed. In the middle of each face was a ſmall projection like a buttreſs or turret, and round the top of the walls run brackets, ſuch as uſually ſupport machicolations; but theſe ſeem to have been intended rather for ſhew than uſe. Neither the height nor thickneſs of the walls are extraordinary; the former no where exceeding thirty, nor the latter five feet.

PENRITH CASTLE, CUMBERLAND.

This building ſeems to owe its preſent ruinous ſtate to more violent cauſes than the ſlow depredations of time and weather. Yet Hiſtory does not mention it as the ſcene of any great military atchievement; neither was its form, deſtitute of flanks, by any means calculated to ſuſtain a ſiege. Perhaps the value of its materials may have conduced to its deſtruction; for ſuch a propenſity have our Farmers to deſtroy an ancient monument, that they will beſtow more labour to disjoint a few ſtones to mend their buildings, than would earn them money enough to purchaſe three times the quantity.

This Caſtle, it is ſaid, continued in the Crown till the reign of King William the Third, when that Prince granted it, together with the Honour of Penrith, to William Bentinck, Earl of Portland, anceſtor to the preſent Duke of Portland.

In a pleaſing deſcription of this part of the country, entitled, "An Excurſion "to the Lakes," there is the following agreeable portrait of this Caſtle:

"We viewed the ruins of Penrith Caſtle:—It is ſaid to have aroſe on the "foundations of a Roman fortreſs, the traces of which are not now to be diſcovered. "—The buildings form a ſquare, and are ſituate on a riſing ground ſurrounded with "a ditch.—The ſcite towards the town is much more elevated than on any of the "other quarters. This front conſiſts of the remains of an angular tower to the "eaſt, which now ſtands ſeparated from the reſt by the falling of the walls: The "centre, which projects a little from the plane of the front, is haſtening to decay, "preſenting to the eye broken chambers, paſſages and ſtairs.—This part of the "building is ſtill connected with the weſtern angular tower, an open hanging "gallery forming the communication.—Below this gallery a large opening is "made by the falling of the building, forming a rude arch, through which, and "the broken walls to the eaſt, the interior parts of the ruin are perceived in a "pictureſque manner.—Nothing remains within but part of a ſtone arched vault, "which, by its ſimilitude to places of the like nature which we had formerly "ſeen, we conceived to have been the priſon."

This View, which repreſents the North-Weſt Aſpect, was drawn Anno 1774.

17 April 1773. Godfrey Sculp.

BEAUCHIEF, OR, BEECHIFF PRIORY, DERBYSHIRE.

THIS was a Priory of Premonſtratenſian or White Canons. It ſtands three miles north-weſt of Dronfield, and was founded anno 1183, by Robert Fitz Ranulph, Lord of Alfreton, Norton and Marnham, one of the knights who ſlew Thomas Becket, archbiſhop of Canterbury, and who, in expiation of that fact, erected the monaſtery, and dedicated it to him after his canonization, by the title of St. Thomas the Martyr, and all the appurtenances thereunto belonging.

THOMAS de CHAWORTH granted to the Prior and convent the hamlet of Greenhull, with all his rights and privileges, for the maintenance of one Canon perpetually to celebrate maſs at the altar of the Holy Croſs for his ſoul, and the ſouls of his father and mother, wives and children, and thoſe of all the Faithful, and for an annual ſervice as for a defunct Abbot. This gift was confirmed by Thomas de Chaworth, one of his ſucceſſors; as alſo, with divers other donations, by the charter of Edward the Second.

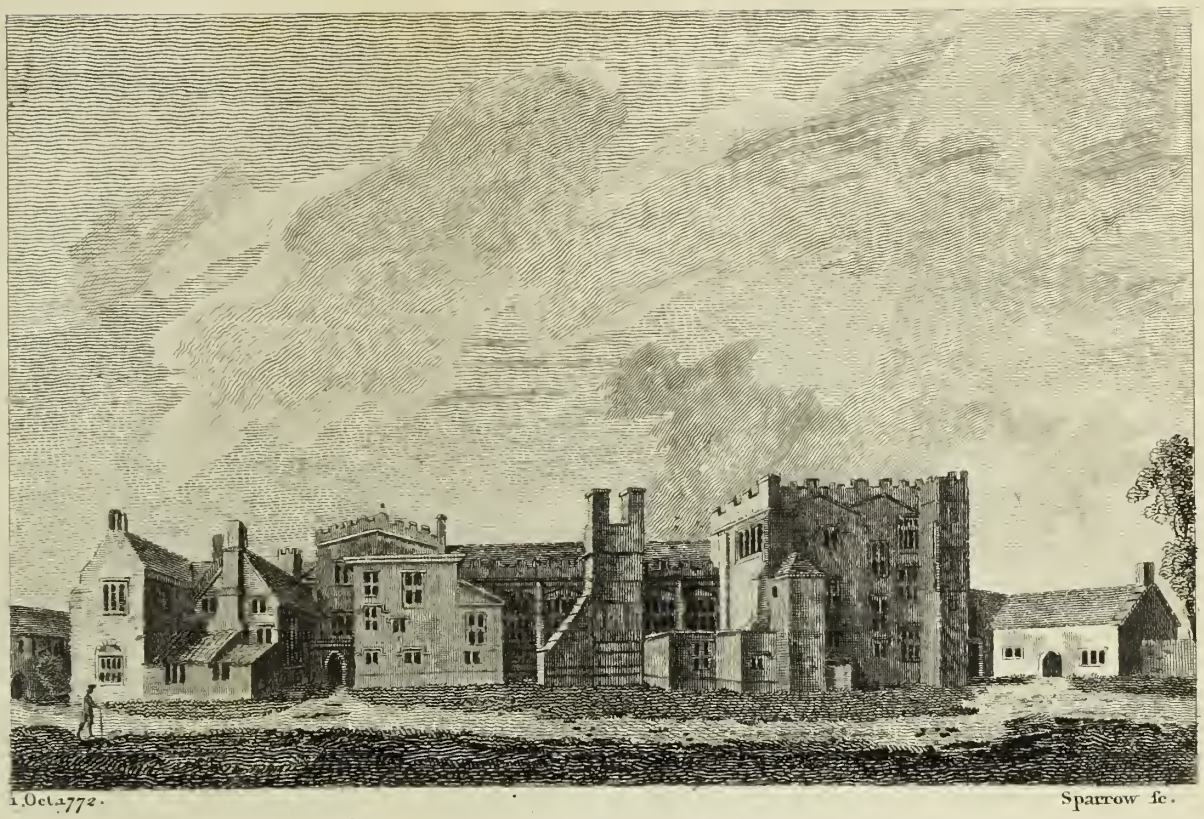
ACCORDING to Prynne, in his Hiſtory of Papal Uſurpations, in the reign of Henry the Third, there being many Jewiſh converts in England, for whom the

King, by reaſon of his wars, had not provided ſufficient maintenance, he thereupon, out of his chriſtian care to ſupport them, iſſued writs to the Abbots, Priors, and converts of moſt of the Religious Houſes through England, to entertain and receive one or more of them for two years, and to allow them a daily penſion, or Corody, not exceeding a certain ſum. The names of each male and female Jewiſh convert ſent to every houſe, are recorded in the Fine Rolls of the year. The Abbey of Chertſey had an exemption from the King, by which they were excuſed from receiving theſe converts. The Religious Houſes had generally ſo little charity towards theſe converted Jews, as not to entertain them on the King's firſt writ; whereon a ſecond, more peremptory, was iſſued. One of theſe, it appears, was directed to the Priory of Beauchief, to whom one John Clerk was ſent.

In the time of Henry the Seventh here were fourteen Religious, as appears by a ſurvey taken at the viſitation hereof. It was valued, 26th Henry the Eighth, at 126l. 3s. 4d. per annum, Dugdale; 134l. Leland; 157l. 10s. 2d. Speed; and granted, 28th of that King, to Sir Nich. Strelley. At preſent it is the property of ——— Pegge, Eſq. Anno 1533, here was only 2l. paid in annuities.

Very little of this Monaſtery is now remaining, except the church, wherein Divine Service is ſtill performed.

This Drawing was made Anno 1760.



1 Oct. 1772. Sparrow fc.

FORD ABBY, DEVONSHIRE.

FORD ABBY ſtands about five miles north-eaſt of Axminſter, near the river Ex, in the pariſh of Thorncomb, and deanery of Honiton. It is by Dugdale, in the Monaſticon, ſaid to be in Dorſetſhire; but both Camden and Tanner place it in Devonſhire: the latter ſays, "It is, indeed, in the furtheſt "limit between Devonſhire and Somerſetſhire; but, in all civil matters, ever belonged to Devonſhire; "and, in eccleſiaſtical, was ſubject to the biſhop of Exeter."

RICHARD DE BRIONI, ſon of Baldwin de Brioni, by Albreda, niece to William the Conqueror, anno 1133, began to erect an abby on his eſtate at Brightley; which being finiſhed in the year 1136, he endowed it with lands, dedicated it to the Virgin Mary, and placed therein twelve monks, and their abbot Richard, who had been ſent him from the Ciſtertian abby of Waverley, in Surry, in conſequence of his application to Gilbert, abbot of that houſe. He ſurvived the completion of his monaſtry only one year, and dying, was there buried; leaving his eſtate, for want of male iſſue, to his ſiſter, named Adeleſia, called counteſs of Devonſhire. Here the monks remained five years; at the end of which, on account of the ſcarcity of proviſion, and ſterility of their lands, they reſolved to return to Waverley, and accordingly ſet out in ſolemn proceſſion, with their abbot Robert, ſucceſſor to Richard, at their head, having the croſs borne before them. Paſſing in this order through Thorncomb, where Adeleſia dwelt, and to whom the manor belonged, that lady, ſurprized at their appearance, enquired the cauſe. On receiving information thereof, from the abbot, ſhe was greatly moved; and being unwilling that the pious intentions of ſo kind a brother ſhould be fruſtrated, offered to exchange her fruitful manor of

Thorncomb, abounding with all the neceſſaries of life, for their barren lands of Brightley. The fathers readily accepted this offer, and remained in the manſion-houſe then called Ford, and ſince Weſt-ford, ſix years; in which time they erected this building, in a place named Hartſcath, but now Ford. Hither they tranſported the body of Richard de Brioni, their founder.

By an intermarriage of Reginald Courtney, in the reign of Henry the Second, with a deſcendant of Richard de Brioni, the patronage of this abby came into the family of the Courtneys, where it remained a long time; ſeveral of them were buried in the Abby Church; one of whom, named John Courtney, a man of extraordinary piety, was a great benefactor to this houſe; and, among other donations, purchaſed for them the claim of Galfridus de Pomerei to the lands of Thale, for which he paid fifty marks. An accident happened, which greatly increaſed his devotion and regard for theſe monks. In croſſing the ſea, a violent tempeſt aroſe a little before day, which baffled all the ſkill of the mariners; inſtant death ſeemed to every one but him inevitable, they accordingly left off working, and reſigned themſelves to their fate. Courtney, obſerving their deſpair, exhorted them to take courage; aſſuring them, that if they would exert themſelves but for one hour, they would then have the benefit of the prayers of the monks of Ford, who would by that time riſe to their devotions, wherein he ſhould be remembered as a particular benefactor. His hearers were not greatly comforted by this aſſurance. What ſignifies, ſays one of them, talking of the monks? They are now, and will be, faſt aſleep; how can they think of you, who have in a manner forgot themſelves? However, the ſtorm ceaſing about the time he had named, he conſidered his deliverance as a miracle, and attributed it to the efficacy of the prayers of theſe reverend fathers.

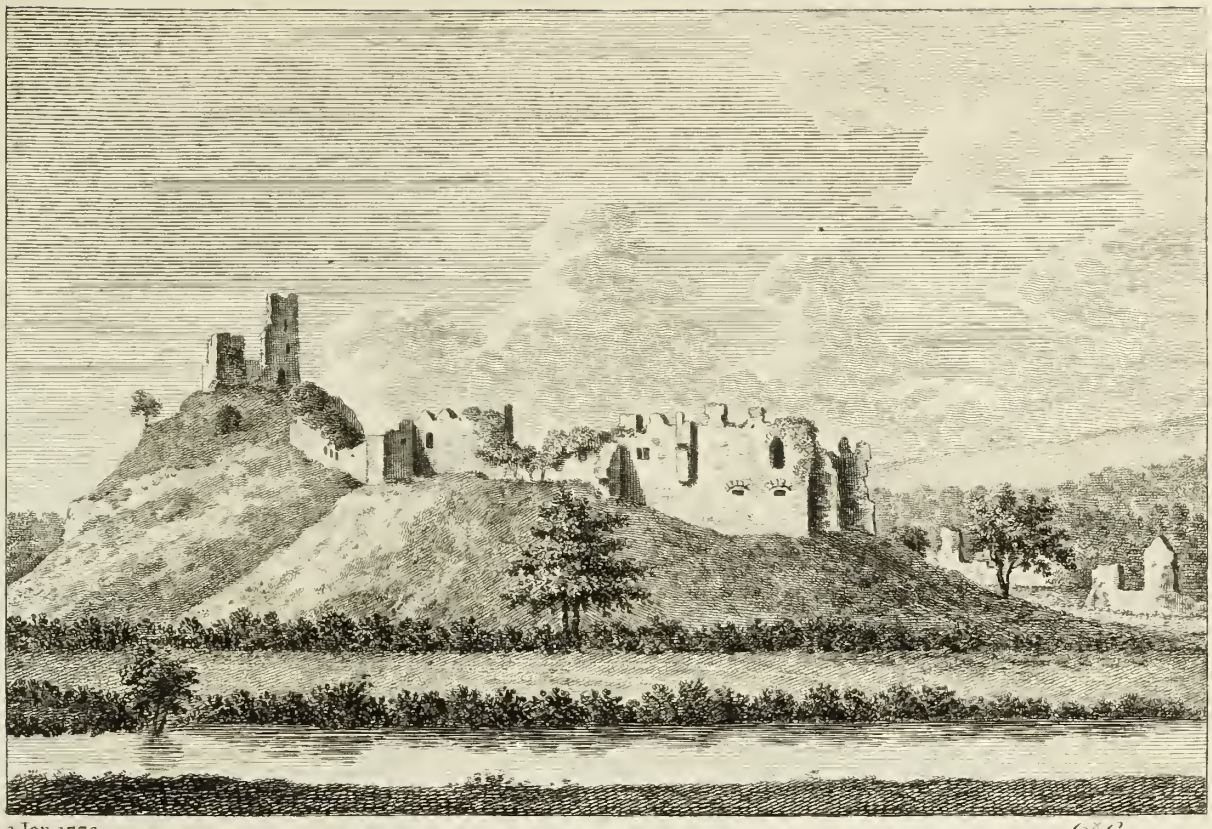
To him ſucceeded his ſon Hugh, and a grandſon of the ſame name: neither of them walked in the ſteps of their fore-fathers; for, inſtead of endowing the abby with additional revenues or privileges, they greatly diminiſhed thoſe granted by their anceſtors: the firſt, by charging thoſe eſtates, beſtowed on the monks in free alms, with the ſervice of carrying his baggage in time of war, and maintenance of dogs for the chaſe: and the laſt added to theſe oppreſſions, by infringing their immunities in the manor of Thale, and obliging them to pay an acknowledgment of fifty ſhillings per annum, to the church of Cruck.

Baldwin, archbiſhop of Canterbury, was firſt a monk, and afterwards abbot, of this community; from whence he was called to the biſhoprick of Worceſter, about the year 1181.

Joceline Pomerei, by deed, printed in the Monaſticon, conferred all his town of Thale on the monks of Ford; of which endowment there is, likewiſe, a confirmation by John, his ſucceſſor; and King Richard the Firſt by his charter, dated the firſt year of his reign, confirms all the donations made to this monaſtry.

At the diſſolution it was valued at three hundred and ſeventy-four pounds ten ſhillings and ſix-pence ob. per annum, according to Dugdale. Speed ſays, three hundred and eighty-one pounds ten ſhillings and ſix-pence ob. The ſite was granted, the twenty-third of Henry the Eighth, to Richard Pollard. It was long in the poſſeſſion of a branch of the family of Prideaux; from whence it came, by marriage, to F. Gwyn, of Glamorgan, Eſq; in whoſe family it ſtill remains. It is converted into a dwelling-houſe; and, although it has doubtleſs undergone many alterations and repairs, theſe have been made in the ſtile of the original building; ſo that it appears to be quite entire, and is a handſome and venerable Gothic ſtructure.

This drawing was made in the year 1752.



1 Jan. 1773

OKEHAMPTON CASTLE, DEVONSHIRE.

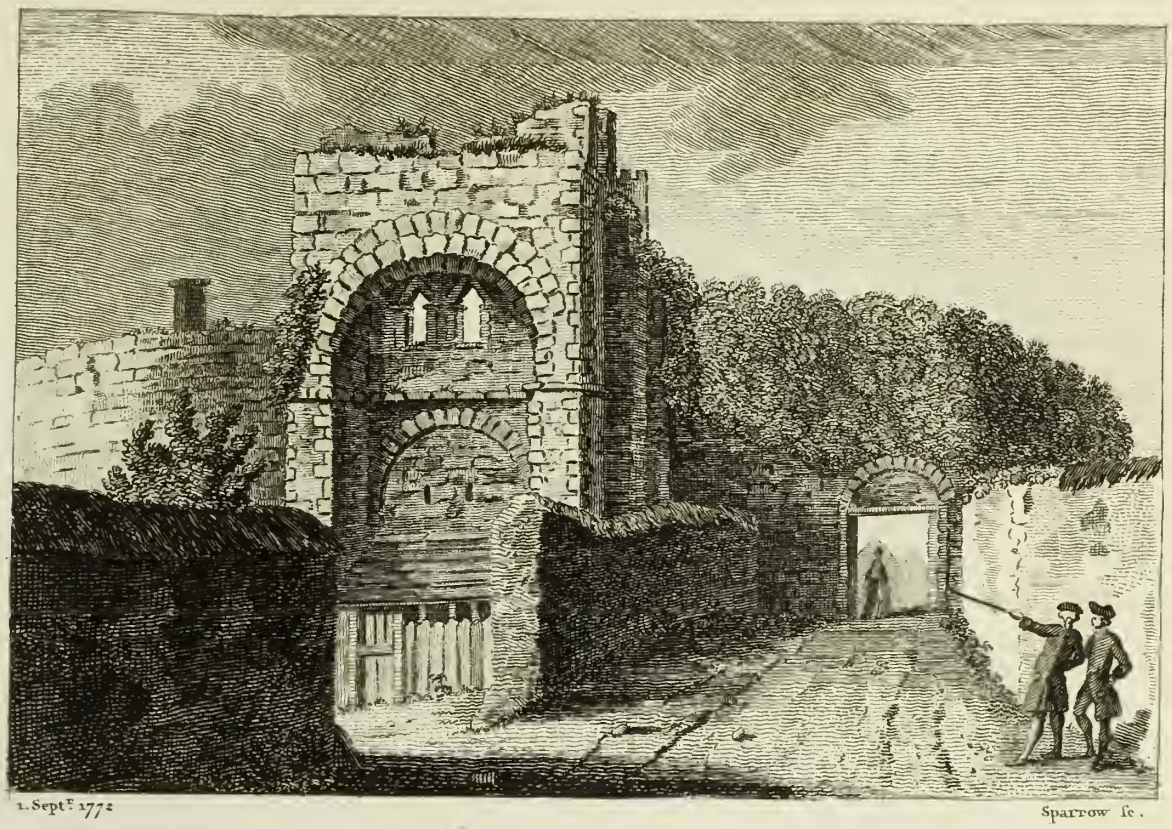
This caſtle ſtands a little weſt of the center of the county, and near the town of Okehampton. It was built by Baldwin de Brionii; who, as appears by Domeſday-Book, was in poſſeſſion of it when that ſurvey was taken. It afterwards devolved to Richard de Rivers; and from him went, by a marriage, to the Courtneys, Earls of Devonſhire. In that family it remained, till ſeized by King Edward the Fourth, on account of their attachment to the houſe of Lancaſter: in which cauſe, Thomas de Courtney, and his brother John, both loſt their lives: the firſt being taken at the battle of Towton, anno 1461, was carried to Pontefract, and there beheaded; his head was ſet up at York, in the place of that of the Duke of York: the latter was killed at Tewkſbury. Edward granted this caſtle, honor and manor, to Sir John Dynham; by whom they were ſoon after forfeited.

OKEHAMPTON CASTLE.

KING HENRY THE SEVENTH, on coming to the throne, reſtored to the Courtneys their ancient honors and poſſeſſions; amongſt which was this caſtle: but in the reign of Henry the Eighth, Henry Courtney, the then poſſeſſor, being executed for a treaſonable correſpondence with Cardinal Pole, it once more eſcheated to the crown; when that king cauſed the caſtle, and a fine park thereunto belonging, to be diſmantled and deſtroyed. He likewiſe impriſoned Edward, the ſon and heir of the late earl: who continued in confinement, till releaſed by Queen Mary; by whom he was reinſtated in the rank and fortune of his anceſtors. He leaving no male iſſue, the eſtate was carried, by a marriage, into the family of the Mohuns, Barons of Mohun and Oakhampton; whoſe male line likewiſe becoming extinct, by the death of the Lord Mohun, killed anno 1712, by the Duke of Hamilton, in a duel, the eſtate deſcended to Chriſtopher Harris, of Heynes, Eſq. he having married the heireſs of that family.

AT preſent it is entirely in ruins; having only part of the keep, and ſome fragments of high walls remaining: the ſolidity of which, together with their advantageous ſituation, and the ſpace they occupy, clearly evince that, when entire, it was both ſtrong and extenſive.

This view was taken anno 1768.



1. Sept.r 1772

Sparrow ſc.

ROUGEMONT CASTLE, EXETER, DEVONSHIRE.

On the higheſt part of the hill on which this city is built, and on the north-eaſt extremity, ſtands the remains of the caſtle of Rougemont, ſo called from the redneſs of the ſoil. Grafton, in his Chronicle, ſays, it was the work of Julius Cæſar; afterwards the ſeat of ſeveral Saxon kings, and ſince of the dukes of Cornwall. Within the caſtle-walls a chapel was built by the lady Elizabeth de Fortibus, counteſs of Devon, who endowed it with lands, called the Prebends of Hayes and Catton, for the payment of certain weekly ſervices therein to be performed.

This town and caſtle held out ſome time againſt the Conqueror; but a part of the wall falling down, it was ſurrendered at diſcretion. William contented himſelf with only altering the gates of the caſtle, as a mark of its being ſubdued; at the ſame time he either rebuilt or much repaired the whole edifice, and beſtowed it on Baldwin de Briono, huſband of Albreda, his niece, whoſe

deſcendants by the female line enjoyed it, together with the office of the ſheriff of Devon, which ſeems to have been annexed to it, till the fourteenth of Henry the Third, anno 1230; when that prince reſuming into his own hands ſundry caſtles and forts in this realm, diſpoſſeſſed Robert de Courtney, in whoſe family it had been for three deſcents.

In the reign of Henry the Fourth, John Holland, duke of Exeter, had a fine manſion within the caſtle, of which no traces are remaining.

Anno 1483, the city being viſited by King Richard the Third, he was, during his ſtay, nobly entertained by the corporation. On ſeeing this caſtle, he commended it highly, both for the ſtrength and beauty of its ſituation; but hearing it was named Rougemont, which, from the ſimilarity of the ſound, miſtaking it for Richmond, he ſuddenly grew ſad; ſaying, that the end of his days approached; a prophecy having declared he ſhould not long ſurvive the ſight of Richmond.

In the year 1588, at the Lent Aſſizes held here, an infectious diſtemper, brought by ſome Portugueſe priſoners of war, confined in the caſtle, deſtroyed Sir John Chicheſter, the judge; eight juſtices; eleven, out of the twelve, impannelled jurors; with diverſe other perſons aſſembled on this occaſion.

During the civil wars, the town was ſeveral times beſieged and taken by both parties; but there is no account of any particular defence or capitulation made by this caſtle.

In the year 1655, John Penruddock and Hugh Grove, both Wiltſhire gentlemen, having joined in an unſucceſsful attempt in favour of Charles the Second, were here beheaded; when many of inferior rank were hanged at Havitree gallows.

The ruin here repreſented, which is the entrance into the caſtle-yard, was part of the exterior walls or out-works; theſe encloſe a conſiderable ſpace, in ſhape ſomewhat like a rhombus, with its angles rounded off; they were defended by four towers, two on the weſt, and two on the eaſt ſide. From this ſpot, towards Exmouth, is a delightful proſpect.

This view was taken in the year 1768.

May 16.1772. P.C.Canot Sc.

CORFE CASTLE, DORSETSHIRE.

Corfe Castle is ſituate on an eminence, near the town and river of Corfe, in the Peninſula or (as it is commonly called) Iſle of Purbeck. Hiſtory does not mention either the builder, or time of its foundation; but by an inquiſition taken in the fifty-fourth year of King Henry the Third, concerning the claim of the abbeſs of Shaftſbury, to the right of wreck in her manor of Kingſton in this iſland, it appears that it was not built till ſome time after the year 941; for the jurors returned, that before the foundation of Corfe Caſtle, the abbeſs and nuns had cuſtomarily, and without moleſtation, the wreck which happened in their manor. Now this abbey was founded by King Edmond, in the year 941. Camden ſeems to think it moſt probable it was erected by King Edgar, who delighted in building, as appears by his having founded and repaired forty-ſeven monaſteries; beſides, his comparatively peaceable reign gave him both leiſure and money to indulge this propenſity; circumſtances wanting to the more immediate ſucceſſors of Edmond.

At this place King Edgar reſided, and at his death bequeathed it to Elfrida, his ſecond wife, and her ſon. Here ſhe alſo dwelt; and, in order to raiſe her ſon to the throne, HERE cauſed King Edward, from hence ſurnamed the Martyr, to be moſt baſely murthered, in violation of the ſacred laws of hoſpitality, as well as of every other, both human and divine. William of Malmſbury relates the ſtory in ſubſtance as follows:

King Edward, hunting in the Iſle of Purbeck, came unexpectedly alone to Corfe Caſtle; he always having an affection for his mother-in-law, reſolved to pay her a ſhort viſit, in token thereof: ſhe received him with all ſeeming love and regard, and preſſed him to ſtay there all night; but he, fearing his train would be uneaſy at his abſence, would only drink a cup of wine on horſeback: this ſhe preſented him; the cup was no ſooner at his lips,

but he was by a villain, appointed by Elfrida for that purpoſe, ſtabbed in the back; when finding himſelf much hurt, he clapped ſpurs to his horſe, in order to join his company; but fainting through loſs of blood he fell; and his foot hanging in the ſtirrup, his horſe dragged him until he was left dead at Corfe-gate. Authors differ in their accounts of the place of his burial: ſome ſay that his body was by Elfrida thrown into a well, but afterwards taken up and depoſited at Glaſtonbury; others, and with more probability, write, that he was with great funeral pomp interred in the monaſtry of Shaftſbury.

Coker, in his Antiquities of Dorſetſhire, ſays, the iſlanders have a tradition, that he fell in the heath below the caſtle, and that the place where his body was found is, until this day, called St. Edward's Bridge.

William the Conqueror gave the manor of Moulham, near Corfe, to Durand his carpenter, to be held by this ſervice; that he ſhould repair the timber work of the great tower of Corfe Caſtle, and cleanſe the gutters as often as need required.

In the year 1202, King John coming to the aſſiſtance of his mother, beſieged by the duke of Bretagne, at the head of ſome Poictevin troops, in the caſtle of Mirabel in France, routed them, and took moſt of the nobility of Poictou and Anjou priſoners. Twenty-two of them being confined in this caſtle, were ſtarved to death.

In this reign, Peter de Maule, a gentleman of Poictou, was conſtable of this caſtle; he was afterwards, in the reign of Henry the Third, anno 1220, accuſed of high-treaſon, but acquitted.

In the year 1212, one Peter Pontrefract, a hermit, having prophecied that King John ſhould be depoſed, and the crown transferred to another, before Aſcenſion-day; he was confined in the caſtle; and, although his prediction was in ſome ſort verified by that king's ſurrender of his crown to the pope, yet John had the cruelty to cauſe him to be tied to horſes tails and dragged through the ſtreets of Wareham, where he and his ſon were afterwards hanged.

This caſtle was conſidered by Simon de Montfort, earl of Leiceſter, and the Barons, of ſuch conſequence, as to be the third they required to be delivered up to them in conſequence of their treaty with Henry the Third.

In the fifteenth year of King Edward the Second, John de Latimer was conſtable of this caſtle, as appears by a writ of privy-ſeal, in Maddox's Hiſtory of the Exchequer, directed to him or his lieutenant, and ordering them to provide proviſion and munition for the caſtle of Corfe.

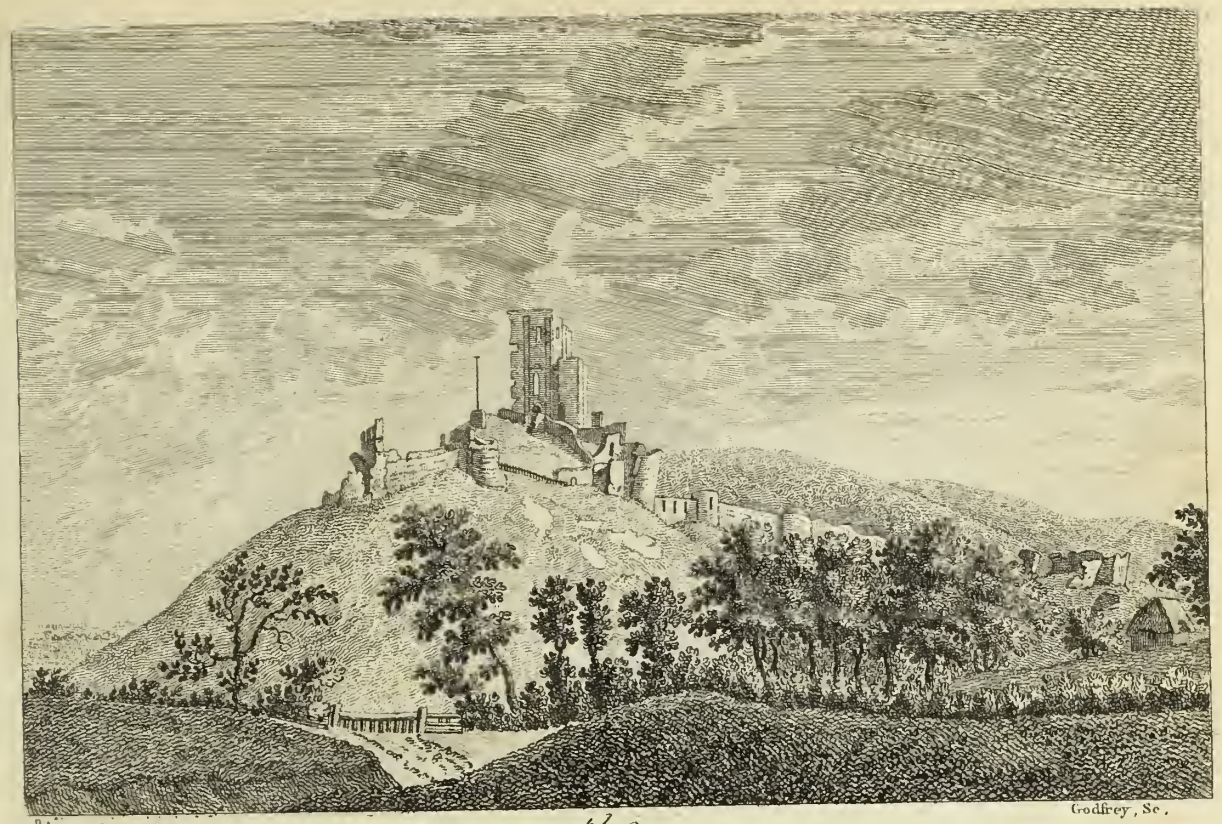
In the year 1327, that unfortunate prince, after he had ſurrendered his crown, was a ſhort time confined here, being removed hither, by order of the queen and Mortimer, from Kenelworth Caſtle; from hence he was carried firſt to Briſtol, and afterwards to Berkley Caſtle, ſuffering all the way every hardſhip and indignity the brutal tempers of his two keepers, Sir John Maltravers and Sir Thomas Guerney, could ſuggeſt, in hopes this fatigue and ill-treatment would ſhorten his days; but this not ſucceeding, they at length there put him to death, in a very cruel and unheard of manner, by running a horn pipe up his body, through which they conveyed a red-hot iron. This method was uſed to prevent any marks of violence appearing on his corps.

This caſtle has been divers times granted from the crown, to which it has as often reverted by eſcheat or attainder. Queen Elizabeth gave it, with the manor and town of Corfe, to Sir Chriſtopher Hatton, lord-chancellor of England, and his heirs, who repaired it greatly; he dying without iſſue, left it to his wife; with whoſe daughter, by Sir Edward Cooke, it came to Villiers, viſcount Purbeck, eldeſt brother of George, duke of Buckingham.

In the reign of King Charles the Firſt, it belonged to the Lord Chief-juſtice Banks; and was, in the year 1643, in his abſence, moſt gallantly defended by his lady againſt Sir William Earl and Thomas Trenchard, commanders for the Parliament, at the head of a conſiderable body of men with a train of artillery; when, though ſhe wanted both proviſions and ammunition, and though ſhe had at one time only five, and never more than forty men, yet ſhe thrice repulſed them with great loſs, and, by her good management, procured ſuch a ſupply of proviſions and ammunition, as enabled her to hold out till relieved by the earl of Caernarvon; at whoſe arrival the beſiegers fled with ſuch precipitation, that they left behind them their tents, ammunition and artillery. It appears ſhe was aſſiſted in this defence by one Captain Lawrence.

This place was again beſieged by the Parliament's forces, in the year 1645, and, February the 7th, relieved by a party of the Royaliſts, who took a mortar; but being again attacked, was, on the 16th of the ſame month, delivered up, by the treachery of Lieutenant-colonel Pitman.

This drawing was taken in the year 1763.



1st Aug. 1772. Godfrey, Sc.

pl. 2

CORFE CASTLE, DORSETSHIRE.

THIS plate exhibits the ſouth proſpect of the caſtle. From both this and the former view, it may be eaſily perceived that this venerable and magnificent edifice does not owe its preſent ruinous condition to time alone: the fact is, that it was demoliſhed by order of the parliament, ſoon after they became maſters of it; undoubtedly out of revenge for the great trouble and loſſes they had ſuſtained in its different ſieges; particularly when ſo gallantly defended by the lady Banks. Both the manor and caſtle ſtill remain in that family, being the property of Henry Banks, eſq; great-grandſon of Lord-chief-juſtice Banks.

CORFE CASTLE, DORSETSHIRE.

By its ruins it appears as if they attempted to deſtroy it by mining and gunpowder; but ſuch was the ſtrength of the cement uſed in its conſtruction, that ſeveral of its towers, particularly thoſe of the gate near the bridge, were nearly overthrown without being disjointed, and are left, now leaning like the tower of Piſa, in a manner unaccountably wonderful to perſons ignorant of this mechanical principle, that, as long as the line of direction of the center of gravity of any body remains within its baſe, ſuch body cannot fall.

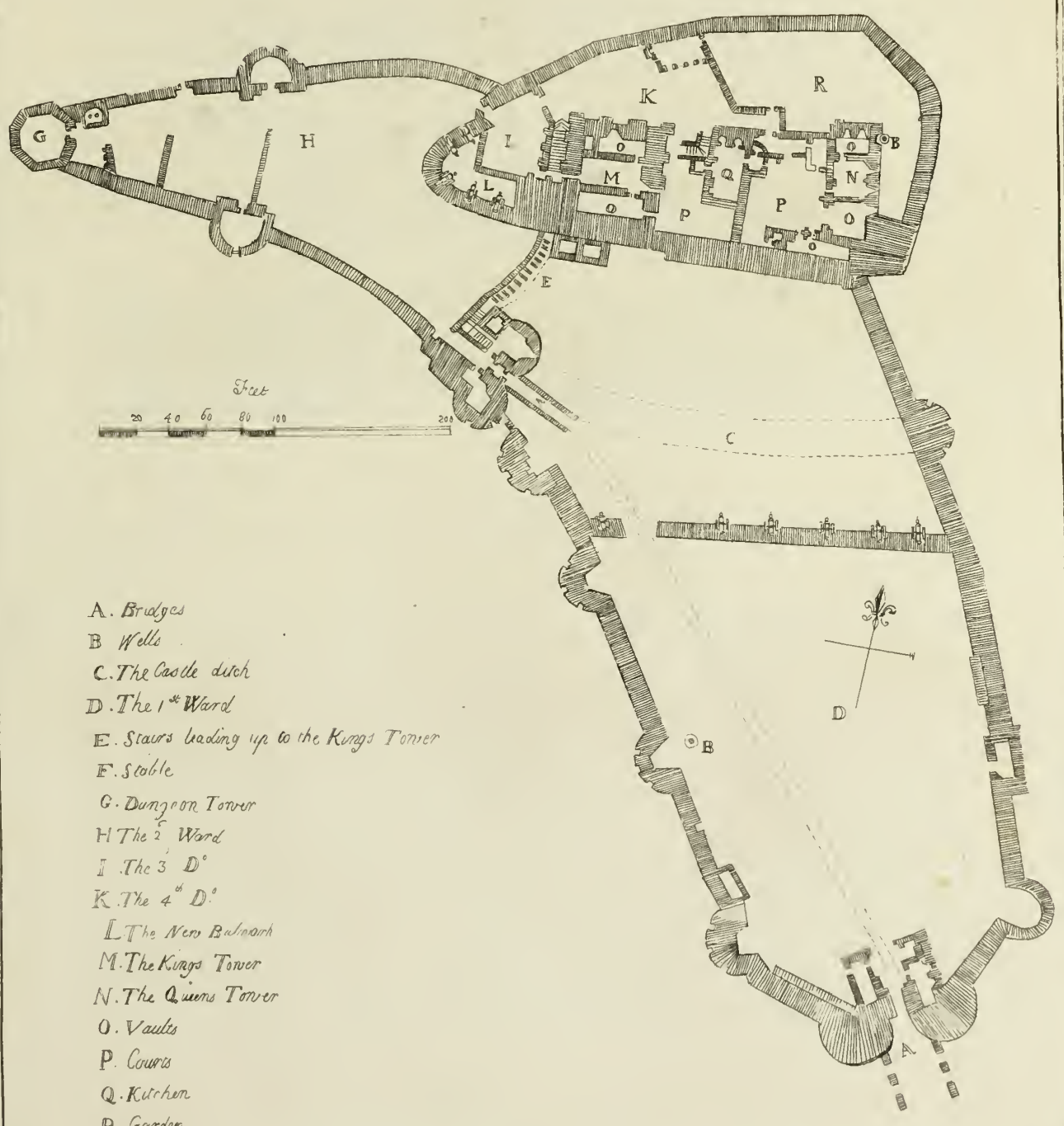
In the year 1215, William de Albany, made by the barons governor of Rocheſter caſtle, under the archbiſhop, with William de Lancaſter, William de Emesford, and many others, were, on the reduction of that caſtle by King John, here confined cloſe priſoners.

"This caſtle," ſays Coker, "or the lords of it, until of late, did enjoy manie "privileges: as, free-warren chaſe, uſurped over all the iſland, wreck of the ſea, "and freedom from the lord-admiral of England: ſoe that the owner of it hath "his peculiar admiral leets and lawe days; and, in a word, in ſome caſes, did "execute Jura Regalia." Theſe, according to the civilians, were the power of judicature, power of life and death, all kinds of arming, maſterleſs goods, aſſeſſments, and the value of money.

This drawing was made in the year 1763.

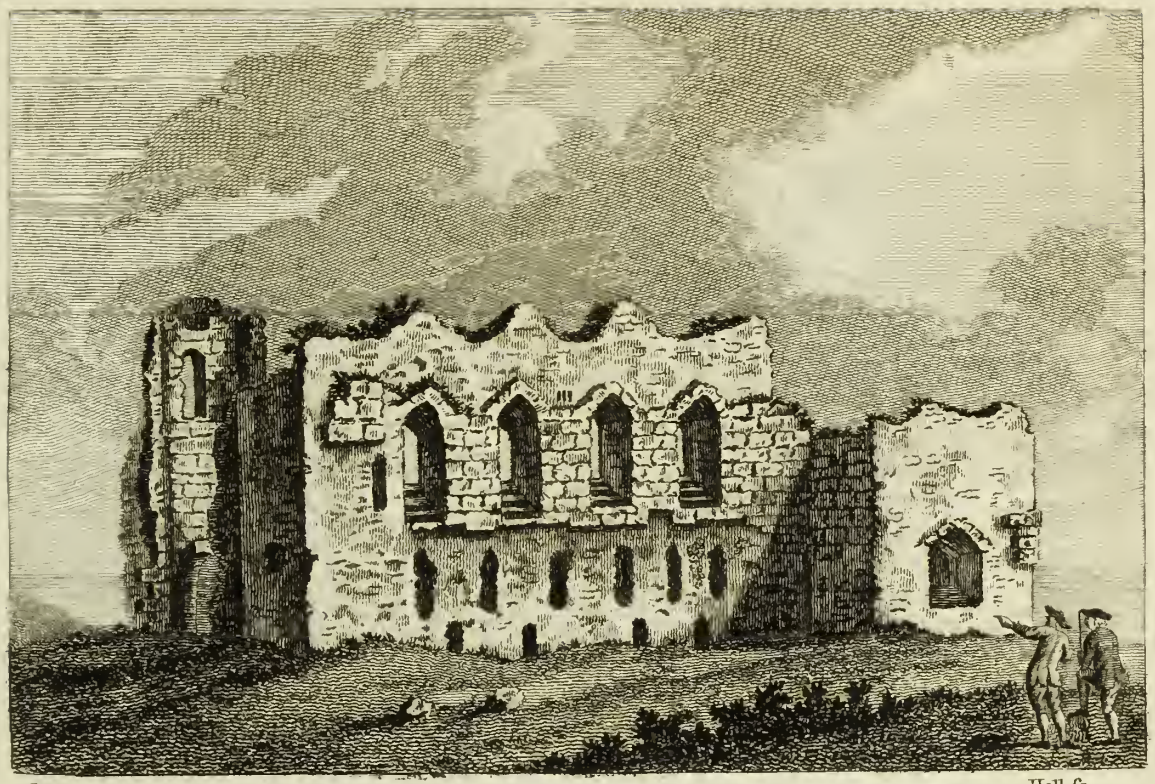
CORFE CASTLE

1586



A. Bridges
B Wells
C. The Castle ditch
D. The 1st Ward
E. Stairs leading up to the Kings Tower
F. Stable
G. Dungeon Tower
H The 2d Ward
I. The 3 D°
K. The 4th D°
L The New Bulwark
M. The Kings Tower
N. The Queens Tower
O. Vaults
P. Courts
Q. Kitchen
R. Garden

Printed for S. Hooper 20th Jan. 1776



1.Oct.1772. Hall ſc.

SANDFORD, OR WEYMOUTH CASTLE, DORSETSHIRE.

FROM the ruinous ſtate in which this building now appears, one would be apt to imagine it of much greater antiquity than it really is, it being of no older date than about the year 1539, when it was erected by King Henry the Eighth, at the time he was fortifying the coaſt againſt the invaſions of theſe enemies he expected the Pope would raiſe up againſt him, on account of the changes he had made, and was making, in the religion of this kingdom. Leland, in his Itinerary, calls it the New Caſtle; and ſays, "an open barbican to the caſtelle."

IN the laſt civil war, Weymouth was ſeveral times taken by both parties; when, although no particular mention is made of the caſtle, doubtleſs it had its ſhare in theſe tranſactions; particularly as, in 1641, the Parliamentarians converted a chapel formerly ſtanding here, into a fort, from which they battered Melcombe Regis. It is therefore not likely they would omit making uſe of this

caſtle, which muſt then really have been far from a contemptible poſt, and was, when entire, extremely defenſible againſt troops much better provided and diſciplined than thoſe which compoſed either army. This, perhaps, may account for its preſent ſhattered condition.

It ſtands on the edge of a cliff, oppoſite another caſtle built about the ſame time, on the peninſula of Portland, from which it is ſeparated by a bay near three miles broad, called the Road of Portland. The body of the caſtle is a right angled parallelogram, its greateſt length running from north to ſouth. At its ſouth end is a building lower, but broader, than the body of the caſtle, and ſerves to flank its eaſt and weſt ſides. Theſe ſides had each embrazures for great guns, and beneath them two tier of loop-holes for ſmall arms, the loweſt almoſt even with the level of the ground. The north front is nearly deſtroyed; but the remains of an arch, or gateway, ſhew the entrance was on this ſide. The whole edifice ſeems to have been caſed with ſquared ſtone.

This building was at a ſmall diſtance, ſurrounded by an earthen rampart, having on its eaſt ſide a gate faced with ſtone, part of which is ſtill remaining. None of the writers who mention it, aſſign any reaſon for its being called Sandford Caſtle.

This drawing was made in the year 1756.

THE VICAR's HOUSE, PORTLAND, DORSETSHIRE.

THIS Ruin ſtands near the middle of the Peninſula of Portland. It is pretended to have been the Parſonage Houſe, and, although the living is a Rectory, is vulgarly called the Vicarage Houſe. The Inhabitants know little about it, but have a tradition that it was a fine place, demoliſhed in the laſt Civil Wars. Indeed, it appears that Humphry Henchman, D. D. who was inducted into this Rectory Anno 1641, was ſequeſtered, and paid 200 l. for his compoſition; and that in 1643, one Henry Way was appointed to ſucceed him. This Doctor Henchman ſeems to have been the Nephew of Dr. Henchman, Biſhop of London.

FROM the form of what remains of this edifice, it is more than probable, it was an Oratory, or ſmall Chapel, and, as ſuch, might

be a particular object of the rage of the Puritans, among whom the demoliſhing a building of that kind was held a work extremely meritorious, and demonſtrative of their zeal againſt the Whore of Babylon.

The Parliament, in the beginning of the year 1642, ſeized the Caſtle here, at which time they might poſſibly demoliſh the Vicar's Houſe or Chapel. The Caſtle was afterwards recovered for the King, and remained in the poſſeſſion of the Royaliſts during the whole war, and was among the laſt that were held by them.

This View was drawn Anno 1756.

BERNARD's CASTLE, IN THE BISHOPRICK OF DURHAM.

THIS caſtle was built by Bernard Baliol, great grandfather of John Baliol, king of Scotland. From its founder it took the name of Bernard's caſtle, which it has given to a conſiderable market-town ſince built near it.

BERNARD BALIOL, at his deceaſe, left this caſtle to his great grandſon above-mentioned, whom K. Edw. I. having raiſed to the kingdom of Scotland, obliged, by an oath, to hold his lands in England as his vaſſal. John failing in his allegiance, K. Edward ſeized on his poſſeſſions; and notwithſtanding thoſe within the dioceſe of Durham ought, according to cuſtom, to have gone to the biſhop of that ſee, the king, on account of a diſagreement between him and Anthony Becke, the then biſhop, took poſſeſſion of them, and beſtowed this caſtle and its appurtenances on Guido Beaucham, Earl of Warwick; the manors of Herks and Hertnes, on Robert Clifford; and Kewerſton on Galfred de Hartlepool.

IN Leland's Collectanea, vol. i. page 291 and 292, it is ſaid, that on theſe eſtates becoming forfeited, Biſhop Becke ſeized on them as his right, and long held them; and Stowe, in his Annals, ſays he built or repaired Barnard caſtle.

LELAND, in the ſame page, adds, that theſe eſtates were afterwards ſeized by the king, and that Guido de Beauchamp held Bernard's caſtle in capite of King Edward II.

IN the reign of Edward II. Ludovicus Beaumont being conſecrated biſhop of Durham, inſtituted a ſuit at law, againſt the poſſeſſors of theſe eſtates, and recovered them by a ſentence in his favour, given in the following words: "The biſhop of Durham ought to have the forfeitures within the liberties of this biſhoprick, as the "king has them without." It is ſaid that this biſhop, though deſcended from the blood-royal of France, was ſo extremely illiterate, as not even to be able to read.

BERNARD's CASTLE, IN THE BISHOPRICK OF DURHAM.

IN this caſtle, it is ſaid, a college was erected by Richard, Duke of Glouceſter, whom his brother, King Edward IV. gave a licenſe, in the 17th year of his reign, for that end. It conſiſted of one dean, 12 chaplains, 10 clerks, 6 choriſters, and one other clerk whom he incorporated by the name of the Dean and Chaplains of the college of Richard Duke of Glouceſter of Bernard caſtle, permitting them to purchaſe lands, &c. to the yearly value of 400 marks, over and above all repriſes. Tanner gives a very different account of this foundation: He ſays, "The provincial of the friers heremites, of the order of St. Auſtin, A. D. 1381, obtained "leave of Biſhop Nevil, in the vacancy of the biſhoprick of Durham, to build a friery and chapel upon ground "given by Thomas Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick, in his lordſhip of Caſtle Bernard, within the pariſh of "Gaynford, as appears by Dr. Hutton's Extracts out of Archbiſhop Nevil's Regiſter; but whether this took "effect, I know not."

IN the troubles under King John, anno 1216, Alexander, king of Scotland, having ſubdued all the caſtles in Northumberland and Durham, for Lewis the dauphin of France, except Bernard caſtle, ſet out for Canterbury to do homage to that prince; in paſſing by this caſtle, then belonging to Hugo de Baliol, he, with ſome of his principal officers reconnoitring it, Euſtace de Veſey, his brother-in-law was killed on the ſpot by an arrow which pierced his brain.

IN Prynn's Hiſtory of Papal Uſurpations, it appears that in the 39th year of the reign of Henry III. ſome ſervants of John Baliol being excommunicated and impriſoned upon a capias excommunicatam, by the biſhop of Durham, for entering forcibly into the church of Long Newton; others, by way of revenge, aſſaulted the biſhop and his men, with horſe and arms, as they travelled by a wood, irreverently abuſed the biſhop, and carried four of his men priſoners to Bernard's caſtle, and there detained them till the biſhop ſhould releaſe the perſons excommunicated. Upon the biſhop's complaint of this riot and inſult, the king iſſued his writ to John Baliol, directing him to releaſe the biſhop's men, as that prelate was ready to deliver his; and threatening ſeverely to puniſh this offence, if he did not immediately enlarge them, and likewiſe give competent ſatisfaction to the biſhop and his ſervants. On the receipt of this writ, the biſhop's ſervants were releaſed; but the biſhop refuſed to deliver thoſe he had in cuſtody, although they had tendered ſufficient bail, wherefore the king iſſued his writ de cautione admittenda, commanding him to take bail and releaſe them. Walter de Kirkham was biſhop at this period, viz. anno 1255.

JOHN BALIOL, founder of the college in Oxford bearing his name, was born in this caſtle.

IN the inſurrection of the earls of Northumberland and Weſtmoreland againſt Queen Elizabeth, this caſtle was bravely defended for eleven days, by Sir George Bowes, and his brother Robert, againſt the whole power of the inſurgents; but at laſt it was ſurrendered on honourable terms.

BERNARD caſtle and its environs are thus deſcribed by Leland in his Itinerary: "From Stanthorp to Bernardes "caſtel by meately good corne and paſture 5 miles. This is a meatly praty town, having a good market, and "meatly welle buildid. The town itſelf is but a part of Gaineford paroch, wher the hed chirche is 6 miles "lower on Teſe, and in the biſhoprike. The caſtelle of Barnard ſtondith ſtately upon Teſe. The firſt area "hath no very notable thing yn it but the fair chapelle, wher be 2 cantuaries.

"IN the midle of the body of this chapel is a fair marble tumbe, with an image and an inſcription about it "yn French.

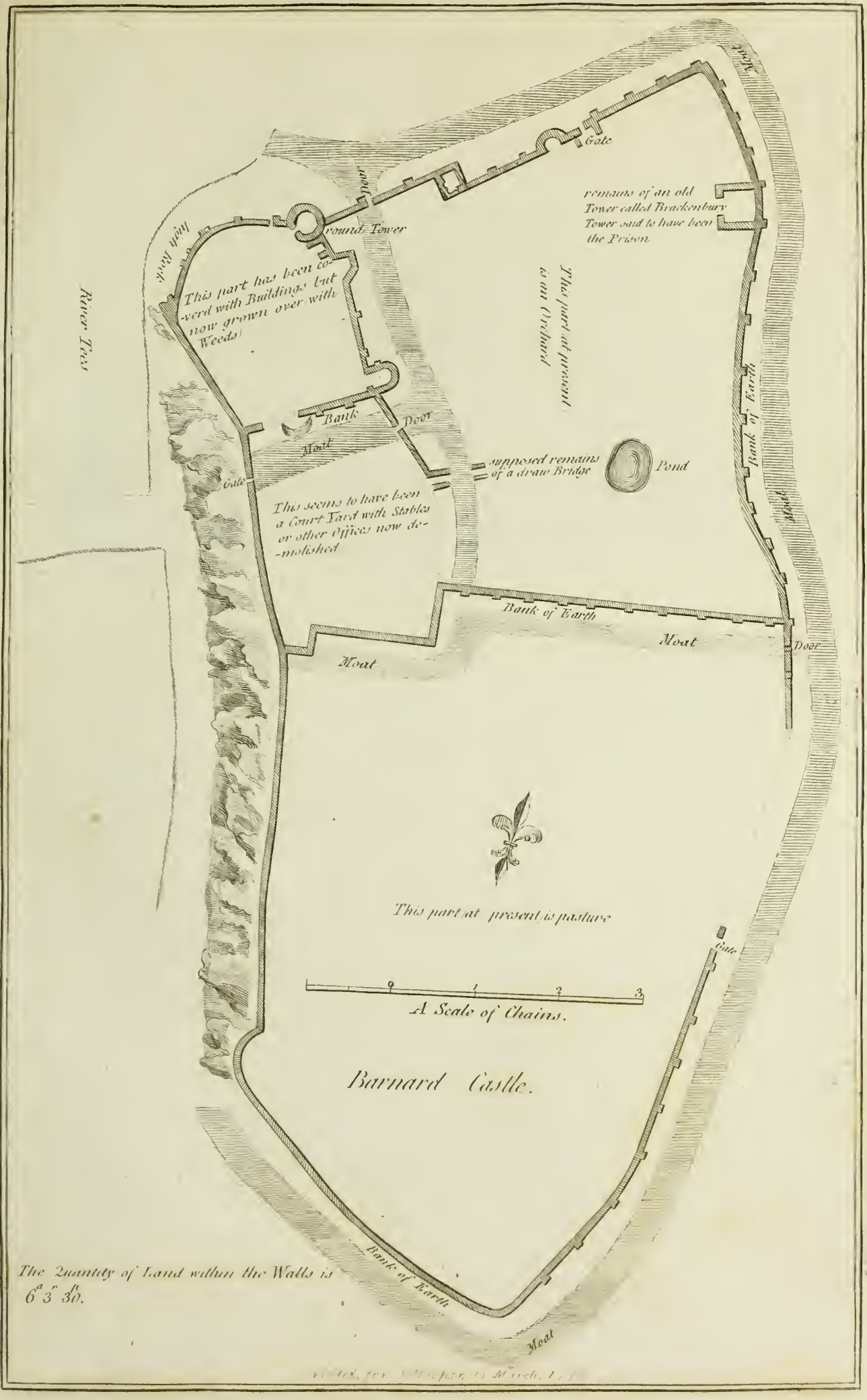
"THER is another in the ſouth waul of the body of the chapelle of fre-ſtone, with an image of the ſame. "Sum ſay that they were of the Bailliolles.

"THE inner area is very large, and partely motid and welle furniſhid with toures of great logging. Ther "belong 2 parkes to this caſtelle; the one is caullid Marwood, and thereby is a chace that berith alſo the name "of Marwood, and that goith on Teſe Ripe up into Teſedale."

THIS caſtle impends high above the river. Its walls, which are venerably mantled with ivy, encloſe a very conſiderable area, of an irregular figure. On the weſt ſide is a round tower, of a great ſize, built with fine aſhler ſtone. The vault over the tower-part ſtill remains, and is finely conſtructed; but plain, and without ribs. The keep, or inner-court, is protected by a vaſt foſs, cut out of the rock, with a portal at one end. From the caſtle there is a moſt beautiful view of the Tees, over which is a bridge of two arches.

THIS caſtle was ſome few years ago in the poſſeſſion of Gilbert Lord Bernard.

This view was drawn anno 1775.


Gate
remains of an old Tower called Brackenbury Tower said to have been the Prison
Round Tower
This part has been co-vered with Buildings but now grown over with Weeds
This part at present is an Orchard
River Tees
High Bank
Bank
Moat
Gate
Bank of Earth
Moat
Door
supposed remains of a draw Bridge
Pond
This seems to have been a Court Yard with Stables or other Offices now de-molished
Bank of Earth
Moat
Moat
Door
This part at present is pasture
Gate
0 1 2 3
A Scale of Chains.
Barnard Castle.
The Quantity of Land within the Walls is
6a 3r 30p.
Bank of Earth
Moat

DURHAM CASTLE.

THIS Caſtle ſtands on a ſteep bank on the Eaſt ſide of the River Were. It ſeems an extreme ſolid, and not over-elegant Pile; beneath it is a Bridge built by Biſhop Ranulph Flambard.

A CASTLE was built here by William the Conqueror, about the year 1072, to ſerve as a retreat, or place of ſafety for the Biſhop, in caſe of ſudden invaſions, to which, at that time, its ſituation both with reſpect to the ſea-coaſt and Scotiſh borders made it extremely ſubjected. The Keep of this Building is ſtill remaining; it is an octogon, and ſtands on a high mount: but many of the adjacent buildings are of much later date. Anno 1079, this Caſtle was unſucceſsfully aſſaulted by thoſe rioters who ſlew Walter Biſhop of Durham for his ſuppoſed participation in the murder of Leulfus; and the Conqueror ſending an army to puniſh them, waſted the country, and left a garriſon in it.

IN the reign of Edward II. anno 1317, Sir Groſſeline Deinvile and his brother Robert, with two hundred men habited like Friars, according to Stowe, plundered the Palaces of the Biſhop of Durham, leaving nothing in them but bare walls. Probably the ſtrength of this Caſtle ſaved it from their depredations, as it is not particularly mentioned. For theſe ravages the Ringleaders were afterwards hanged at York.

DURHAM CASTLE.

PART of this Caſtle having been burned down, was repaired by Biſhop Hugh Pudſey, created Biſhop anno 1153. He likewiſe repaired, at a very conſiderable expence, the City Wall from the North to the South Gate; and built the Bridge over the River Were, called Elvet Bridge.

ANTHONY BECK, who was a great Builder, in all likelihood did not overlook this his Capital Manſion: the particular repairs he did, if any, have not, however, been handed down to us.

THOMAS HATFIELD, about 1345, made great additions to theſe Buildings.

ROBERT NEVIL, created Biſhop anno 1457, built the Exchequer before the Caſtle Gates; and Biſhop Fox, 1494, altered the Great Hall, in which were two princely ſeats, one at each end; he took away that at the lower end, and there built a Pantry, and a place for Muſicians to play during meals: he likewiſe made many other alterations.

BISHOP Tunſtall, in 1530, built the Gallery and Chapel adjoining; his arms are placed thereon; he alſo made the Iron Gates, adorned with free-ſtone work on either ſide thereof, and built the Laver, or Water-Conduit in the Courtain of the Caſtle, whereon his Arms are alſo engraved.

BISHOP Richard Neile (tranſlated from Lincoln 1627) repaired the Tower and other parts of the Caſtle, on which it is ſaid he expended £ 3000; and Dr. John Coſins, who, upon the Reſtoration of Charles II. found the Palace in deplorable ruins, as left by Sir Arthur Haſlerig, repaired and beautified it at a vaſt expence.

BISHOP Crewe conſiderably adorned it by putting in new windows, and enlarging the Chapel. He likewiſe rebuilt part of the Tower which had fallen down. Biſhop Chandler made ſeveral alterations, as did alſo Biſhop Trevor; ſome of which were left unfiniſhed, but have been ſince completed by the preſent Biſhop.

LELAND, in his Itinerary, thus deſcribes this Caſtle: "The Caſtelle ſtondith "ſtately on the North-eſt ſide of the Minſtre, and the Were renneth under it.

"THE Kepe ſtondith aloft, and in ſtate buildid of VIII Square.

"BISHOP Fox did much reperation of this Dungeon; and he made beſide, in "the Caſtelle, a new Kychen, with the Offices, and many praty Chambers."

This View, which ſhews the South-weſt Aſpect of the Caſtle, was drawn Anno 1774.

Jan.ʸ 17: 1771. S. Hooper Ex.t S. Sparrow Sc.

FINCHALE PRIORY, IN THE BISHOPRICK OF DURHAM.

FINCHALE Priory ſtands on the eaſternmoſt bank of the River Were, about two miles and a half north of the City of Durham.

THIS being a ſolitary ſpot, proper for religious contemplation, a certain holy man named Godric, afterwards canoniſed, who had in his youth viſited the Holy Sepulchre, hither retired by Divine direction, and here lived the life of an Hermit in an Hermitage dedicated to St. John the Baptiſt. It was during his life-time made a Cell to the Monaſtery of Durham, being granted by Ranulph Flambard, before the year 1128, to Algarus, Prior thereof, and his Monks. Upon the death of Godric, anno 1170, ſome Monks from Durham retired to it; and Hugh Pudſey, then Biſhop of Durham, made them ſome allowance for their ſupport. Hugh his ſon, anno 1196, conſiderably increaſed their revenues; and thereupon a Benedictine Priory, ſubordinate to the Monaſtery of Durham, was ſettled here, to which the Prior of that Houſe might ſend as many Monks as he thought

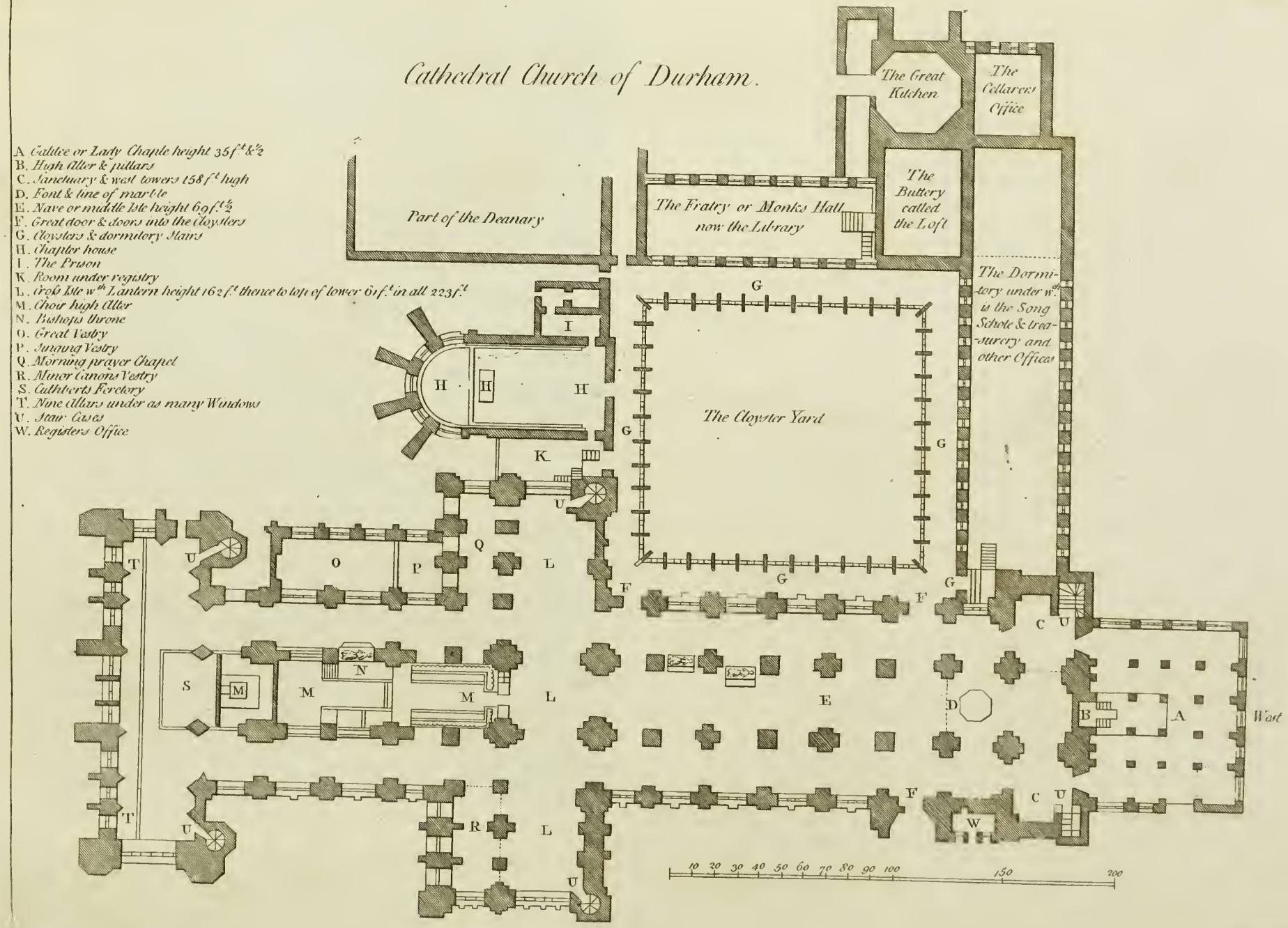
proper. Although it was thus deemed a Cell to Durham, its income was valued diſtinctly from it; being eſtimated 26 Hen. VIII. at £ 122. 15 *s.* 3 *d.* per ann. Dugdale, and £ 146. 19 *s.* 2 *d.* Speed. It then conſiſted of a Prior and eight Monks—though Leland ſays thirteen—and ſoon after the Diſſolution was granted to the See of Durham. Part of the Ruins are now converted into a Farm-houſe.

FINCHALE ſeems anciently to have been a place of note. A Synod is ſaid to have been held here anno 788. It was called by the Saxons Pincanheal: Henry of Huntingdon calls it Wincanhale; Hoveden, Phincanhale; and others Finchale.

This View was drawn Anno 1774.

Cathedral Church of Durham.

A. Galilee or Lady Chapple height 35f.t &½
B. High Alter & pillars
C. Sanctuary & west towers 158f.t high
D. Font & line of marble
E. Nave or middle Iste height 69f.t½
F. Great door & doors into the Cloysters
G. Cloysters & dormitory Stairs
H. Chapter house
I. The Prison
K. Room under registry
L. Cross Iste w.th Lantern height 162f.t thence to top of lower 61f.t in all 223f.t
M. Choir high Alter
N. Bishops throne
O. Great Vestry
P. Singing Vestry
Q. Morning prayer Chapel
R. Minor Canons Vestry
S. Cuthberts Feretory
T. Nine Allars under as many Windows
U. Stair Cases
W. Registers Office



GOATSHEAD, OR, GATESHIDE MONASTERY, DURHAM.

THIS Houſe ſeems to have been of no great eminence, ſince it is not mentioned by Dugdale, except in his general catalogue of the Religious Houſes and their value, where there is the following entry, among thoſe of Durham: "Gates-"heved Hoſpital, St. Edmund, 5*l.* 9*s.* 4*d.*"

IT is only thus ſlightly touched on by Tanner: "Ad caprae caput Goatſhead, "or Gateſhide." A monaſtery here, whereof Uttan was abbot before A. D. 653. But in the Notes he refers to Bede's Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory, book 3. c. 21. and to Leland's Collectanea. In the latter is a tranſcript from the former, where, among the holy men choſen by Peada, ſon of king Penda, to inſtruct him in the Chriſtian religion, one Adda is mentioned, who is there ſaid to be "brother to "Uttan, an illuſtrious preſbyter, and abbot of the monaſtery called Goatſhead." Tanner likewiſe cites Bourne, who in his Hiſtory of Newcaſtle ſays, "The mo-"naſtery of Uttanus was where Mr. Riddle's or Gateſhead houſe now is."

FROM the following paſſage in Leland's Itinerary, vol. 7. part 1ſt, page 81. added to the entry before quoted from Dugdale's Catalogue, it appears as if this monaſtery was converted into an hoſpital, before the diſſolution of the religious houſes: "Where as the hoſpital (ſays he) is now of St. Edmund at Ge-"teſhed in Wyrale, was ſometyme a monaſtery, as I have heard, and by lykely-"hod the ſame that Bede ſpekythe of."

GOATSHEAD, OR, GATESHIDE MONASTERY, DURHAM.

In the Magna Britannia, publiſhed 1720, a different valuation is given of this houſe, as taken from Speed, in theſe words: "Gateſhead, a religious houſe, de-"dicated to St. Edmund. Who was the founder or benefactor is not known, "but the revenues are found to be 109l. 4s. 4d. per ann." Perhaps the former might be the value delivered in to the King's Commiſſioners, and this its true amount.

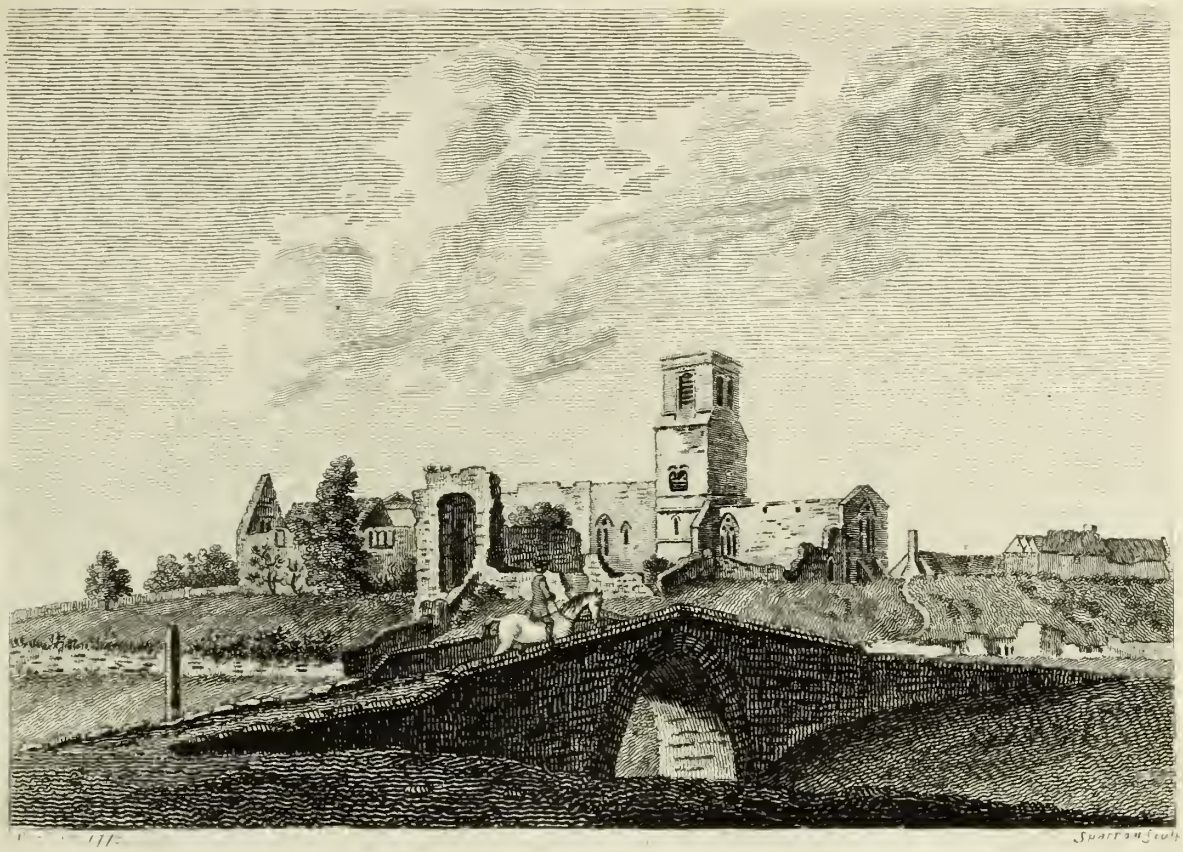
From theſe obſcure accounts, little to be depended upon can be collected reſpecting its ancient hiſtory: the following is its preſent ſtate:

Its remains ſtand in Gateſhead, on the eaſt or right-hand ſide of the high ſtreet leading to Newcaſtle bridge, from which it is diſtant about half a mile. The entrance is through a low, ſquare ſtone gate, decorated with pilaſters, and ſeemingly of modern conſtruction. The ſite of the houſe, with its offices and gardens, occupied about two acres and a half of land. Towards the eaſt end of it are the ruins of a manſion, which, from the ſtile of its architecture, ſeems to have been built ſince the diſſolution of the monaſtery, perhaps out of its materials. This probably was Mr. Riddle's houſe, alluded to by Bourne; and the gate-way before-mentioned was in all likelihood erected at the ſame time.

Nearest the road ſtands the chapel, whoſe weſt end is handſomely ornamented with a number of pointed arches and niches; though the inſide ſeems remarkably plain. It conſiſts of a ſingle aiſle, twenty-one paces broad by twenty-ſix long. Some ſteps at the eaſt-end, leading to the altar, are ſtill remaining; near them is a grave-ſtone, on which is cut a croſs ſimilar to that on the jamb of the church-door at Jarrow; it has alſo the marks of an inlaid border about it, but the braſs is gone. The arches of the windows (except thoſe of the eaſt and weſt ends, which are entirely pointed) are round within, and pointed on the outſide. A remarkable ornament is mounted on its eaſt end on a ſlender rod, being a ſmall circle chequered by ſeveral bars croſſing each other at right angles, as may be ſeen in the View.

In the year 1745 or 46, this chapel being, as it is ſaid, made uſe of by the Roman Catholics, was out of a miſguided zeal ſet on fire by ſome perſons, who perhaps meant to paſs for good Proteſtants; but by this their intolerant fury ſhewed themſelves to be actuated by thoſe very principles they affected ſo much to contemn. This monaſtery is now the property of Ralph Clavering, Eſq. of Calleley, and is chiefly uſed for garden-ground.

This Drawing was made Anno 1773.



THE MONASTERY OF JARROW, OR GYRWI, DURHAM.

THIS was a Benedictine Monaſtery, and with that of Wiremoth owed its foundation to the interceſſion of the Abbot Benedict Biſcop, born of noble Engliſh parents; a ſoldier in the early part of his life, afterwards miniſter to King Oſwy; and ſaid to be the firſt who brought the art of making glaſs into England. This Benedict, contemning worldly riches and honours, travelled to Rome, where being inſtructed in the monaſtic diſcipline, the choir ſong, and all the eccleſiaſtical rites, he returned to England, and afterwards obtained from Egfrid, King of the Northumbrians, forty families, or hides of land for the endowment of theſe monaſteries.

THIS houſe was founded about the year 684, and was dedicated to St. Paul. On its completion, Benedict peopled it with ſeventeen Monks from Wiremoth, and placed over them as Abbot one Ceolfridus. Here the venerable Bede was educated; the place of his birth, according to moſt writers, being in this neighbourhood.

BY the frequent incurſions of the Danes this Monaſtery was ſo ruined, that at the coming of the Normans, the church or chapel wherein the Monks celebrated divine ſervice, was a poor thatched hovel, made up of ſome old walls, with a roof of rough unhewn timber. It was, however, certainly afterwards re-edified, as is evident from the ſtile of ſome part of the remains; but when, or by whom, does not occur in any of the writers who treat of it.

BOTH this Monaſtery and that of Wiremoth became afterwards cells to Durham. At the Diſſolution, the revenues of Jarrow were valued at 38*l.* 14*s.* 4*d.* per ann. Dugdale;

40*l.* 7*s.* 8*d.* Speed; and were granted 36th of Henry VIII. to William Lord Eure. Tanner in a note makes a query, whether it was not granted afterwards, viz. 7th of Edward VI. to Simon Welbury and Chriſtopher Moreland. At preſent it is ſaid to belong to —— Clavering, Eſq. and —— Bonner, Eſq. of Callerton, patrons of the Church.

The ſite is an eminence on the ſouth ſide of the river Tyne, about five miles eaſt of, or below Newcaſtle. Its bounds do not ſeem to have been very extenſive; neither was the place judiciouſly choſen with reſpect to healthfulneſs, there being a large marſhy ſpot bordering it on the ſouth; and when the tide is out, ſcarce any thing but ſtinking ouſe remains in the bed of the creek, that runs cloſe under it; over which is the bridge ſeen in the view.

The remains conſiſt of the chapel, now converted into a pariſh church, and ſeveral walls and fragments of the offices of the abbey. In ſome are circular arches, but the greateſt number are pointed. Some cottages have been patched up here, partly with the ſtanding walls of the old building, and partly with the materials pulled down. Several pieces of ſhort columns with Saxon capitals lie ſcattered amongſt the rubbiſh.

The church, which ſeems to have been lately repaired, has now only one iſle; but the marks of other buildings are very apparent on its north wall. The weſt door has a plain circular arch; and on its north jaumb is an ancient croſs, ornamented in the Saxon ſtile.

Within the church on the north wall, on a ſtone that goes quite through it, is the following inſcription, which has been clumſily blacked when the church was laſt white-waſhed. In the ſpace between the third and fourth line there is a roughneſs on the ſurface of the ſtone, ſeemingly as if a line had been eraſed.

DEDICATOBASILICAE
SCIPAVLIVIIIIKLMAI
ANNOXVFCFRIDIREC
- - - - - - - - - - -
CEOLFRIDIABBEIVSDEMQ
Q. ECCLESDOAVCTORE
CONDITORIS. ANNO IIII.

Here likewiſe are two very antient carved oaken reading deſks, having each ſeats for four perſons. But what is eſteemed the greateſt curioſity, and as ſuch is carefully kept under lock and key in the veſtry, is the chair of venerable Bede, a great two-armed chair, ſaid to have been depoſited here ever ſince the Diſſolution of the Monaſtery. It is of oak, and appears to have been hewn out with an axe, except that at the top of the back, the croſs piece is mortiſed to the ſtandards or upright parts, which ſerve both for legs and its ſupport: theſe with the ſeat and ſides are very ancient; but the back, according to the perſon who ſhews it, has been ſince added.

Various are the ſuperſtitions and ridiculous ſtories told of this place, among which are theſe: "That it was never dark in Jarrow Church; and that the windows were of horn "inſtead of glaſs." The latter, perhaps, relates to ſome almoſt forgotten tradition concerning the introduction of glaſs by Benedict.

This drawing was made Anno 1773.

RABY CASTLE, DURHAM.

PLATE I.

THIS Caſtle was built by John de Neville, ſoon after the year 1378; at which time a licence for its erection was granted by Biſhop Hatfield: a duplicate of it is ſtill preſerved in the Archives of the See of Durham. The Manor of Raby had long been in the poſſeſſion of this family, who held it of the See of Durham by the yearly rent of 4l. and a ſtag.

IT has been obſerved in the Preface, that after the acceſſion of King Henry II. no one could build a Caſtle without firſt obtaining the Royal Licence. The County of Durham being a Palatinate, a power of granting ſuch licence belonged to the Biſhop, who is there conſidered as a Viceroy. As the form of this Licence ſomewhat differs from that given in the Preface to the Firſt Volume, it is here inſerted at length, in the language in which it is originally written, together with a tranſlation.

" THOMAS, par la Grace de Dieu, Eveſque de Dureſme, a touz y qui ceſtez noz pre-
" ſentes Lettres verront, ou orrount ſalutz. Sachez que nous de noſtre grace chere eſpecial
" et pour le grant Amour que nous avons enver noſtre chere et foial John de Nevill,
" Chivaler, Sieur de Raby qui de long temps adeſte de noſtre Conſaill, et nous ſervant,
" lui eions grante et tant que nous eſt et licence eſpeciall donc quil puiſſe de ſon Manior de
" Raby, q'eſt dedenz noſtre Roial Seignurie dedans noſtre Evechee de Dureſme, faire un Chaſ-
" tell fraunchement a ſa volonté, et touz les tours, meſons, et mures, d'y celle, batailler et
" kirneller, ſans eſtreent empeſcher moleſter——ou autres nos ſubjitz——ou demurant
" dedenz noſtre did Seignurie Roial. A avoir et tenir perpetuelement a lui et a ſes heires
" iſſuit quil ne ſeoit pas prejudicial ne damagous a nous, ne a noſtre Egliſe de Dureſme,

" ne a noz ſucceſſour en nule temps a venire. En temonaunce de quels choſes, nous avons " faitez faire ceſtez noz Lettres Patentes. Don a Dureſme par les meins Willielmi de " Ellvedon, noſtre Chauncellor, le diſme jour de May, L'An. de noſtre ſacre trent et " tierce.

" Par Lettre de Private Seal."

Which runs in Engliſh thus:

" Thomas, by the Grace of God, Biſhop of Durham, to all thoſe who ſhall ſee or " hear theſe our preſent Letters: Know ye that we, of our dear and eſpecial favor, and " for the great love we bear to our dear and faithful John de Nevill, Knight, Lord of " Raby, who has long been of our council and in our ſervice, have granted, and as much " as in us is, do licence him freely, according to his will, to make a Caſtle of his Manor of " Raby, which is within our Royal Lordſhip, and in our Biſhoprick of Durham; and " all the towers, houſes, and walls thereof, to embattle, and crenellate without reſtraint, " hindrance, or moleſtation——or other our ſubjects—— or living within our Royal " Lordſhip. To have and to hold to him and his heirs for ever, provided it ſhall not " be prejudicial or injurious to us, our Church at Durham, nor to our ſucceſſors in time " to come. In witneſs whereof, we have cauſed theſe our Letters Patent to be made. " Given at Durham by the hands of William de Elmden our Chancellor, on the 10th " day of May, and in the 33d of our Conſecration.

" By writ of Privy Seal."

Ever ſince the reign of James I. this Caſtle hath belonged to the ancient family of the Vanes, ennobled July 8, Anno 1699, when Sir Chriſtopher Vane was created a Baron of this realm, by the title of Lord Bernard, of Bernard Caſtle. He was ſucceeded in his eſtates and honours by his eldeſt ſon Gilbert, whoſe ſon Henry was created Viſcount Bernard and Earl of Darlington, April 3, 1754. His ſon Henry, ſecond Earl of Darlington, is the preſent proprietor of this noble edifice, the ſituation of which, in a park beautifully admitting a view of the deer, is rather paſtoral than romantic; being on the ſide of a vaſt amphitheatre of country which affords a proſpect of a rich cultivation, terminated to the weſt and eaſt by diſtant hills, and to the ſouth by an extended plain, exhibiting that freedom now ſo much purſued in rural ſpeculations. On the other hand, the nearer parts of the horizon are charmingly verged by plantations raiſed by the preſent noble owner, who in every part of a very extended property gives the higheſt proofs of his attention and taſte. Although the ſurrounding country boaſts not much of the marvellous and ſublime in Nature, yet the deficiency of ſuch objects ſeems amply ſupplied, in another ſtile, by the growing elegance of every reform, where convenience, profit, and order, are happily blended.

The Caſtle, with its nearly circular terrace incloſed with a military wall, is ſaid to meaſure two acres, and the demeſnes annexed to exceed 30 miles in length.

As it is not the plan of this Work to delineate the face of a country, and ſtill leſs to enter into agricultural projects, we ſhall only obſerve that, in this reſpect, his Lordſhip ſteadily keeps up in every ſpecies of improvement the idea of the *utile* and the *dulce*; nor is he leſs attentive to the venerable pile, which is daily acquiring new importance, the environs and the ſeat of reſidence mutually vying to dignify each other.

This View, which is the N. Eaſt Aſpect, was drawn Anno 1774.

RABY CASTLE, DURHAM.

PLATE II.

THE following account of this Caſtle is given by Leland, in his Itinerary:

"FROM S. Andres Akeland to Raby Caſtel five miles, part by arable, but more by "paſtures and moriſch hilly ground, barren of wood. Raby is the largeſt Caſtel of "Logginges in al the North Cuntery, and is of a ſtrong building, but not ſet other on "hil or very ſtrong ground.

"As I enterid by a cauſey into it ther was a little ſtagne on the right hond: and in the "firſt area were but two toures, one at ech ende as entres, and no other buildid. Yn the "2 area as in entring was a great gate of iren, with a tour, and 2 or 3 mo on the right "hond.

"THEN were al the chief toures of the 3 court as in the hart of the Caſtel. The haul "and al the houſes of offices be large and ſtately: and in the haul I ſaw an incredible "greet beame of an hart. The great chaumber was exceding large, but now it is fals "rofid, and dividid into 2 or 3 partes. I ſaw ther a litle chaumber, wherin was, in "windowes of colerid glaſſe, al the petigre of the Nevilles: but it is now taken down, "and glaſid with clere glaſſe. Ther is a touer in the Caſtel having the mark of two "capitale B, from Berthram Bulmer.

"THER is another touer, bering the name of Jane, baſtard ſiſter to Henry the 4, and "wife to Rafe Nevile, the firſt Erl of Weſtmorland.

"THER long 3 parkes to Raby, whereof 2 be pleniſhid with dere. The middle park "hath a lodge in it.

RABY CASTLE, DURHAM.

"And thereby is a chace, bering the name of Langeley, and hath falow dere: it is a "3 miles in length."

Mr Pennant, who viſited this Caſtle about the year 1772, permitted me to tranſcribe his Notes, wherein it is thus deſcribed:

"Raby Caſtle, the ſeat of the Earl of Darlington, is an entire fortreſs. was once the "property of the See of Durham; and in the reign of Edward III. permitted by the "Biſhop to be embattled. It was at times the property of the Bullmers, the Cliffords, "and the Nevilles; a tower bears the name of the firſt, and the gateway that of Clifford. "It is an irregular, but magnificent, pile, and of great ſize; ſome part has been burned, "and at preſent the great tower, called Bullmer's, is detached: all the towers are ſquare. "It is ſurrounded by a great foſs, only part of which is now filled with water. A fine parade "goes quite round the Caſtle, garniſhed with battlements. On Bullmer's tower is a great "bas-relief of a bull holding a flag ſtaff in one foot, with a flag to it, and over his "ſhoulder is a ſhield. The founder has alſo marked this tower with a great B.

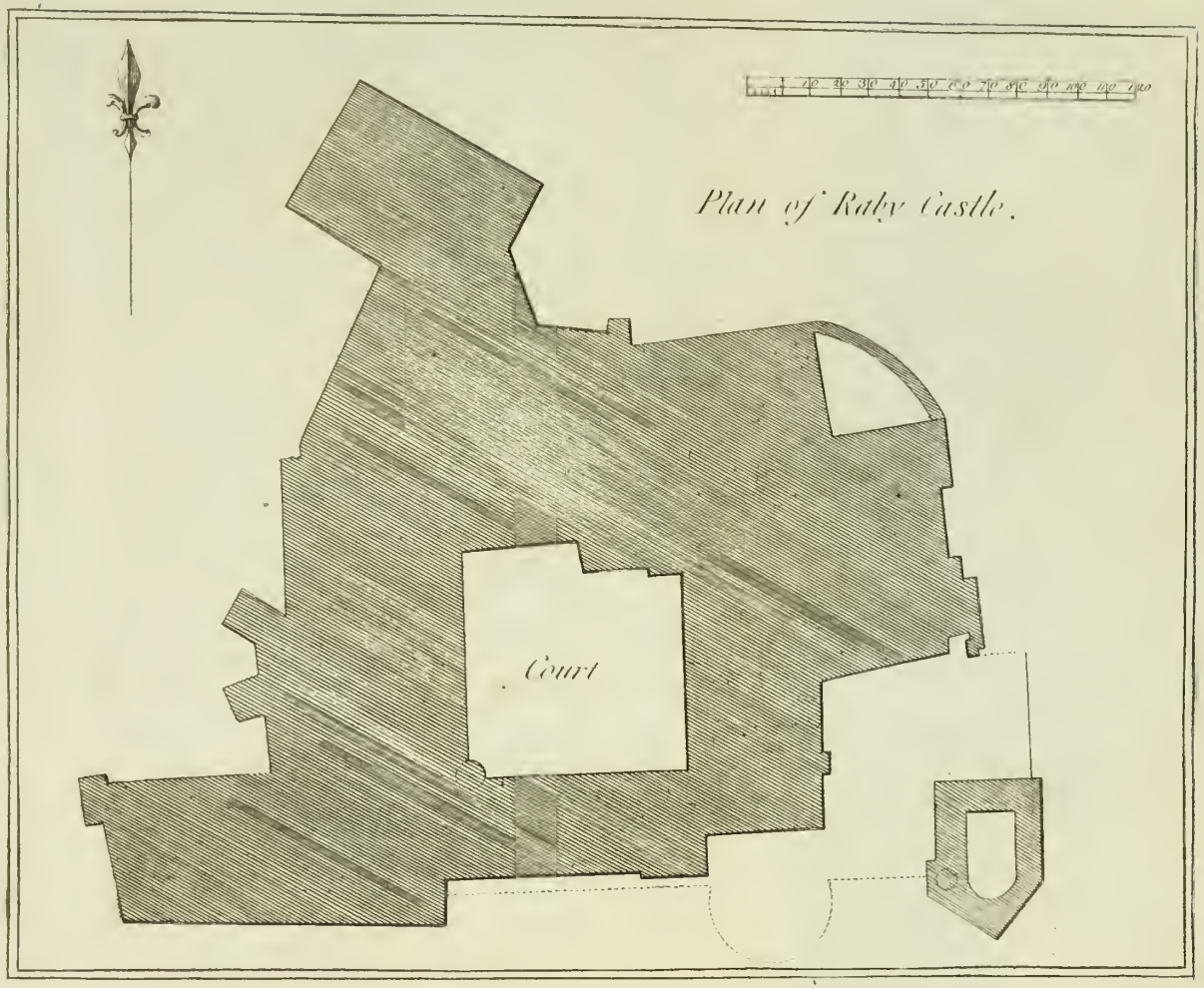
"The chief entrance is on the weſt, and is very grand; it leads to a ſquare, within "which is a great hall, ſupported by ſix pillars, the capitals diverging and running in "ribs along the arched roof. A ſtair-caſe leads from this into an upper hall of the firſt "magnitude, viz. 90 feet long, 36 broad, and 34 high; the roof flat, and made of "wood. Here aſſembled, in the time of the Nevilles, 700 Knights, who held of that "family. Over the chimney is a picture of Queen Elizabeth.

"In a breakfaſt-room, the receſſes are in the form of ſemicircles, ſcooped out, I may "ſay, of the walls, which are 9 feet 1 inch thick: a window is in each of theſe. I ſaw "alſo a receſs for a bed, gained out of the wall, and ſeveral other conveniencies and "communications quarried out of it; and in ſome places pillars are left, as in collieries, "to ſupport the roof.

"The oven was of dimenſions ſuited to the hoſpitality of thoſe times, higher than a "tall perſon, for the talleſt may ſtand upright in it; and I think its diameter muſt be 15 "feet. At preſent it is converted into a wine-cellar; the ſides are divided into ten parts, "and each holds a hogſhead of wine in bottles.

"The kitchen is a magnificent and lofty ſquare, has three chimnies; one for the grate, "a ſecond for ſtoves, the third (now ſtopped up) for the great cauldron. The top is "arched, and a ſmall cupola lights it in the center; but on the ſides are five windows, "with a gallery paſſing all round before them, and four ſteps from each pointing down "towards the kitchen, but ending a great height above the floor: their uſe is not known; "probably they were only meant for ornament. From the floor is another ſtair-caſe "that conducts to the great hall, but the paſſage is now ſtopped—What hecatombs "muſt have been carried that way."

This View, which repreſents the S. W. aſpect of the Caſtle, was drawn Anno 1774.


Plan of Raby Castle.
Court

WHITTON CASTLE, DURHAM.

Whitton Castle ſtands on the ſouth ſide of the river Wear, at its conflux with the Lynburn.

This was the Baronial Caſtle of the Lords de Euers, a family of ancient note and eminence in the County, deſcended from the Lords of Clavering and Warkworth; and by the female line, from the Veſcies and Attons. They were famous for their warlike exploits againſt the Scots, as a reward for which King Edward I. beſtowed upon them Ketneſs, a town in Scotland.

It was built about the year 1410, as is evident from the following licence for its conſtruction, preſerved in the Archives of the See of Durham, among the rolls of biſhop Langley, marked A. N°. 32. That deed recites, that this building was begun before; but as no licence had been previouſly obtained, it is probable the Biſhop by his authority put a ſtop to its progreſs. This circumſtance ſerves to ſhew that the family was then in great eſtimation, as none but ſuch as ſuppoſed themſelves almoſt above the law would have neglected this precaution. It alſo farther appears from that Biſhop not only pardoning this tranſgreſſion, but alſo granting his licence for the erection of the Caſtle after ſo flagrant a contempt of his authority.

"Thomas Dei gratia Dunelmenſis Epiſcopus ſalutem. Sciatis quod cum Radulphus de Eure Miles nuper Manerium ſuum de Witton cum muro de petra et calce includere et Manerium illud batellare, kirnellare, et turellare, ac fortallicium inde facere incipit, licentia noſtra aut prædeceſſorum noſtrorum ſuper hoc non obtenta: Nos de gratia noſtra ſpeciali pardonavimus tranſgreſſionem factam in hac parte: Et alterius conceſſimus et licentiam dedimus pro nobis et ſucceſſoribus noſtris præfato Radulpho, quod ipſe

Manerium prædictum cum muro de petra et calce includere, et Manerium illud caſtellare, kirnellare, et turillare, ac fortallicium inde facere poſſit, et tenere ſibi et hæredibus ſuis imperpetuum, abſque impedimento noſtri vel ſucceſſorum noſtrorum Juſticiarium, Eſcaetorum, Vice-comitum, aut aliorum Ballivorum ſeu Miniſtorum noſtrorum, vel ſucceſſorum noſtrorum quorumcumqu; imperpetuum. In cujus rei teſtimonium, &c. Dat, &c. viceſſimo-tertio die Septembris, Anno Pontificatûs noſtri quinto.

Which may be thus tranſlated:

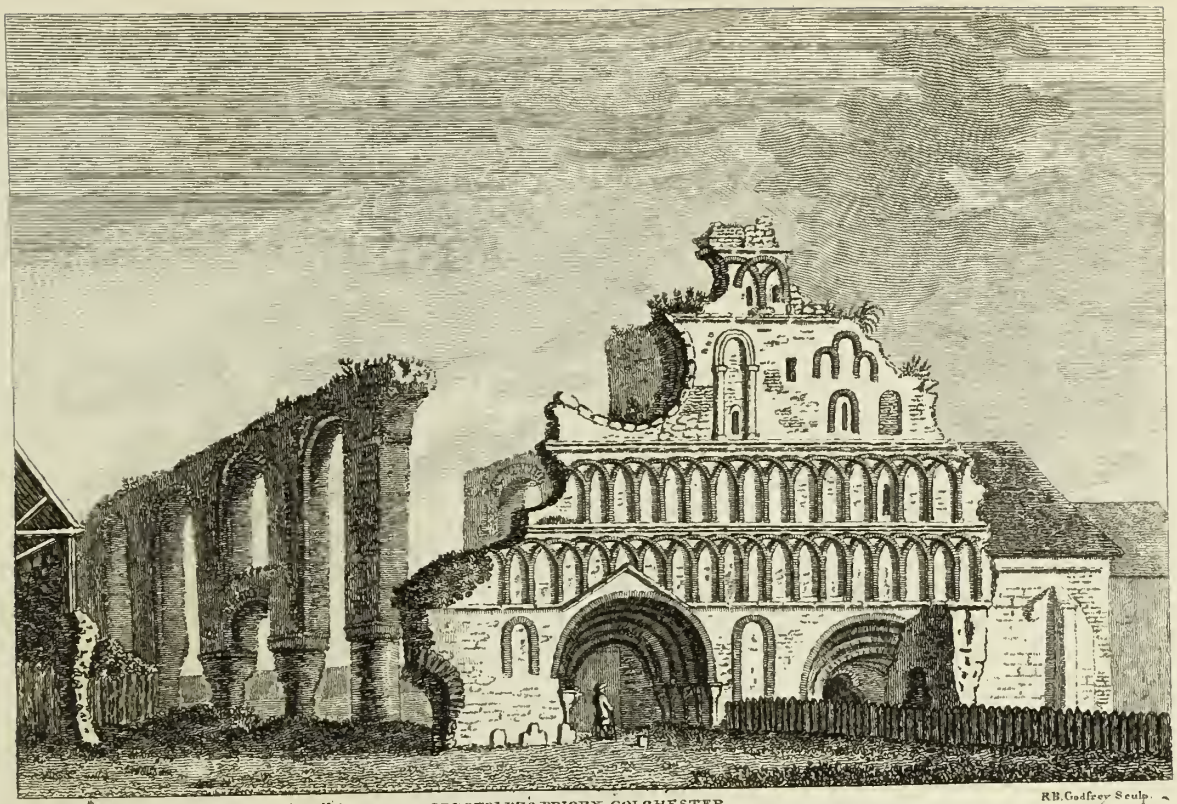
"Thomas, by the grace of God, Biſhop of Durham, ſendeth greeting. Know ye, that whereas Radulphus de Eure, Knight, did begin to incloſe his Manor of Whitton with a wall of lime and ſtone, and to embattle, crenellate, tourillate, and erect a fortreſs on the ſaid Manor, not having firſt obtained either our licence or that of our predeceſſors: We, out of our eſpecial grace, have pardoned that tranſgreſſion; and moreover have granted and given licence, for us and our ſucceſſors, to the ſaid Radulphus, to incloſe his Manor aforeſaid with a wall of lime and ſtone, and to caſtellate, crenellate, tourillate, and build a fortreſs thereon; to have and to hold the ſame to himſelf and his heirs for ever, without impediment from us or our ſucceſſors, our juſtices, eſcheators, ſheriffs, or other bailiffs or officers whatſoever, or thoſe of our ſucceſſors for ever. In witneſs whereof, &c. &c. Given the 23d day of September, in the fifth year of our Pontificate."

In the reign of Henry VIII. Sir Ralph Euers was Lord Warden of the Marches, and did ſo many valiant exploits againſt the Scots at Tiviotdale, that the King gave him a grant of all the lands he could win from them; wherefore he invaded Scotland; but engaging with the Earl of Arran at Hallidown-Field, was there ſlain, together with the Lord Ogle, and many other perſons of note. William Eure, brother of the ſecond Ralph Lord Eure, was a Colonel in the army of King Charles I. and was killed at the battle of Marſton Moor, in Yorkſhire, A. D. 1645. The laſt Lord Eure, who was living A. D. 1674, leaving no iſſue-male, that family became extinct.

At the time of the Civil War, this Caſtle was in the hands of Sir William Darcy. He being a Royaliſt, it was beſieged and taken by Sir Arthur Haſlerig, Governor of Auckland-Caſtle, who ſequeſtered the goods, but did not deſtroy the building; which was afterwards demoliſhed by James Lord Darcy, of Havan in the Kingdom of Ireland, about the year 1689; who took away the lead, timber, and chimney-pieces, to Sadberye, in this County, with deſign to build another houſe there: but the greateſt part of theſe materials were afterwards ſold by auction for much leſs than the ſum paid for their pulling down and removal from Whitton thither.

This Caſtle is at preſent the property of John Cuthbert, Eſq.

This View was drawn Anno 1774.



Publiſh'd 20 Feb 1772 by S Hooper N° 25 Ludgate Hill. ST BOTOLPH'S PRIORY COLCHESTER. RB Godfrey Sculp.

ST. BOTOLPH's PRIORY.

ST. BOTOLPH'S PRIORY was founded in the beginning of the twelfth century, by Ernulph, a monk, for Canons regular of the Order of St. Auguſtine; their number is no where aſcertained. Theſe Canons were firſt brought into England about the year 1109.

THIS Priory was the firſt of that Order, as appears by the Bull of Pope Paſchall the Second, which inveſts them with a pre-eminence and authority over all other houſes of their Order in England; exempts them from all ſecular and epiſcopal juriſdiction; directs the future Priors to be choſen from among the Canons; and orders the Biſhop of London, or ſome other in his ſtead, to conſecrate them, without exacting the payment of fees.

IT does not appear that Ernulph ſettled any lands on them, except the SITE, and the Garden of the Priory; and though they afterwards received various donations, their revenues were never very ample.

St. BOTOLPH's PRIORY.

King Henry the Firſt, beſides confirming ſeveral other benefactions, gave them the whole tythes of his Royal Demeſnes in Hatfield Regis, or Broad Oak; on condition of their performing the following ſervice to him and his heirs, whenever they ſhould make war in Wales; namely, to ſend one horſe of five ſhillings price, a ſack and a ſpur, for forty days, to be maintained at the king's charge.

These were ſucceeded by other benefactions, at different times; but as they were neither very conſiderable, or attended with any remarkable conditions, I ſhall not here enumerate them.

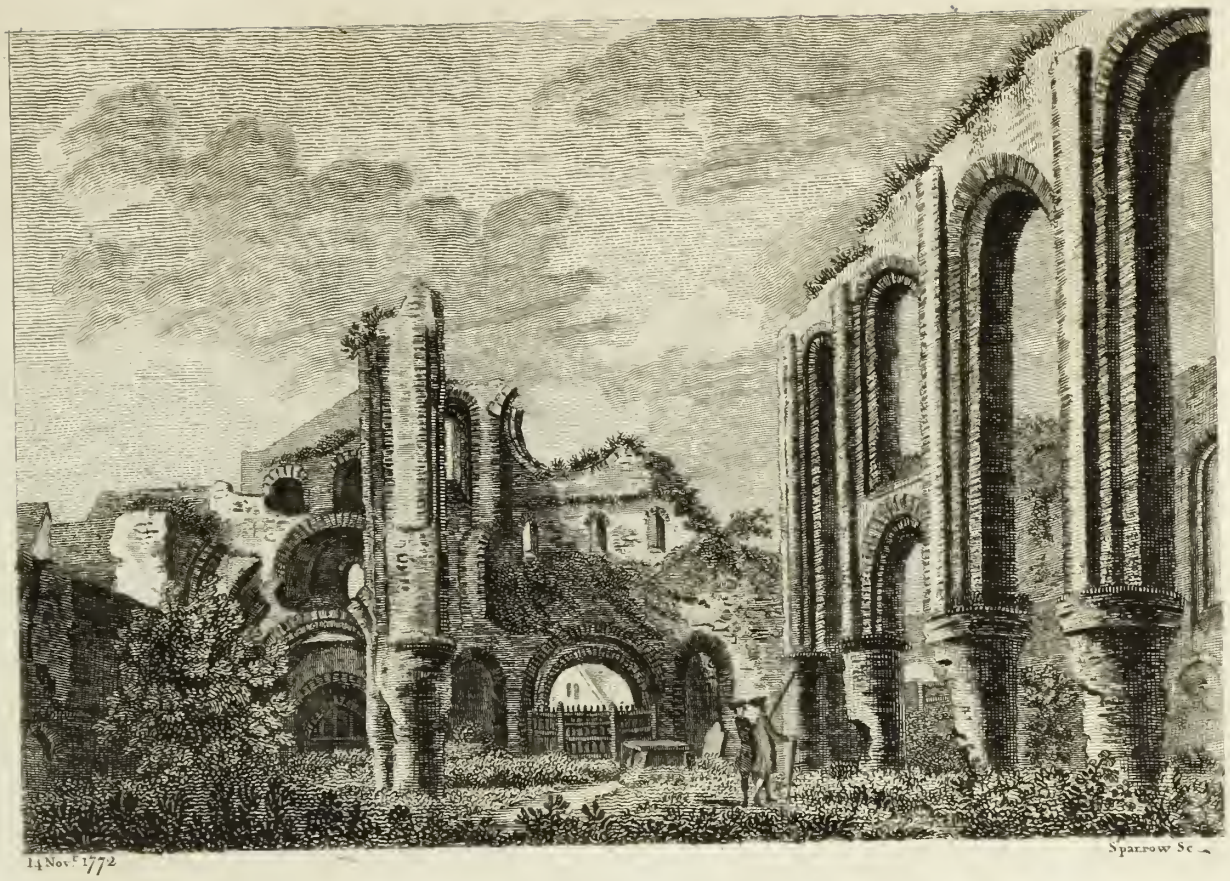
At the Diſſolution this Priory was valued at one hundred and thirty-four pounds thirteen ſhillings and four pence; and was granted by Henry the Eighth to Lord Chancellor Audley, who ſold it to Sir Arthur Clarke, from whoſe family it paſſed about the year 1650, to Oliver Hendricks; who, about the beginning of this century, conveyed it to Oliver Burkin; and from him it was transferred, anno 1720, to Matthew Martin, Eſq; who gave it to his ſon-in-law, Major-General Price.

The Priory ſtood on the ſouth ſide of the church; but there are no remains of it, except a few walls, which are incorporated into a brew-houſe, erected on its Site.

The church was entire till the ſiege of this town by the Parliamentary Army, anno 1648; both parties accuſe each other with unneceſſarily and maliciouſly deſtroying it.

By the weſt front here repreſented, it appears to have been an elegant building. The interſecting circular arches, which are of Roman brick, give it a great richneſs; and by their contraſt with the colour of the ſtone, have a very agreeable effect. The angles of this front were adorned with two ſtately towers: Mr. Morant ſays, That on the north-ſide was ſtanding, in the memory of perſons then living. From the great quantity of Roman bricks to be met with all over this building, it is probable, it was erected out of the ruins of ſome more antient fabrick; and this is the more likely, as it is agreed on all hands to have been a Roman ſtation, and is by many thought, in preference to Maldon, to have been the antient Camelodunum.

This drawing was made anno 1767.



St. BOTOLPH's PRIORY, COLCHESTER, ESSEX.

(PLATE 2.)

THE inſide of this venerable ruin is here delineated. At this time it conſiſts of only the nave and two ſide aiſles: theſe were ſeparated by a double row of very thick columns, ſupporting circular arches: ſix of them are ſtill ſtanding on the north-ſide; but towards the ſouth, there are now only two remaining: both the columns and arches are chiefly conſtructed with broken Roman bricks, interſperſed with ſtones. Beſides the damage done to this building, during the fury of the Civil-war, it has from time to time ſuffered repeated depredations, and been much defaced, by long ſerving for the rendezvous and common play-place of the idle youths of the town: the pariſh officers have, however, at length, to prevent its total demolition, taken the laudable precaution of encloſing and locking it up: this has permitted the weeds and ſhrubs to ſprout up among the mouldering walls and ſcattered tombs---a circumſtance which adds greatly to the beauty and ſolemnity of the ſcene.

St. BOTOLPH's PRIORY.

The dimenſions of this church, as given by Morant in his Hiſtory of Colcheſter, are as follow.

"Length of it within the walls, one hundred and eight feet; width of the "nave between the pillars, twenty-five feet and a half; width of the ſouth aiſle, "nine feet, one inch and a half; width of the north aiſle, nine feet, ſeven inches and "a half; diameter of the pillars, five feet and a half; thickneſs of the wall of the "great door, eight feet and a half."

This ruin not only merits the obſervation of the curious traveller, as a piece of antiquity, but alſo for its picturesque form, and the beauty and variety of its tints, which, together, make it a ſubject well worthy the pencil of ſome one of the many eminent artiſts, of whom this kingdom may at preſent ſo juſtly boaſt.

This view was taken near the ſouth-eaſt corner of the building, in the year 1772.

COLCHESTER CASTLE, ESSEX.

This caſtle ſtands a ſmall diſtance north of the High-ſtreet. Its ſite, called the Bayley, a corruption of Ballium, is both out of the juriſdiction of the corporation, and extra parochial. It is ſaid, by Norden, in his Survey, to have been built by Edward the Elder, who repaired the walls of the town. Morant conjectures it to be Norman; and in this he is juſtified, by a paſſage in the Monaſticon, which aſcribes its erection to Eudo Dapifer, ſewer, or ſteward to William the Conqueror, and founder of St. John's abby. From the great quantity of Roman brick all over this building, it was certainly erected either on the ruins, or with the materials, of ſome very ancient building. Its ſhape is that of a rectangular parallelogram, facing the four cardinal points of the compaſs; its eaſt and weſt ſides meaſuring one hundred and forty feet, and its north and ſouth one hundred and two feet each, on the outſide. On its north-eaſt and north-weſt angles are two ſquare towers. It has another of the ſame figure, which is placed not on the angle, but on the ſouthern extremity of the weſt face; and on the ſouthern end of the eaſt front is one of a ſemicircular form, whoſe external radius is twenty feet. Theſe meaſures are taken from an accurate plan.

The walls, which are twelve feet thick below, and eleven on the upper ſtory, are built with ſtone and Roman bricks; but moſt of the latter are broken. On the outſide, ſeveral ſtrata of theſe bricks, particularly on the north ſide, run round, in horizontal lines, like bands or fillets, as may be ſeen in the view.

The original and only entrance, excepting a poſtern on the north ſide, is on the ſouth, under a handſome circular arch; the other doors have been ſince cut, with great labour, out of the ſolid wall.

Towards the left hand, in entering, and in the ſouth-weſt tower, is the grand ſtair-caſe, which is ſtill pretty entire, excepting at the top. To the right is a large vault, above ground, well arched. Over this, out of a door leading from the grand ſtair-caſe, was the paſſage into the chapel, which partly ſtands in the ſemicircular tower. It is ſtrongly arched at the top. This chapel is of an irregular figure. Beneath it is a good arched vault, uſed for a priſon or bridewell.

The inſide area was divided by two ſtrong parallel walls, running north and ſouth, which ſerved for partitions and ſupports to ſeveral appartments. The greateſt part of the weſternmoſt wall is down. In that on the eaſt, the bricks are laid according to the Roman method; that is, herring-bone faſhion. The lodgings were all at the upper part; and there are four chimneys ſtill remaining, turned with ſemi-circular arches; as, indeed, are all the doors and windows: the latter are wide within, but diminiſh toward the outſide.

Under the caſtle are ſpacious vaults, ſupported by foundations, in the form of a croſs. Theſe were diſcovered, ſays Morant, about thirty years ago: they were then full of ſand; for the carrying which away, the owner, John Wheeley, was at the pains of cutting a cart-way through the foundations, near the north-eaſt corner, where the wall was thirty feet thick.

"This building, ſays the afore-cited author, ſuffered extremely, from the ill-judged attempt of John Wheeley, "who purchaſed it of the late Robert Northfolk, eſq. with intent, and upon condition, to demoliſh it entirely, "and make money of the materials. For this purpoſe many of the Roman bricks were taken away and "ſold, and moſt of the free-ſtone at the coins, and in the inward arches of the building. A fine well was

" deſtroyed, and the tops of the towers and walls forced down with ſcrews, or blown up with gun powder, and " thrown upon the heads of the arched vaults below, in ſuch large weights, and with ſo great violence, as to " break one of the fineſt of them. But after great devaſtations, the remaining part of the walls being ſo ſtrongly " cemented, that the profit did not anſwer the charge of farther demolition, he was forced to deſiſt.

" Just within the entrance of the caſtle, they ſhew ſome ſmall clumſey images of Helen, Conſtantine, &c. " carved in ſtone, but viſibly modern. They alſo ſhew you an inſcription in four ſhort lines, which they pretend " cannot be read. Upon inſpection, it is no more than ALYANOR ROGER CHAMBYRLEYNAN.....GOD, " and a few other words, in capitals; which, by the form of the letters, appear to have been done about the reign " of King Edward the Third, if not later.

" The caſtle-yard, bailey, or balywick, was formerly encompaſſed on the ſouth and weſt ſides by a ſtrong wall, " in which were two gates; that on the ſouth was the chief. This wall was taken down by Robert Northfolk, eſq. " who erected in the room of it a range of houſes, now ſtanding in the High-ſtreet. The weſt wall reached as far " as the eaſt ſide of St. Helen's-lane. On the north and eaſt ſides the caſtle was ſecured by a deep ditch, and a " ſtrong rampart of earth; which are now taken into the gardens of Charles Gray, eſq. This rampart is thrown " upon a wall that formerly encompaſſed either the caſtle or the palace of Coel, on the ſite whereof the caſtle is " built; the buttreſſes, and other parts, of which wall have been lately diſcovered.

" The chapel here was endowed with diverſe lands, which were afterwards, by Eudo Dapifer, granted to the " monaſtry of St. John; in conſideration of which, the abbot of that houſe was obliged to find a chaplain, to " officiate three days in the week, either in St. Helen's chapel, or that of the caſtle."

The original property of this caſtle was in the crown, where it continued till granted by the Empreſs Maud to Alberic de Vere, anceſtor of the De Vere's, earls of Oxford: but though ſhe beſtowed on him the title, it was not, probably, in her power to give him the poſſeſſion; ſo that it remained in the crown till the year 1214, when King John granted it, during pleaſure, with the hundred of Tendering and Borrough, to Stephen Harringood.

King Henry the Third, in the year 1256, granted it for life, with diverſe lands, rents and profits, to Guido de la Rupe forti, or Rochfort; but he, in 1258, falling into diſgrace, was deprived of his eſtates and baniſhed. In 1273, it was given, by Edward the Firſt, with the hundred of Tendering, to John de Burgh for life; and in 1275, to Richard de Hollibrook; and again, in the ſame year, to Lawrence de Scaccario, ſheriff of Eſſex, for the county goal; and the demeſnes belonging thereto were ordered to be plowed and ſown for the king's uſe.

The next poſſeſſor was Robert de Benhall, knight, to whom, with diverſe lands, it was given by Edward the Third, for life. In 1404, King Henry the Fourth granted it, together with the fee-farm of the town of Colcheſter and hundred of Tendering, to his ſon Henry, duke of Glouceſter; and Henry the Sixth gave the ſaid hundred and caſtle to his queen, Margaret. In 1461, King Edward the Fourth beſtowed it on Sir John Haward, knight, for life; and Thomas Kendale, anno 1485, obtained the cuſtody of it, and the king's demeſnes in Colcheſter, by patent from Henry the Seventh, which he ſurrendered in 1496, when the ſaid grant was transferred to John Vere, earl of Oxford; which was renewed and confirmed by King Henry the Eighth; and the premiſes continued long in this family; from whom it paſſed to Thomas, Lord Darcey, Henry Mac Williams, and, in the year 1599, to Sir John Stanhope, to whom it was granted, with ſeveral parcels of land, for his and his ſon's life.

In the year 1629, James Hay, earl of Carliſle, obtained of King Charles the Firſt, the reverſion to him and his heirs for ever of this caſtle, after the death of Charles, Lord Stanhope, to be held of the manor of Eaſt Greenwich, in common ſocage, paying into the Exchequer ten pounds yearly; but Lord Stanhope ſurvived him, and ſoon after ſold it to Sir James Northfolk, ſerjeant at arms to the Houſe of Commons; from whom it deſcended to his ſon: he ſold it, anno 1688, to John Wheeley, who purchaſed it, as has been before ſaid, to pull it down; but the profit not anſwering his expectations, he diſpoſed of it to Sir Iſaac Rebow, from whoſe grandſon it was purchaſed by Charles Gray, eſq. the preſent poſſeſſor, who has fitted it up with great taſte and propriety, converted the chapel into a library, and built the cupola on the ſouth-weſt tower: the other building, on the top of the north-eaſt tower, is likewiſe of his erection.

The Governors or Conſtables of Colcheſter Caſtle, as given by Morant.

Henry II.

Hubert de St. Claire, killed at the ſeige of Bridgenorth; where, ſeeing one of the enemy juſt going to ſhoot at the king, he ſtepped before him, and received the arrow in his own breaſt; of which he died, recommending his daughter to the protection of that monarch.

Richard I. and 2 John.

William de Lanvallei; he gave King John two hundred marks for the cuſtody of it, and held it under King Richard I.

17 John.

William de Lanvallei, his ſon, Hubert de Burgh.

16 Henry III.

Stephen de Segrave.

50 Henry III.

Thomas de Clare.

2 Edward I.

William de Wayland, John de Burgh.

8 Henry IV.

William Dych.

7 Henry V.

William Bardulph. Anno 1428, John Exeter and Jacolet Germaine.

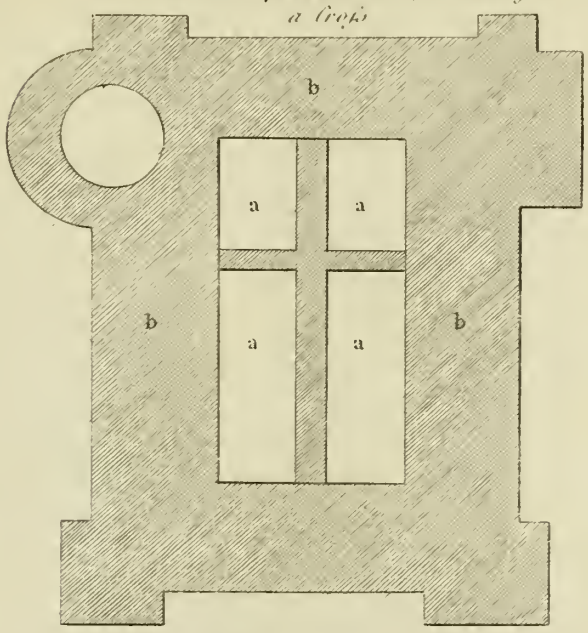
1 Henry VII.

Thomas Kendale.

The town of Colcheſter was, heretofore, feudatory to the caſtle; but a diſcharge and exemption was purchaſed of Queen Elizabeth, and confirmed by Parliament.

This drawing, which ſhews the north and weſt ſides of the caſtle, was taken anno 1772.

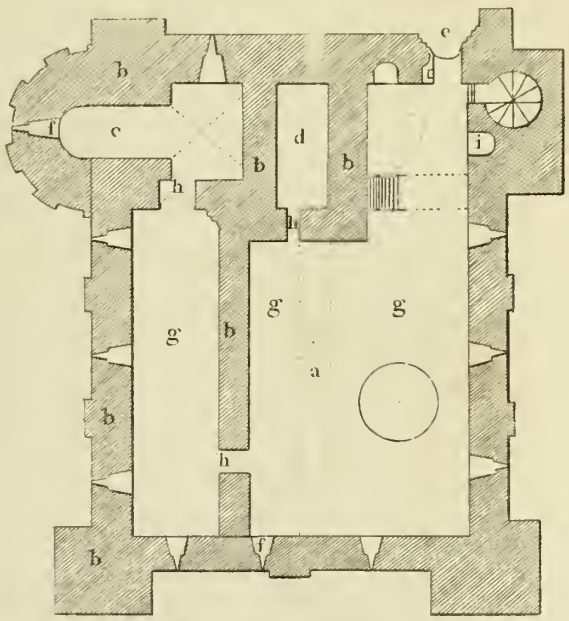
The Castle foundation representing a Crofs



a *Vaults*
b *The foundation solid*

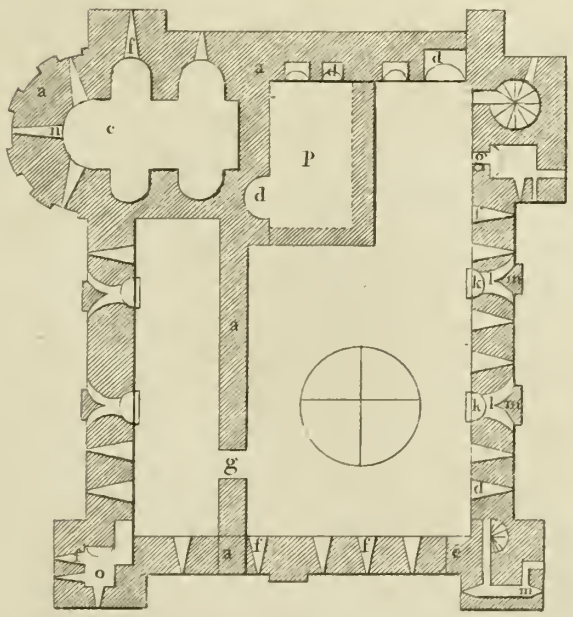
COLCHESTER CASTLE.

The Ground floor of the Castle

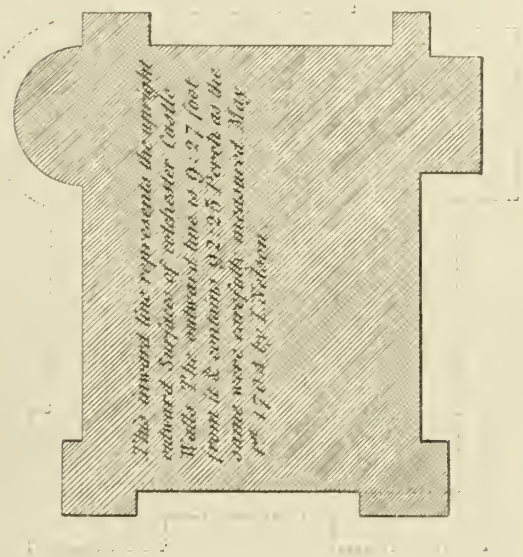


a *The Walls demolished*
b *The Walls standing*
c *The Prison*
d *a vaulted room*
e *The Entrance*
f *The Windows*
g *Yards*
h *Passages*
i *Large vaulted places like nitches*

The 2d floor of the Castle



a *The castle walls*
b *The Yards*
c *The Chaple*
d *Large places like nitches not thro the wall*
e *The Sally port or postern*
f *Windows*



h *The supposed entrance into the Chapel*
i *The Stairs*
k *The Chimnies*
l *The passages for the Smoke*
m *The Entresles*
n *The houses of office*
o *Small vaulted Chambers*
p *a platform even with the floor of the Chapel*

D.L. 1 Oct 1772.

HADLEY CASTE, ESSEX.

THIS Caſtle ſtands in the ſouth-eaſt part of the county, and near the ſouth-weſt extremity of the hundred of Rochford; of it, the following account is given by Morant in his Hiſtory of Eſſex.

"THE name ſeems to be derived from the Saxon words, ƿead, *high*, *raiſed*, and leȳ, *paſture*. It hath "borne the name of Hadley ad Caſtrum, or Hadley Caſtle, ever ſince the reign of Henry the Third; "when Hubert de Burgh, earl of Kent, with the king's leave, built a caſtle here; the ruins of it ſtill extant "ſhew its ancient grandeur. It is a little mile ſouth from the church, and about three quarters of a "mile from the road, facing the channel, or Canvey iſland. As it is ſituated at the brow of a ſteep hill, "there is from thence a delightful proſpect acroſs the Thames into Kent. It is built of ſtone, almoſt of "an oval form: the entrance is at the north-weſt corner, between two towers; and there are alſo two "towers at the ſouth-eaſt, and north-eaſt corners, which are embattled, and have loop holes on the ſides. "The walls in the bottom of the towers are nine feet thick, and the reſt five feet; and on the north and "ſouth ſides, the walls are ſtrengthened with buttreſſes. The cement, or mortar, which is almoſt as hard "as the ſtones themſelves, hath in it a mixture of ſhells of ſea-fiſh, &c. At the entrance, the earth lying "very high near the towers, a very deep ditch is cut behind them, which runs along the north ſide of the "caſtle. The ruins are now greatly overgrown with buſhes.

"THERE was a park belonging to this caſtle, or elſe to Hadley-bury, which lies near; and lands were "held by the ſerjeancy of keeping up the fences and lodges of this caſtle, as well as thoſe of Reyle and

HADLEY CASTLE.

" Thunders le Caſtles. As Hadley is not mentioned in Domeſday-book, nor in the Red-book of the " Exchequer, it was moſt probably comprehended in Raley; and then Raley pariſh extended to the Ray, " or water of Hadley.

" THE large park belonging to the honor of Raley, might take up the greateſt part of what is now " Hadley, except the foreſt, and waſte ground that belonged thereto.

" HADLEY going along with the manor and honor of Raley, which belonged to Suene; his grandſon " Henry de Eſſex forfeited both to the crown, through his cowardiſe.

" KING HENRY granted it with Raley, and we preſume as a part of it, to Hubert de Burgh, earl of " Kent, who built the caſtle here. From that time it is mentioned in records as the caſtle and park of " Hadley, and not for a while as a manor.

" UPON HUBERT's diſgrace in 1232, this eſtate was again ſeized by the crown, and granted at " different times to the greateſt perſons. By an inqueſt taken in 1250, of what lands and tenements " appertained to the caſtle of Hadleigh, it was found, that there were belonging to this caſtle 140 acres o " arable ground; and paſture for 180 ſheep; and a water-mill. In 1263, King Henry the Third " committed the government of this caſtle to Richard de Thany. Hugh le Parker, of this pariſh, held " four ſhillings rent here, in 1284, by the ſerjeancy of keeping the park of Haddelegh. In 1299 King " Edward the Firſt aſſigned to his queen Margaret the caſtle, village, and park of Hadlegh, with " appertenances, then valued at thirteen pounds, ſix ſhillings and eight-pence, per annum. In 1327, " Roger de Eſtwyke, and Alice his wife, had twelve acres of land in this pariſh, together with the cuſtody " of the park, of the inheritance of the ſaid Alice; and of the gift of Geffry de Pertico, and Maud his " wife, formerly lords of the caſtle and village of Hadley: which land and cuſtody were holden of the " king, as of the honor of Reyleigh, by the ſervice of keeping the park aforeſaid.

" ALBREY DE VERE, the 10th earl of Oxford, who died the 23d of April, 1400, held for his life, of " the gift of King Richard the Second, the caſtle and manor of Hadlye, with appertenances, and a " water-mill in capite; reverſion of the ſame to the king and his heirs.

" EDMUND PLANTAGENET, duke of York, had the premiſes at the time of his deceaſe, 1ſt of " Auguſt, 1402, but only for life. In 1452, King Henry the Sixth, granted to his uterine brother, " Edmund of Hadham, earl of Richmond, the caſtle, and lordſhip, or manor of Hadley, with all letes, courts, " rents, ſervices, mills, fiſheries, and other appertenances whatſoever. The advowſon of the church, and " a market here on Wedneſday in every week; and the return of all writs, and precepts, and executions on " the ſame.

" AFTER that they remained in the crown, till King Henry the Eighth granted them, in 1539, to the " lady Anne of Cleve, his forſaken queen, for her maintenance.

" IN 1551, King Edward the Sixth, gave the manor and park of Hadleigh ad Caſtrum, and the farm " there, called Hadleigh, with a ſeparate fiſhery, and the advowſon of the church, to Richard Lord Riche, " and his heirs; to hold by the fortieth part of a knight's fee. And in 1553 he got, from the ſame king, the " following marſhes, in this pariſh, Les Fleets, Ruſhhalls, or the Prior's-marſh, and Clerkenwike, or the " Abbot's-marſh; and all other meſſuages, lands, &c. in the tenure of Edward Strangman, to hold in " ſocage. From him they paſſed to his noble deſcendants the earls of Warwick; as Rochford, Raley, Lees " Priory, &c. Upon the partition of the Warwick eſtates between the ſix coheirs, this fell to the ſhare of " Henry St. John, eſq. afterwards a baronet, and viſcount St. John, his eldeſt ſon: Henry Viſcount " Bolingbroke ſold his eſtate to Sir Francis St. John, of Longthorpe, in Northamptonſhire, bart. whoſe " daughter and coheir Mary, brought it in marriage to her huſband Sir John Bernard, of Brampton, in " Huntingdonſhire, bart. He was ſucceeded by his ſon Sir Robert Bernard, bart. knight of the ſhire for the " county of Huntingdon."

This drawing was made in the year 1763.

ST. MARY MAGDALEN's CHURCH, COLCHESTER, ESSEX.

The ſingular ſtile of this Building, its disjointed Porch, the apparent antiquity of a part, and the variety of the materials of the whole, render it altogether a very pictureſque object. This conſideration, more than any hiſtorical importance, has procured its admiſſion into this Work.

It ſtands on the North ſide of Magdalene Green. The little Chancel, built with brick, is more modern than the reſt of the edifice, which is remarkably ſmall. The Weſt end and Turret were damaged by lightning in the year 1739; but have been ſince repaired.

This Chapel is conſidered rather as belonging to the refounded Hoſpital of St. Mary Magdalene, than as a Parochial Church; for, according to Morant, on account of the ſmallneſs and poverty of the Pariſh, here hath been no inſtitution or induction to the Rectory for many years, if ever.

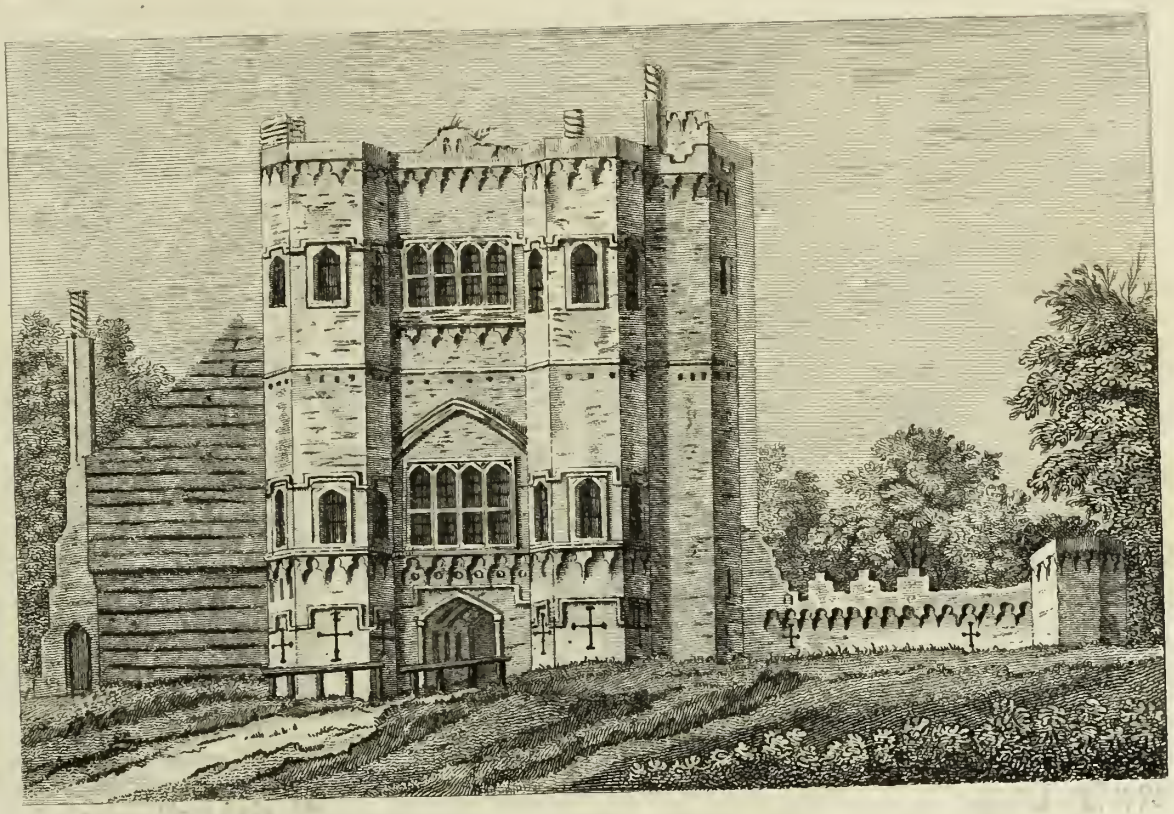
St. MARY MAGDALEN's CHURCH, COLCHESTER.

The ancient Hoſpital before-mentioned, endowed for leprous and other infirm people, was founded at the command of Henry Iſt, by Eudo his ſteward, founder of St. John's Abby, in this Town; the tithes of which were here diſtributed to the poor, in certain daily portions of bread, beer, and meat. The number of Hoſpitals formerly eſtabliſhed for lepers in this Kingdom, and the few inſtances of that complaint at preſent, has induced many learned perſons (not without great reaſon) to ſuppoſe that the diſeaſe heretofore called Leproſy, was no other than the Venereal infection. The maſter of this Hoſpital was ſtiled Prior.

"Upon the general deſtruction of the Hoſpitals in K. Edward VIth's reign, (ſays "Morant) this underwent the common fate. However, it doth not ſeem to have been "immediately granted away; for in the year 1558 it was held by Bonner, Biſhop of "London, in free alms: after that the lands belonging to it were ſquandered away, and "ſome irrecoverably loſt; and the Chapel of the Hoſpital was totally demoliſhed. "Q. Elizabeth, in the year 1565, granted the revenues lately belonging thereto, to "Nicarius Yetſweirt, her Secretary for the French Tongue, and one of the Clerks of the "Signet; but K. James the Firſt, in order to bring it again to pious and charitable uſe, "refounded it, in the year 1610, under the title of the College or Hoſpital of K. James within "the ſuburbs of Colcheſter: reſtoring all the lands, revenues, and poſſeſſions whatever, "ſettled at firſt upon it by the Founder: ordaining, that it ſhould conſiſt of a Maſter, "and five poor perſons, ſingle or unmarried: that the Maſter ſhould have the cure of "ſouls of the Pariſhioners of the Pariſh of St Mary Magdalene in the Town of Colcheſter, "celebrate Divine Service there, faithfully preach the Word of God, and duly adminiſter "the Sacraments either by himſelf or by a ſufficient Miniſter or Curate: and pay each "of the ſaid five poor perſons, fifty-two ſhillings a year, at the four terms of the year, by "equal portions, viz. Thirteen ſhillings a-piece, at the feaſts of the Nativity of Chriſt, the "Annunciation of the Virgin Mary, St. John the Baptiſt, and St. Michael the Archangel: "that they ſhould be placed in for life, and choſen by the Maſter, who hath power to turn "them out for a reaſonable cauſe: that they ſhould be a body corporate, and have a "common ſeal: that the Maſter, with the Attorney and Solicitor General's conſent and "concurrence, might make all proper laws and ordinances for the better regulation and "management of this Hoſpital, and the revenues of the ſame. Finally, the King granted "and confirmed to them all the liberties, franchiſes, immunities, exemptions, privileges, "lands, tenements, and hereditaments whatſoever, which any Maſter and Poor of this "Hoſpital had at any time enjoyed. The Viſitor is the Lord Chancellor, or Lord Keeper "of the Great Seal, who puts in the Maſter."

The preſent Maſter is the Rev. Palmer Smythies, M. A. Rector of St. Michael's, Mile-End.

This View was drawn Anno 1772.



NETHERHALL, ESSEX.

PLATE I.

NETHERHALL, in the pariſh of Roydon, is ſo called from its low ſituation; it ſtands about one mile and an half ſouth or ſouth-weſt of the Town and Church. It was anciently held of the Abbey of Waltham, which purchaſed here of Alexander de Alricheſey, anno 1280, one meſſuage, twenty-three acres arable and five acres of paſture land. The firſt mention of it as a manor is in 1401, when Thomas ſon of John Organ conveyed it to Nicholas Collern and Thomas Prudence. It was afterwards in the family of the Colts, who made it the place of their reſidence, and who therefore were probably the builders of the Houſe. John Archer, of Cooperſale, Eſq. is the preſent proprietor.

IN 1769, when this Drawing was made, there were ſtanding the entire brick Gateway here repreſented; part of the wall, with two ſmall towers at two of its angles, and a part of the houſe then uſed as a farm-houſe, but ſince pulled down.

THIS building contains the Gateway, and two rooms over it: each of theſe rooms occupies the whole ſtory, conſiſting of two half hexagon towers, and the ſpace between them.

ON the firſt ſtory the cieling is wainſcot ſupported by wainſcot arches reſting in front on three ſhields, which are blank ones: the weſternmoſt ſhield is ſupported by

two horſes; the middle one is held by a ſpread eagle, ſupported by a lion and unicorn; the next, ſupported by a lioneſs and bull, is ducally crowned; and the eaſtern end of the front ſupports the arch by a truſs compoſed of a radiant roſe. Theſe arches reſt in the back of the building on four truſſes; the firſt repreſenting a griffin, the ſecond a bear and ragged ſtaff, the third and fourth ſimilar to the firſt.

The room has been wainſcoted to about the height of eight feet; and above the wainſcot, on the plaiſter, are rudely painted, in compartments, the following perſons eminent in fabulous, profane, and ſacred Hiſtory, whoſe names are thus barbarouſly ſpelled:

In the eaſtern bow, Herculus. Georg. for Ing. In the weſtern bow, Godfery of Bulen, Charl the Great, and one figure now eraſed.

On the weſt wall, over a window, a black figure blowing bubbles, dividing this ſentence, Time tarrieth for no man. Hector. On the north wall David, between two figures now eraſed. On the eaſt wall Julious Seaſer and Judas Maccabeus.

The meaſure of the room, within the walls, is from weſt to eaſt about 27 feet; from north to ſouth between the towers or bows 16 feet; to the extremity of the towers about 23½ feet. On the left corner of the chimney is a Colt's head in an ornament of the carving.

The wretched ſpelling and more wretched figures were probably the efforts of ſome village glazier-painter, who had been uſed to raiſe ruſtic devotion by ſmearing church-walls with the figures of Moſes and Aaron, employed, in all likelihood, by ſome equally taſteleſs owner of this beautiful piece of brick-work, at ſome period about the laſt century.

Between the drops under the trefoil ornament above the Gateway are ſmall ſhields with a fleur de lis, and below them have been two large ſhields.

The whole building, and a ſpace of ground walled in, was ſurrounded by a moat, which moat appears to have had another wall without it, part of which was ſtanding in 1769. This Gate was intended to have been pulled down with the houſe, but, like ſome other ancient buildings, was ſaved by the ſtrength of its brick-work, which rendered its deſtruction too expenſive.

Under the window over the Gate, is a machicolation, and the place where a portcullis has been, may yet be ſeen.

NETHERHALL, ESSEX.

PLATE II.

This View was drawn, anno 1772, juſt before the demolition of that part of the manſion converted to a farm-houſe. It gives a back view of that houſe, which in Plate I. is ſeen adjoining; and alſo ſhews the moat, and one of the towers at the angles of the wall, which is covered with thatch, and in common with the walls venerably mantled with ivy.

In Holy Croſs, or Weſtgate Church, Canterbury, there is the following memorial of one Robert Colt, a common brewer, probably belonging to this family, his coat armorial being 3 horſes or colts.

" Hic Jacet Robertus Colt, quondam Pandoxator iſtius villæ, qui obiit 6 die Decemb. Anno. Dom. 1444. & Deoniſia uxor ejus, quae obiit——quorum animabus, &c. &c."

June 1st 1774. S. Hooper Ex. Sparrow. Sculp

THE ABBEY OF STRATFORD LANGTHORNE, OR AT BOGH, IN THE PARISH OF WESTHAM, ESSEX.

Of this abbey there are ſcarce any remains, except the building here ſhewn, which appears to have been the gate-way leading to the monaſtery, and a ſmall ruined ſtone arch. This gate is built with brick.

The ſite and remains of this once conſiderable monaſtery, are about half a mile ſouth ſouth-weſt of the church.

It was founded either in the year 1134 or 1135, by William de Montfichet, for monks of the Ciſtertian order, and dedicated to the Virgin Mary, and all ſaints.

He endowed it with all his lordſhip here, as juſt mentioned, under the manor of Weſtham; and alſo with eleven acres of meadow, and two mills: and his wood of Bocherſt, in Woodford, and the tithe of his panage. The demeſnes of the abbey in this pariſh, comprehended near 1500 acres; and amongſt them was Sudbury, given them by K. John. The manors of Weſt-ham, Wood Grange, Eaſt Weſt-ham, and Playz, were theirs. They had alſo the manors of Eaſt-ham; of Beringer's, and Rye-houſe, in little Ilford and Berking; of Low Leyton; of Bamſted in Aveley and Upminſter; of Great Burghſted, Challeweden, Whites and Gurneys; of Buckurns, in Butterſbury; of Cowbridge, in Mounteneys-ing; of Calircots or Caldircots, in South Weald; of Brygginge, in Chaldwell; and two tenements, called Oſe and Warrewyke, in Coringham, Clerkenwyke, or the Abbots Marſh in Hadleigh Caſtle; Grangewyke Marſh, in Little Thurrock; lands in Chigwell, Eaſt and Weſt Tilbury, &c.; the advowſon of little Ilford rectory; the rectory of Eaſt-ham; the rectories and advowſons of the vicarages of Weſt-ham, of Great Burghſted, of Layton, and of Great Mapleſted, in this county; ſome houſes in Clement's-Lane, and elſewhere in London: the manor of Lewiſham, and a meſſuage and lands at Woolwich, in Kent. In the foreſt of Melkeſham, in Wiltſhire, 472 acres ——; common paſture in Warſted; free warren in moſt of the

pariſhes abovementioned, and in Woodford, Dunton, Eaſt Horndon, &c.; a market and two fairs in Bellerica; paſture for 800 ſheep, and liberties in Windſor Foreſt.

This houſe being ſituated low amongſt the marſhes, was liable at firſt to frequent inundations, ſo that the monks were obliged to remove to a cell of theirs at Great Burghſted; where they continued till K. Richard, the Second, we ſuppoſe, cauſed their damages to be repaired, and brought them back to Stratford.

The abbot had ſummons to parliament in 1307. At the ſuppreſſion, this abbey was valued at 511l. 16s. 3d. per ann. according to Dugdale, and at 573l. 15s. 6d. ob. 9. according to Speed. To whom the ſeveral revenues belonging to it were granted, is ſhewn under the reſpective pariſhes where they lay.

As to the abbey itſelf, K. Henry 8th, in 1538, gave the houſe and ſite of this monaſtery, with the church, belfrey, and church-yard, and ſeveral parcels of ground thereto belonging, and Richard's chapel, now unknown, to Peter Mewtas, or Meautis, Eſq; and Joane his wife, and their heirs male. This Peter's grandfather, was John Meautis, a native of Normandy, who came into England with K. Henry 7th, and was made by him his ſecretary for the French tongue. Thomas Meautis his ſon and heir had, by Elizabeth his wife, daughter of —— Foxley, of Northamptonſhire, Peter Meautis, of Weſtham, Eſq; juſt now mentioned: he was embaſſador from K. Henry 8th to the court of France, and knighted. At the time of his death, which happened at Dieppe, 8th September, 1562, he held the houſe and ſite of this monaſtery, ten meſſuages, ten toſts, four water mills, ten gardens, 300 acres of arable, 200 acres of meadow, 100 of paſture, 50 of wood, 300 of marſh, 40 called red ground, wet ground and ozier hopps, one fiſhery from the mouth of the river Lee, and 40s. rent. Part of the wall, which keeps out the Thames, is ſtill called Meautys his wall. He left two ſons, Henry and Hercules, and one daughter, Frances, wife of Henry Howard, viſcount Bindon. Hercules, the ſecond ſon, married Philippa, daughter of Richard Cook of Gidding-hall, Eſq; by whom he had Thomas; Frances, wife of —— Shute; and Jane, married, firſt, to William Cornwallis, anceſtor of the preſent Earl Cornwallis, afterwards to Sir Nathaniel Bacon, of Culford, K. B. Thomas, the ſon, afterwards knighted, was ſecretary to Francis Bacon, Lord Verulam, and ſeated at Gorhambury. He married Anne, eldeſt daughter of Sir Nathaniel Bacon, juſt now mentioned, remarried to Sir Harbottle Grimſtone, Bart.

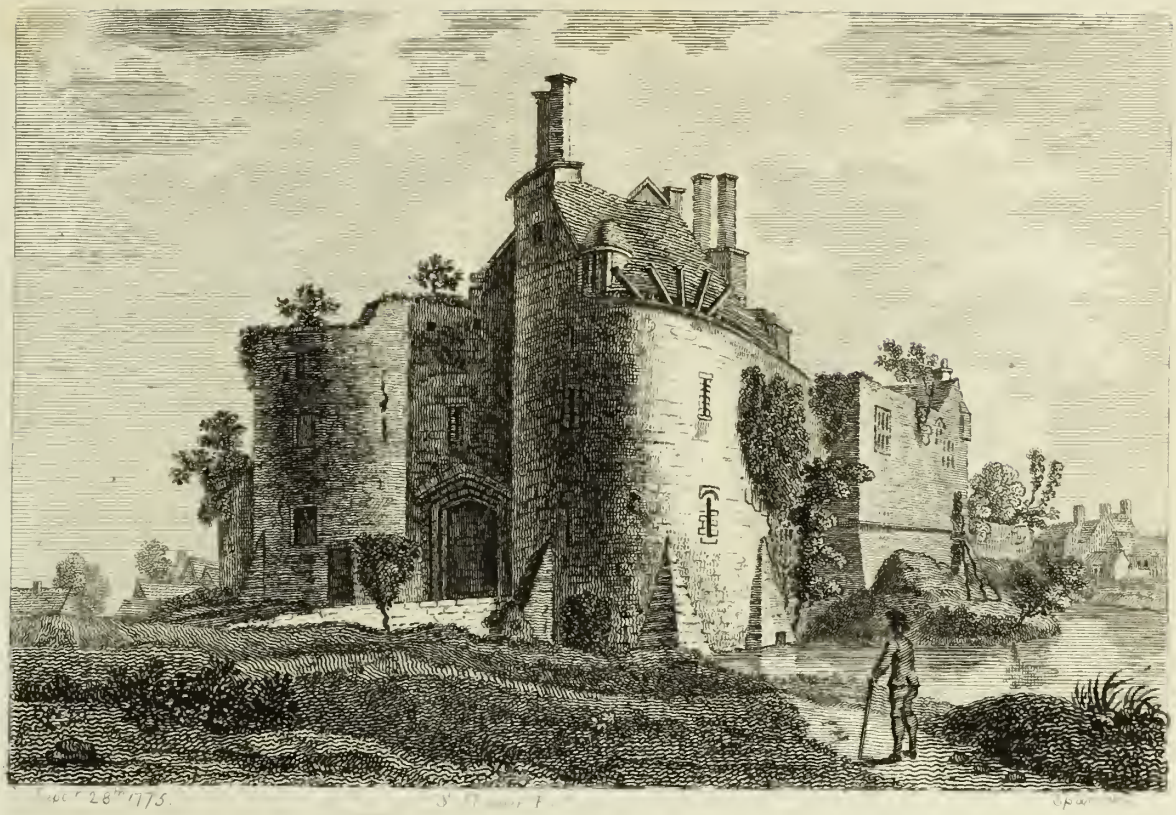
Henry Meautis, Eſq; of Weſt Ham, the elder brother of Hercules, married Anne, daughter of John Jermy, of Suffolk, Eſq; and had by her Thomas, Henry, Peter, and Margaret. Thomas, the eldeſt ſon, by Elizabeth his wife, daughter of Sir Henry Coningſby, of North-Mims, had five ſons, and three daughters. Henry Meautis, Eſq; the eldeſt ſon, married Elizabeth, daughter of Sir William Glover, and had by her Henry and Anne.

Either this laſt Henry, or his father, ſold the ſite of the abbey, with appurtenances, to John Nutts, Eſq. It belonged afterwards to Peter Knight, Eſq; and now to —— Newman Knight, and others, being divided among ſeveral proprietors.

Some of the conſiderable privileges belonging to the abbey were obtained, or purchaſed, by Sir Thomas Cambell, of Clay-hill, in Berking. His deſcendant, Sir Harry Cambell, procured a confirmation of them by an inſpecimus of K. Will. and Q. Mary, 15 Nov. 1689, by which he was to enjoy the ſame liberties, cuſtoms, franchiſes, profits, emoluments, &c. as any abbot of Stratford Langhorn at any time enjoyed; namely, to take in Windſor Foreſt, thorns, or bruſh-wood, where moſt convenient, and as much as would be neceſſary for the uſe of their houſe: to cut down, and carry away, wood or timber out of their woods in the foreſt of Eſſex; paſture for 800 ſheep, reckoning by the great hundred, between the Frith, or Wood-Grange, and Walthamſtow: to enjoy the Grange, or manor of Wood-Grange, with all its rights and members; 60 acres of wood, and underwood, belonging to that Grange; and ten acres in Higham's Mead; all the tythes of grain and hay in Stratford Langthorn, belonging to the rectory of Weſtham; together with the tythes of Chobhams, free warren in Weſt Ham, and common of paſture in the waſtes of all commonable places within the foreſt, for all commonable beaſts, except in the fence month; and to cut down pollard trees. Sir Harry Cambell dying in 1699, was ſucceeded in the manor of Wood-Grange, and his other eſtates, by his only daughter, whoſe ſon ſold it to Mr. Pickering, father of Miſs Pickering, late proprietor thereof.

This abbey was bound to maintain the bridge at Bowe, ſaid to be the firſt arched ſtone bridge in this county, and thence named; though perhaps it might derive its appellation from the word Beau, or Handſome, an epithet very likely to be given to it in thoſe times.

This view was drawn anno 1758.



ST. BRIAVEL's CASTLE, GLOUCESTERHIRE.

" THIS Pariſh (ſays Sir Robert Atkyns, in his Hiſtory of Glouceſterſhire) lies in the " Hundred of St. Briavel's, to which it gives name, five miles diſtant north from Chep- " ſtow, in Monmouthſhire, three miles ſouth from Colford, and eighteen miles weſt from " Gloceſter." Here it may be neceſſary to acquaint the Reader, that Sir Richard eſtimates theſe diſtances by computed miles, every one of which meaſures at leaſt a Statute mile and a half.

" THE place (continues he) was anciently called Brulais, and was reputed to be a part " of the Pariſh of Newland. A Market was granted to this place, 9th John.

" THIS Caſtle is extra parochial, and has been formerly of great account; and the ruins " ſhew it to be ſtrong, and of a large extent. It was built by Miles Earl of Hereford, in " the reign of K. Hen. I. It is remarkable for the death of Mahel, third ſon of the Earl, " and younger brother to Roger and Walter, ſucceſſively Earls of Hereford. This Mahel " was cruel and covetous; and being entertained here by Walter de Clifford, and a fire hap- " pening in the Caſtle, a ſtone fell from an high tower on his head, and killed him in the " place. A daughter of this Mahel was married to Herbert, who, in right of his wife, was " Lord of Dean, and progenitor to the preſent Herberts, Earls of Pembroke and Montgomery.

" THE Cuſtody of St. Briavel's Caſtle, with the Foreſt of Dean, was granted to John de " Monemouth, 18 John.

" THE Tenants of this Manor were admitted to their eſtates by the Conſtable of the " Caſtle, until it was ordered, 2d Hen. III. that the Tenants for the future ſhould not be " admitted until they had compounded for their fines with the King.

" IN the 45th Henry III. John Giffard was made Governor of St. Briavel's Caſtle, and " Warden of the Foreſt of Dean; 47 Henry III. Walter Wither held St. Briavel's;

" 54th Henry III. Thomas, brother to Gilbert the Red Earl of Glouceſter, was made " Governor of St. Briavel's Caſtle, by Simon Montfort, Earl of Leiceſter, after the battle " gained over King Henry III. at Lewes.

" JOHN de Bottourt deſcended from Anſfrid de Bottourt, who lived 2d Henry II. was " made Governor of St. Briavel's Caſtle, and Warden of Dean Foreſt, 19th of Edw. I. He was " ſoon diſplaced, but put in again, 1ſt Edw. II. Thomas de Everty held the Caſtle of St. " Briavel's, 21ſt Edw. I.; Ralph de Abbenhall held St. Briavel's Caſtle, 29 Edw. I.

" ALMARICK de St. Amand was Governor of St. Briavel's Caſtle, Warden of Dean Foreſt, " Governor of Hereford Caſtle, and High Sheriff of the County, in the reign of King Edw. I.

" WILLIAM de Staure held the Caſtle of St. Briavel's, and one meſſuage and twelve " acres of land, 2 Edw. II. There was a grant of Fairs and Markets in this Town the " ſame year. Hugh le Diſpenſer the elder was made Governor of St. Briavel's, and of the " Foreſt of Dean, 15th Edw. II. William de Staure held St. Briavel's, 17 Edw. II.

" JOHN de Nivers was made Governor of this Caſtle, and Warden of the Foreſt of " Dean, to hold at pleaſure, and in as full a manner as John Wiſham or Robert Sapy " held the ſame, 18th Edw. II. Robert de Aure held St. Briavel's, 19th Edw. II. Roger " Clifford was Governor of this Caſtle, and had fifty-five marks yearly allowed him out of " the Exchequer, and all ſucceeding Governors were to have feeding, houſe-boot, and " hay-boot out of the Foreſt of Dean, 14 Edw. III.

" THE Caſtle of St. Briavel's was granted to Thomas Duke of Cornwall, 14th Rich. II. " King Henry IV. ſettled it and the Town on John Duke of Bedford, his third ſon, " 1ſt Hen. IV. who died ſeiſed thereof, 14th Henry VI. Henry de Aure was ſeiſed of " St. Briavel's, 3d Henry IV. William Warren was ſeiſed of lands in St. Briavel's, and " of a Bailiwick in the Foreſt of Dean, 7th Henry V.

" RICHARD Nevil, Earl of Warwick, and Anne his wife, were ſeiſed of St. Briavel's " Manor and Caſtle, and levied a fine of them to the uſe of themſelves, in tail, the remainder " to the right heirs of Richard Beauchamp, late Earl of Warwick, 6th Edw. IV. The " ſame Counteſs did afterwards levy a fine of the Manor and Caſtle to the uſe of King " Henry VII. and in the 3d year of his reign.

" THE Manor of St. Briavel's was in the Crown in the year 1608. The Conſtablewick " of the Caſtle of St. Briavel's was granted to Henry Lord Herbert of Ragland, for life, " with a fee of 40 *l.* a year, 1660.

" THE Duke of Beaufort is the preſent Lord of the Manor, and hath a Court of " Attachment. The Caſtle ſerves now only as a priſon for offenders in the Foreſt, and " of Debtors within the Hundred." Thus far Sir Robert Atkyns.

FROM the Deſcription of this Caſtle given by Camden, it appears it was even in his time " more than half demoliſhed;" and, probably, not having been repaired ſince, or at leaſt only partially, it has gradually lapſed to its preſent ſtate. The Front ſeen in this View ſtill ſerves for a priſon; but will in a few years be habitable only by Owls and Jackdaws. About a year ago a lofty tower on the ſouth-ſide fell down into the ditch by which the Caſtle is ſurrounded. The Earl of Berkeley is the preſent Conſtable. The antient ſalary was 9l. 8s. 1 d. per ann.

This View, which repreſents the North-weſt Aſpect, was drawn Anno 1775.

LANTHONY PRIORY, GLOUCESTERSHIRE.

PLATE I.

This Priory ſtands about half a mile S. Weſt of Glouceſter; the ſtory of its foundation is in ſubſtance thus related:

In a deep and ſolitary Valley, near the River Hodney, in Monmouthſhire, encompaſſed with rocks, which almoſt exclude the light of the mid-day ſun, St. David built a ſmall Chapel and Cell, and there led the life of a Hermit for many years; the place ſtill bears his name; Landeuvi Nanthotheni, the Welch name of that ſpot, ſignifying the Church of St. David on the River Hotheni.

After his death this Cell remained for ſome time unoccupied, 'till an Engliſh Prince, (for ſo the Legend calls him) Hugh de Lacy, and his attendants, having loſt their way, or rather, as the ſtory ſays, led by Providence, came into this Valley. One of his Knights, named William, being much fatigued, laid himſelf down to reſt a-while, and ſurveying the ſolemn objects around him, and the deſerted Chapel, conceived the deſign of becoming a Hermit, incited thereto by a divine impulſe. This reſolution he began immediately to put in execution; and taking leave of his comrades, he laid aſide his gay clothes, and put on a hair-ſhirt, and over it his armour, which he conſtantly wore till it was conſumed by ruſt and age, in order the more to mortify his body. Here he long remained in prayer and contemplation, ſuffering great hardſhips, practiſing many auſterities, and reſiſting the attacks of Satan, who aſſailed him in divers ways; among others, by frequent laſcivious viſions in the night: During this reſidence, he almoſt miraculouſly acquired ſufficient learning for Holy Orders, and was accordingly ordained a Prieſt.

The fame of his extraordinary ſanctity being noiſed far abroad, and reaching the ears of one Erneſi, who had formerly been a Hermit, but was then Chaplain to Maude, Queen of Henry the Firſt, a man of great power and learning, this Erneſi reſolved to pay a viſit to William; and on an interview, was ſo ſtruck with his piety, and the awful ſolitude of the place, that he became his aſſociate: This happened Anno 1103.

LANTHONY PRIORY, GLOUCESTERSHIRE, Plate I.

HERE theſe two holy Men built a ſmall homely Church, which was conſecrated by Urban, Biſhop of the Dioceſe, and alſo in the year 1108, by Rameline, Biſhop of Hereford; it was dedicated to St. John the Baptiſt, whoſe reſidence in the Wilderneſs made him a proper patron for Hermits. They were aſſiſted and patronized by Hugh de Lacy, who would have beſtowed on them many valuable donations, but they reſolutely refuſed any more than what was barely ſufficient for their immediate ſubſiſtence.

AT length it came into the mind of Erneſi, that it would be conducive to the good of Religion, if they were multiplied into a Convent. William at firſt did not readily come into this propoſal; but being influenced by the counſel of many reſpectable perſons, and the approbation of Anſelm, Archbiſhop of Canterbury, he at length concurred: They next conſulted what Order they ſhould make choice of, and, after mature conſideration, pitched on that of Regular Canons of St. Auguſtine.

THESE preliminaries being ſettled, they invited religious men from the Convents of Merton and St. Trinity, in and near London, and alſo from That at Colcheſter; and being increaſed to the number of forty and more, they applied to the Biſhop, to confirm the choice they had made of Erneſi for their Prior, which he accordingly did; and that Prior by the meekneſs of his carriage, and the exactneſs of his diſcipline, not only gained the love of his Canons, but ſo raiſed the reputation of his Monaſtery, that King Henry the Firſt and his Queen, Hugh de Lacy, and other great Barons, became protectors and benefactors to their Houſe; eſteeming themſelves peculiarly happy to be entitled to the prayers of this Holy Society. Hence they ſoon obtained large poſſeſſions, and might have had many more, but that they poſitively refuſed to receive many rich benefactions that were offered to them; ſaying, they rather choſe to live poor in the Houſe of God.

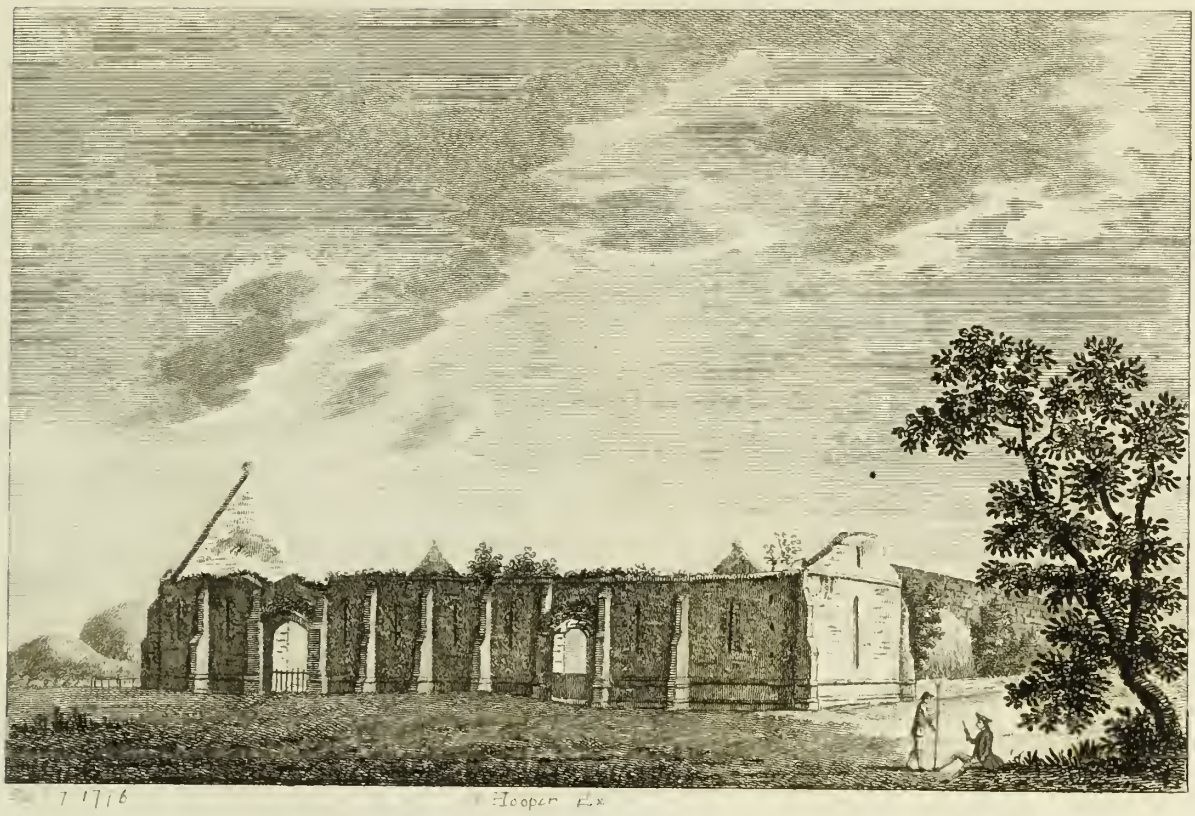
A SINGULAR inſtance is related of this ſelf-denying ſpirit: The Queen, deſirous of beſtowing a gift on the Convent, requeſted of William, that he would let her put her hand into his boſom; he with great modeſty ſubmitted to her requeſt, when ſhe, by that means, dropped a purſe of gold between his coarſe hair-ſhirt and iron boddice: This, however, he would not accept of, but only permitted her to beſtow ſome ornaments on the Church. About this time Walter, Conſtable and chief Captain of the King's Guards, became a Canon in this Houſe. Erneſi, the firſt Prior, dying, Robert de Retun or Betun was elected in his place, and afterwards, Anno 1131, conſecrated Biſhop of Hereford. Robert de Braci ſucceeded to the office of Prior.

SOON after the death of Henry the Firſt, this Priory began to taſte of the cup of adverſity. They were frequently plundered by the Welch, who took even their proviſion; and the troubles in England prevented their being properly protected from thence. Among other misfortunes, a number of women, belonging to the family of a Welchman, who had fled to that Monaſtery for ſafety from his enemies, took poſſeſſion of their refectory, and by their light and wanton behaviour cauſed great offence and ſcandal to them. Under theſe difficulties, they applied to the Biſhop of Hereford (their former Prior) for his advice; and he greatly compaſſionating their caſe, invited them to take refuge in his houſe at Hereford; which houſe and offices, together with a proper revenue for their maintainance, he aſſigned to them: ſome, however, of the Brethren ſtill continued at Lanthony, refuſing to leave the place of their converſion and profeſſion.

HERE they continued two years; but ſeeing no appearance of better times, new broils ariſing every day in the nation, the Biſhop applied to Milo, the Conſtable, Earl of Hereford, and acquainting him of the ſituation theſe Canons were in, and reminding him of the affection his father bore them, and of his being buried in their Monaſtery; that nobleman beſtowed on them a certain place near Glouceſter, then called Hyde, where they, with the money they had ſaved from Lanthony, and with farther ſupplies from the Biſhop, erected the Church and Monaſtery, the remains of which are here ſhewn. It was conſecrated in the year 1136, by Simon, Biſhop of Worceſter, and Robert, Biſhop of Hereford, and dedicated to the honour of the Bleſſed Virgin, Mother of God. Hither were then removed the Convent from Hereford.

THIS View ſhews the grand Entrance of the Monaſtery, which, when entire, probably conſiſted of a large Gate and two Poſterns. Only one of the latter now remains; over it are three Coats of Arms: Firſt; under a Crown, the Arms of England: Second; on the left a Bend, cottiſed between Six Lions; and on the right a Saltire between three Birds. The Royal Arms, placed in the center, are conſiderably larger than the other two.

This View was drawn Anno 1775.



LANTHONY PRIORY, GLOUCESTERSHIRE.

PLATE II.

In the former account we left the Canons in poſſeſſion of this Houſe, which, at firſt, they intended to conſider only as a temporary reſidence, reſolving to return to their former abode as ſoon as peace was reſtored, and they could with ſafety do it. They, however, had engaged to Milo, always to leave thirteen diſcreet and reputable Canons to perform Divine ſervice at this their new Monaſtery, which after their firſt was alſo named Lanthony; but when the ſtorm was over, and tranquility reſtored, it being propoſed by their Prior that they ſhould return to Wales, moſt of them ſhewed their diſlike to it, having experienced the convenience and ſafety of their preſent habitation.—Some of them openly refuſed, ſaying, that the Monaſtery of St. John the Baptiſt was not a fit place for reaſonable creatures; and declaring, they ſhould be glad every ſtone in the Building was a ſtout hare; and others wiſhing the Church, and all its Offices, at the bottom of the ſea; and jokingly aſking, whether they ſhould ſing to the wolves, and whether thoſe animals liked loud muſic, with many other equally improper ſpeeches. And although Robert Biſhop of Hereford had procured the Popes Eugenius and Lucius to declare St. John's the parent or ſuperior Monaſtery, and St. Mary's at Glouceſter only a Cell dependent thereon; yet, nevertheleſs, the Canons of the latter took the lead in all things, ſtripping the former of all its ornaments, and even its bells; and ſending to them only the weak and ſuperannuated perſons, or ſuch as were diſagreeable to them; at the ſame time ſuffering them to want even food and raiment, their daily fare being very frequently only bread and water; whilſt at Glouceſter there was a great plenty of not only the neceſſaries, but conveniencies of life.

Robert Bracy dying, was buried in the Conventual Church. He was ſucceeded by William Wycomb, who, attempting to reſtore the ancient diſcipline, was ſo perſecuted by the rebellious Canons, ſupported by Roger Earl of Hereford, that he reſigned his office, and Clement, then Sub-Prior, was elected in his place. He being no leſs pious than his Predeceſſor, and having more courage and perſeverance, reformed moſt of the abuſes, and obliged the whole Monaſtery, except thirteen left at Glouceſter, to reſide with him ſome time every year, at the Mother Church at Lanthony, in Wales; but, at length, not being able to keep them any longer to this cuſtom, uſed frequently to ſay, We ſhall all go to Hell on account of St. John the Baptiſt.

LANTHONY PRIORY, GLOUCESTERSHIRE, Plate II.

THE deeds of benefaction to this houſe were confirmed by King John, who alſo confirmed the ſuperiority of the Monaſtery of St. John the Baptiſt over this of St. Mary's; but in the 21ſt year of the reign of K. Edward IV. they were united, and the former regulation reſpecting ſuperiority changed; the Priory of St. Mary's being declared the principal, and that of St. John the Baptiſt the dependent Cell, wherein the Canons of Glouceſter were obliged to maintain a Reſidentiary Prior and four Canons to ſay maſſes, which Prior was removeable at pleaſure. The reaſon aſſigned for this regulation was the miſbehaviour of the Prior of the firſt Lanthony.

AT the Diſſolution, this Houſe was endowed with 748l. 19s. 11d. ob. per annum.

THE ſite of the Monaſtery and lands adjoining were granted in the 38th of Henry VIIIth. by that King, to Sir Arthur Porter, whoſe only daughter marrying to Sir John Scudamore, this eſtate came into that Family, and James Lord Viſcount Scudamore of Ham Lacy, in Herefordſhire, was late proprietor thereof.

THE following Catalogue of its Priors, is given by Browne Willis, from Wharton's Anglia Sacra, Vol. II. p. 321, and 322, and other collections.

ERNISIUS was made the firſt Prior of Lanthony in Monmouthſhire, an. 1180. The ſecond was

ROB. DE BETUN, an. 1131; on whoſe promotion to the Biſhoprick of Hereford, an. 1131,

ROB. DE BRACI ſucceeded; who removing this Convent, an. 1134, built a Church at a place near Glouceſter, and called it Lanthony. His ſucceſſors were,

WILL. DE WYCOMBE; he occurs an. 1137, in the time of K. Stephen; as does

CLEMENT, in the time of Henry II.; after him

ROGER DE NORWICH preſided here, in the year 1178; whoſe ſucceſſor,

GEFFRY DE HENELAWE, being an. 1203, preferred to the See of St. David's,

MATTHEW was elected to this dignity; who being made Abbot of Bardeney, co. Lincoln, an. 1214, was, I judge, ſucceeded by

JOHN. He occurs Prior an. 1218; and was on his deceaſe, which happened an. 1240, ſucceeded by

GODFREY; on whoſe reſignation, an. 1251,

EVERARD was elected Prior; after whom I meet with

MARTIN; and then

ROGER DE GODESTRE; and after him

WALTER, in the year 1285; and

JOHN DE CHAUNDOS, an. 1289, to whom, as I judge, ſucceeded

STEPHEN; and to him

PHILIP, called by ſome PETER; and then

DAVID, whoſe ſucceſſor is ſaid to be

THOMAS DE GLOUCESTER; he reſigned this office an. 1301, and had for his ſucceſſor one

JOHN. He occurs an. 1310, 4 Edw. II. Who his ſucceſſors were I find not; but after him I find mention made of

SIMON BROCWORTHE,

EDWARD ST. JOHN, and

WILL. CHARITONS, being Priors here; but when they lived, my Authors are ſilent; and all I know is, that one William, whom I take to be William Chariton, was Prior here, an. 1358 After him I find another

WILLIAM, furnamed DE PENBURY, enjoyed this office. The next that occurs is

THO. ELINHAM; he preſided an. 1415; but how long after, I know not, nor the inſtitution of

HENRY DEAN; who preſided here temp. Edward IV. and was firſt made Biſhop of Bangor, and afterwards, an. 1502, Archbiſhop of Canterbury. The next I find is

EDMUND FOREST. He governed, as A. Wood ſays, an. 1513; and had for his ſucceſſor, as I preſume,

RICHARD HEMPSTED, whom A. Wood alſo calls HART, an. 1534. He, with William Nottingham, and twenty-one others, ſubſcribed to the King's ſupremacy, Sept. 2, and afterwards ſigned the ſurrender, May 10, 1539, with the like number of Monks, viz. 21. He obtained a penſion of 100l. per annum.

AN. 1553 here remained 20l. 6s. 8d. in annuities, and the following penſions, viz. to Will. Henlowe, John Ambros, David Matthew, alias Kempe, 8l. each; John Kellom, Will. Worceſter, George Dean, Richard Weſtbury, Will. Abington, Will. Barrington, 6l. each; John Hempeſted, Maurice Berkley, Will. Byford, Will. Preſbury, 4l. each.

THE remains of this Priory are very extenſive; they are now converted into a Farm-Houſe, with its offices; many of them are partly built with ſtone, and partly with timber, lath, and plaiſter. Here are alſo divers brick buildings.

THE building here delineated is vulgarly called The Church; but certainly was nothing more than a Barn or Store-houſe, it being lighted and aired by chinks, inſtead of windows; beſides, its ſize and plainneſs ill ſuit the Church of ſo rich an Abbey, where, doubtleſs, all the decorations of the ſtile of architecture then in faſhion would have been employed. The inſide of this, as well as of the Gate, is of brick.

This View was drawn Anno 1775.

28 Sept 1772

Sparrow, fc.

THORNBURY CASTLE, GLOUCESTERSHIRE.

This caſtle ſtands in the hundred and manor of Thornbury, from which it takes its name. Leland, treating of it in his Itinerary, ſays, "Edward, late duke of Bukkyngham, likynge the ſoyle aboute, and the ſite of the howſe, "pullyd downe a greate parte of the olde howſe, and ſette up magnificently in good ſquared ſtone the ſouthe ſyde "of it, and accompliſhyd the weſt parte alſo withe a right comely Gate-howſe to the firſt ſoyle; and ſo it ſtondithe "yet, with a roſe forced for a tyme. This inſcription on the fronte of the Gate-howſe: This Gate was begon in "the yere of owr Lorde God 1511. the 2 yere of the reigne of Kynge Henry the viii. by me Edward, duke of "Bukkyngham, erle of Hereford, Staforde and Northampton." He likewiſe made a fine park near the caſtle; for which purpoſe, he encloſed a conſiderable tract of rich corn land. (Atkins ſays, he had licence from Henry the Seventh to impark a thouſand acres.) This, according to Leland, drew on him the curſes of the neighbourhood. He alſo propoſed to have brought up to the caſtle a ſmall branch of the Severn, which flowed into the park. He did not, however, live either to perform this, or to finiſh his building, being behcaded anno 1522; and his eſtates then eſcheating to the crown, it was never completed. Hiſtorians ſeem, in ſome meaſure, to attribute his fall to the effects of a ridiculous quarrel he had with Cardinal Wolſey on the following occaſion. The duke, one day after dinner, according to the accuſtomed ceremonial, being on his knees, holding a baſon of water to the king, who had juſt finiſhed waſhing, and turned away, the cardinal, before the duke could alter his poſture, ſportingly dipped in his hand; which ſo offended the haughty Buckingham, that riſing in a rage, he threw the water into Wolſey's ſhoes. He, in his turn, being greatly incenſed, threatened him that he would ſit on his ſkirts. On the morrow the duke came to court without ſkirts to his doublet; the king demanding the reaſon thereof, Buckingham related the cardinal's menace, and ſaid he had taken this method to prevent his putting it in execution.

The following is a deſcription of its ſtate, as found by a jury at a court of ſurvey for the caſtle and manor, upon the 6th, 7th, 8th and 9th days of March, in the fifth year of the reign of queen Elizabeth, in the year 1582: it is printed in the laſt edition of Leland's Collectanea, from a manuſcript in the poſſeſſion of Thomas Aſtle, eſq.

"The houſe or caſtle of Thornbury, containing theſe rooms following: viz. The houſe or caſtle of Thornbury "aforeſaid is ſtanding, and being within two miles of the river Seaverne, which runneth on the north ſide thereof, "and is bounded and adjoined unto the church-yard of the pariſh-church of Thornbury aforeſaid on the ſouth part; "the park, there called New Park, on the north and eaſt part; and one ſmall parcel of ground, called the Petties, on "the weſt part. At the firſt entry towards the ſaid caſtle is a fair baſe court; containing by eſtimation, two acres and "an half, compoſed about with buildings of ſtone for ſervants' lodging, to the height of fourteen or fifteen feet, left "unfiniſhed, without timber or covering, ſet forth with windows of free ſtone, ſome having bars of iron in them, and "ſome none. At the entry into the caſtle (being on the weſt ſide of the ſame) are two gates, a large and a leſſer, with "a wyck-gate; on the left hand thereof is a porter's lodge, containing three rooms, with a dungeon underneath the

" ſame for a place of impriſonment; next adjoining unto the ſame is a fair room, called the duke's wardropp, with " a chimney therein; within the ſame is a fair room or lodging chamber, with a cellar or vault underneath the ſame; " over all which are four lodging chambers with chimneys; on the right hand of the ſaid gates are two fair rooms, " called the dutcheſs's wardropp, and over them are two fair chambers, called the ſteward's chambers; within all " which is a court quadrant, paved with ſtone, containing by eſtimation half an acre, encompaſſed with the caſtle " building, and leading from the gates aforeſaid to the great hall, at the entry whereof is a porch, and on the right " hand of a ſmall room called the . On the left, or north ſide of the ſame court, is one fair wet larder, " a dry larder, a privy, bake-houſe and a boyling houſe, with an entry leading from all the ſame rooms of office to " the great kitchen, over all which are five chambers for ordinary lodging, and over the ſame again, is one long " room called the cock-loft; the great kitchen having two fair large flues or chimneys and one leſſer chimney, and " within the ſame kitchen is a privy kitchen, over which is a lodging-chamber for cooks. On the back ſide of " which laſt recited building are certain decayed buildings, ſometimes uſed for a back-houſe and armery, with " certain decayed lodgings over the ſame: from the great kitchen (leading to the great hall) an entry; on the one " ſide whereof is a decayed room called the ſcullery, with a large flue or chimney therein, and a pantry to the ſame " adjoining: on the other ſide of the entry are two old decayed rooms, heretofore uſed for ſellors; on the back ſide " whereof is a little court adjoining to the ſaid kitchen, and in the ſame, is a fair well, or pump for water, partly " decayed; between which decayed cellars, and the lower end of the ſaid hall is a buttery; over all which laſt recited " rooms are four chambers called the Earl of Stafford's Lodging, partly decayed, with one room called the Clerk's " Treaſury, thereunto adjoining: from the lower end of the great hall is an entry leading to the chapel, at the corner " of the end of which entry is a ſellor; the utter part of the chapel is a fair room for people to ſtand in at ſervice-" time, and over the ſame, are two rooms or petitions, with each of them a chimney, where the duke and dutcheſs " uſed to ſit and hear ſervice in the chappell: the body of the chappell itſelf fair built, having 22 ſettles of wainſcote " about the ſame, for prieſts, clerks and quariſters: the great hall fair and large, with a hearth to make fire on in " the midſt thereof. Adjoyning to the upper end of the ſame hall, is one other room called the old hall, with a " chimney in the ſame: next adjoining to the ſame, is a fair cloyſter or walk, paved with brick paving, leading " from the dutcheſs's lodging to the privy-garden; which garden is four ſquare, containing about the third part of one " acre, three ſquares whereof are compaſſed about with a fair cloyſter or walk, paved with brick paving, and the fourth " ſquare bounded with the principal parts of the caſtle, called the new building; over all which laſt recited cloyſter " is a fair large gallery; and out of the ſame gallery goeth one other gallery, leading to the pariſh church of Thornbury " aforeſaid; at the end whereof is a fair room, with a chimney and a window into the ſaid church, where the duke " ſometimes uſed to hear ſervice in the ſame church. Near adjoining unto the ſaid large gallery are certain rooms and " lodgings, called the earl of Bedford's lodgings, containing thirteen rooms, whereof ſix are below, three of them " having chimneys in them, and ſeven above, whereof four have chimneys likewiſe. All which houſes, buildings " and rooms aforementioned are for the moſt part built with free-ſtone, and covered with ſlatt or tile. The lower " part of the principal building of the caſtle is called the new building; at the weſt end thereof is a fair tower; " in which lower building is contained one great chamber, with a chimney in the ſame, the ſealing and timber work " thereof decayed, being proped up with certain pieces of other timber; within the ſame is one other fair chamber, " with a chimney therein; and within the ſame again is one other fair lodging chamber, with a chimney therein, " called the dutcheſs' lodging, with one little room or cloſet between the two laſt recited chambers; within all which " is one room, being the foundation or lowermoſt part of the ſaid tower, called the dutcheſs' cloſſet, with a chimney " therein; from the which ſaid dutcheſs' lodging leadeth a fair gallery, paved with brick, and a ſtayer at the end " thereof, aſcending to the duke's lodging being over the ſame, uſed for a privy way from the upper end of the great " hall, a ſteyer aſcending up towards the great chamber, at the top whereof are two lodging rooms. Leading from the " ſteyer's head to the great chamber is a fair room, paved with brick, and a chimney in the ſame; at the end " whereof doth meet a fair gallery, leading from the great chamber to the earl of Bedford's lodging on the one ſide, " and to the chappell on the other ſide; the great chamber very fair, with a chimney therein: within the ſame, is " one other fair chamber, called the dining-chamber within; a chimney therein likewiſe: and within that again is " one other fair chamber, with a chimney therein alſo, called the privy-chamber; and within the ſame again is " one other chamber, or cloſet, called the dukes jewell chamber. Next unto the privy-chamber, on the inner part " thereof, is a fair round chamber, being the ſecond ſtory of the tower, called the dukes bed-chamber, with a chimney " in the ſame. From the privy-chamber, a ſteyer leadeth up into an other fair round chamber, over the dukes bed-" chamber (like unto the ſame) being the third ſtory of the tower, and ſo upwards, to anſwer a like chamber over " the ſame, called the ſame again, where the evedents do lye. All which laſt recited buildings, called the new " buildings, are builded fair with free-ſtone, covered with lead, and . On the eaſt ſide of the ſaid caſtle, " is one other garden, containing by eſtimation three quarters of one acre, adjoyning upon the earl of Bedford's " lodging; at the weſt corner whereof is a little void court, or waſte ground. On the north ſide of the caſtle, " adjoyning upon the chappell, is a little orchard, containing by eſtimation half an acre, well ſet with trees of " divers kinds of fruits: all which caſtle, buildings, courts, orchards, and gardens aforeſaid, are walled round about " with a wall of ſtone, part ruined and decayed in diverſe places thereof, containing in circuit and quantity, by " eſtimation, 12 acres of ground, or thereabouts. On the eaſt ſide of the ſaid caſtle, adjoyning to the utter ſide of " the wall thereof, is one fair orchard quadrant, containing, by eſtimation, four acres, paled about well, and thick " ſett with fruit-trees of diverſe kinds of fruit."

This drawing was made anno 1763.